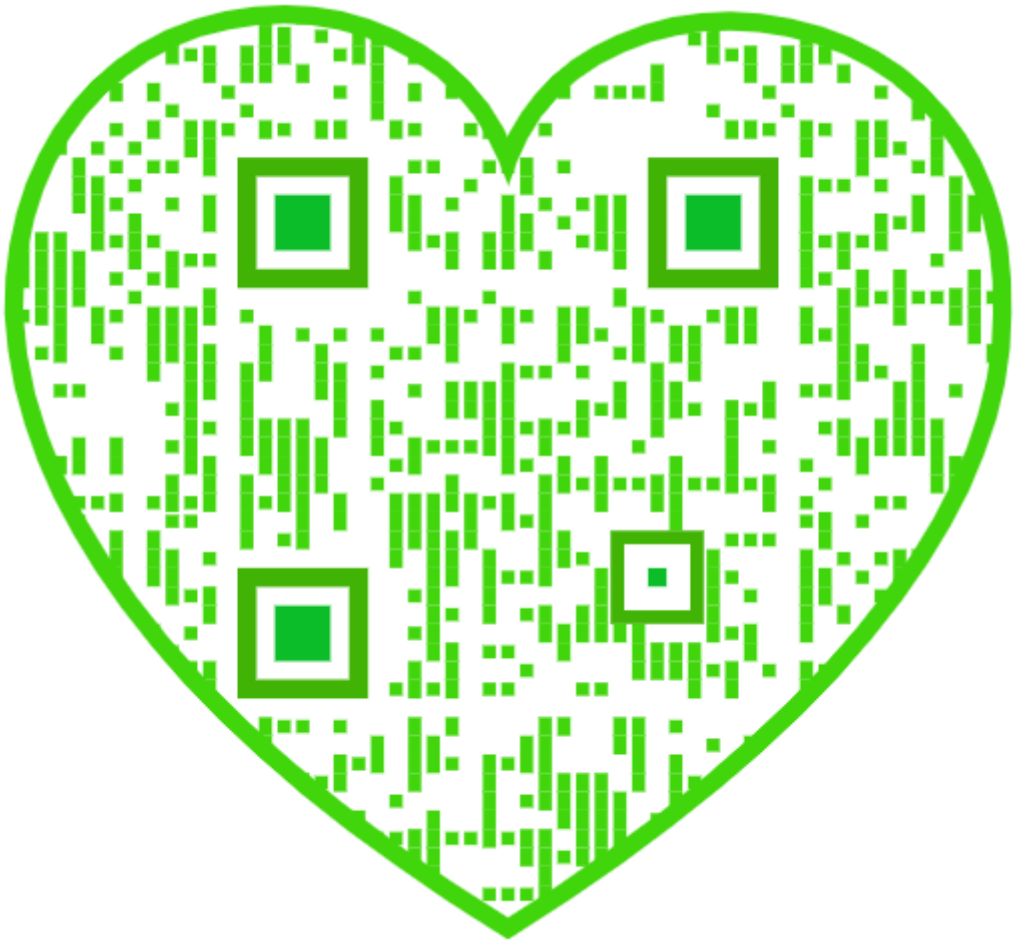
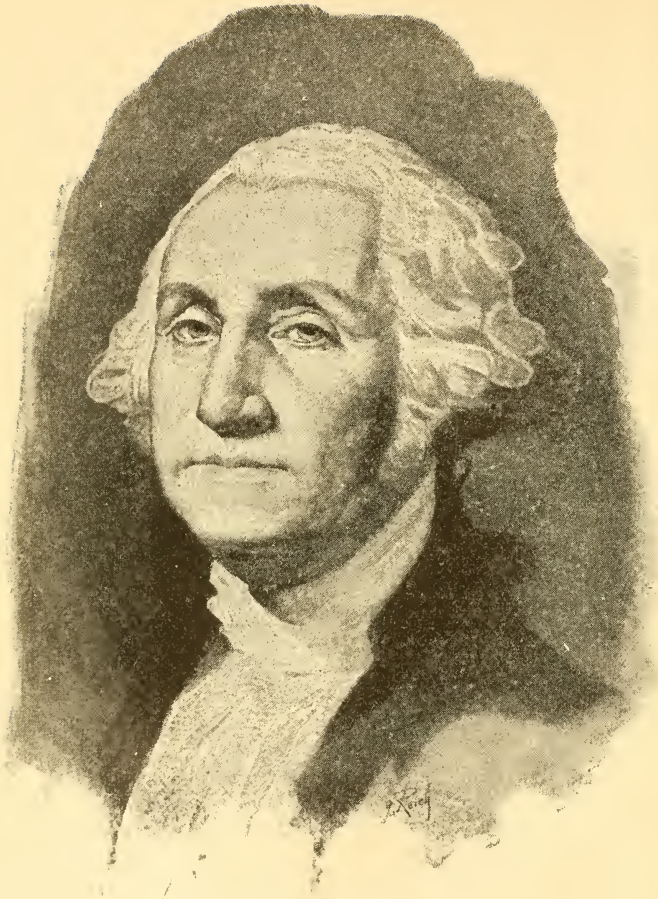
KENTUCKY SERIES
COMPLETE HISTORY OF THE
UNITED STATES



Class E178
Book .I
-1364
Copyright No.

COPYRIGHT DEPOSIT.



G. Washington

ECLECTIC EDUCATIONAL SERIES

THE

NEW ECLECTIC HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES

BY

M. E. THALHEIMER

Author of "A Manual of Ancient History," "A Manual of Mediæval and Modern History," "An Outline of General History," "A History of England," etc.

NEW YORK ·:· CINCINNATI ·:· CHICAGO

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

SUPPLEMENTARY READING BOOKS FOR GRAMMAR AND HIGH SCHOOL GRADES

Ivanhoe: A Romance; by SIR WALTER SCOTT, Bart. Introduction, copious notes, glossary, etc. 12mo, boards, pages vii, 484, ...50 cents.

Marmion: A Tale of Flodden Field; by SIR WALTER SCOTT, Bart. Introduction, carefully annotated, with glossary, portrait, and maps. 12mo, boards, 247 pages,...40 cents.

Ten Selections from the Sketch-Book: by WASHINGTON IRVING. Introduction and notes. 12mo, boards, 149 pages,.....20 cents.

A Second Essay on the Earl of Chatham (William Pitt): by LORD MACAULAY. Introduction and notes. 12mo, boards, 109 pages, ...20 cents.

The Sir Roger de Coverley Papers, from the Spectator: by ADDISON, STEELE, and BUDGELL. Introduction and notes. 12mo, boards, 148 pages,.....20 cents.

The Comedy of Twelfth Night, or, What You Will: by WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE. Introduction and notes. 12mo, boards, 99 pages, 20 cts.

The Tragedy of Julius Caesar: by WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE. Introduction and notes. 12mo, boards, 114 pages,.....20 cents.

Glimpses of the Animate World. Science and literature of natural history. For school or home. 12mo, cloth, 414 pages, illustrated,..$1.00.

Seven American Classics. (Irving, Cooper, Bryant, Hawthorne, Longfellow, Whittier, Holmes.) 12mo, cloth, 218 pages, illustrated, 50 cts.

Seven British Classics. (Addison, Scott, Lamb, Campbell, Macaulay, Tennyson, Thackeray.) 12mo, cloth, 217 pages, illustrated, ...50 cents.

Home Studies in Nature. By MARY TREAT. 12mo, cloth, 243 pages, illustrated, ...90 cents.

A Geographical Reader. A collection of descriptions and narrations from the best writers in English literature. By JAMES JOHONNOT. 12mo, cloth, pages xiv, 418,....$1.00.

An Historical Reader. For the use of classes in academies, high schools and grammar schools. By HENRY E. SHEPHERD, M. A., LL. D. New edition, enlarged, 12mo, cloth, pages xiv, 424, ...$1.00.

☞Any book on this list will be mailed to any address on receipt of price.
Write for descriptive circulars.

Copyright, 1881 and 1890, by
VAN ANTWERP, BRAGG & COMPANY.
Copyright, 1899, 1902, 1904, and 1912, by
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY.

E-P 39

©Cl.A316577
NO. 1

THE Eclectic History has been several years before the public. As frequent new editions have been called for, corrections in detail have been made at the suggestion of eminent educators in various parts of the country. The author's most cordial thanks are rendered to all these for their kindly interest in the work, and the substantial aid they have afforded toward the attainment of perfect accuracy.

The present edition has been thoroughly revised with a view to greater simplicity of style. In most graded schools it is found that younger children come into the history classes year by year, and in some large cities these are—through exclusively oral instruction in their earlier studies—unprepared for an independent use of text-books. The subjects involved in American history are often in their nature complicated, but words, at least, can be familiar, and to this end the book has been very carefully revised. Complex sentences have been divided. A few matters beyond the comprehension of children have been omitted. The aim has been to sketch leading events with a few clear strokes, avoiding a mass of detail which might needlessly encumber the student's memory.

At the same time it is very desirable that boys and girls be accustomed to look up points of interest for themselves, and this ought to be easy where books are at hand either in public libraries or at

home. References are accordingly made, at the end of each chapter, to a few of the many books and magazine articles which afford fuller and more attractive details; and hints are added for the composition of essays, letters, or stories, following up the same lines of thought. It is something to enlist the imagination in such subjects as the unveiling of our great continent and its subsequent development, in the picturesque and romantic incidents of colonial and pioneer life, etc. However crude the sketch may be, it will aid in effectively awakening and exercising the mind, and this is the true end of study.

The teacher's work is facilitated by section-headings in heavier type, which may serve as topics for recitation, by a few comprehensive questions following each chapter, and by Questions for Review at the end of each Part. A series of questions on the Federal Constitution will, it is hoped, help to make clearer the most important features of that document, and thus simplify the teacher's task.

The celebrations which have marked the close of a hundred years under the Constitution have drawn renewed attention to the principles on which our nation was founded, and it should be with new courage and zeal that we endeavor to instill those principles in youthful minds and hearts.

Among the numerous illustrations which beautify these pages, the portraits, by Mr. JACQUES REICH, and those showing the costume and manner of life at various periods of our past history, by Mr. H. A. OGDEN, are worthy of particular mention, as the work of artists who have made special study of these subjects.

CINCINNATI, O.

CONTENTS

PART I.—Prehistoric Ages; Discoveries and Settlements.

Chapter		*Page*
1.	Ancient America	9
2.	Physical Features and Early Inhabitants	15
3.	Discoveries and Settlements by Europeans	27
4.	English Settlements—Virginia	41
5.	Virginia and Maryland	47
6.	Plymouth, Portsmouth, and Dover	53
7.	Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Island	60
8.	New Netherlands—The Middle States	70
9.	English Revolutions—The Southern Colonies	80

PART II.—Growth of the Colonies.

10.	Parliamentary Rule	91
11.	French Colonies	98
12.	Intercolonial Wars	104
13.	Literature and General Progress	116

PART III.—War of Independence.

14.	Causes of the Revolution	129
15.	Opening Scenes of the Revolution	138
16.	Events of 1776	151
17.	Events of 1777 and 1778	160
18.	Events of 1779–1781	169
19.	End of the War	177

PART IV.—Growth of the United States.

20.	Adoption of the Constitution	187
21.	First and Second Terms,—George Washington, President	195
22.	Third Term,—John Adams, President	206
23.	Fourth and Fifth Terms,—Thomas Jefferson, President	211
24.	Sixth Term,—James Madison, President	221
25.	Seventh Term,—James Madison, President	231
26.	Eighth and Ninth Terms,—James Monroe, President	238
27.	Tenth Term,—John Quincy Adams, President	244
28.	Eleventh and Twelfth Terms,—Andrew Jackson, President	248
29.	Thirteenth Term,—Martin Van Buren, President	254
30.	Fourteenth Term,—William H. Harrison, President	258
31.	Fifteenth Term,—James K. Polk, President	265
32.	Sixteenth Term,—Zachary Taylor, President	273
33.	Seventeenth Term,—Franklin Pierce, President	276
34.	Eighteenth Term,—James Buchanan, President	283

Chapter *Page*

PART V.—The Civil War.

35. Nineteenth Term,—Abraham Lincoln, President . . . 291
36. Nineteenth Term,—Events of 1862 302
37. Nineteenth Term,—Events of 1862 (*Continued*) . . . 310
38. Nineteenth Term,—Events of 1863 317
39. Nineteenth Term,—Events of 1864 327
40. Twentieth Term,—Abraham Lincoln, Pres.,—Events of 1865 335
41. Results of the Civil War 341

PART VI.—The Union Restored.

42. Johnson's Administration 347
43. Twenty-first and Twenty-second Terms,—U. S. Grant, Pres. 353
44. Twenty-third Term,—Rutherford B. Hayes, President . . 363
45. Twenty-fourth Term,—James A. Garfield, President . . 367
46. Twenty-fifth Term,—Grover Cleveland, President . . . 371
47. Twenty-sixth Term,—Benjamin Harrison, President . . 376
48. Twenty-seventh Term,—Grover Cleveland, President . . 379
49. Twenty-eighth and Twenty-ninth Terms,—Wm. McKinley, Pres. 381
50. Thirtieth Term,—Theodore Roosevelt, President . . . 389
51. Thirty-first Term,—William Howard Taft, President . . 393
52. Progress of the Republic 397

APPENDIX.

Synopsis of Administrations i
Transfers of Territory in the United States v
The Declaration of Independence x
Constitution of the United States of America xiv
General Index xxvii
Pronouncing Vocabulary xliii

LIST OF MAPS.

Map 1. North America 18, 19
" 2. Routes of Discoverers 30, 31
" 3. The Colonies 58, 59
" 4. Revolutionary War 142, 143
" 5. Lake Champlain and Hudson River 154
" 6. War of 1812 . . . . . 228, 229
" 7. Mexican War 264
" 8. The Civil War 298, 299
" 9. Growth of the United States . . . . . vi, vii

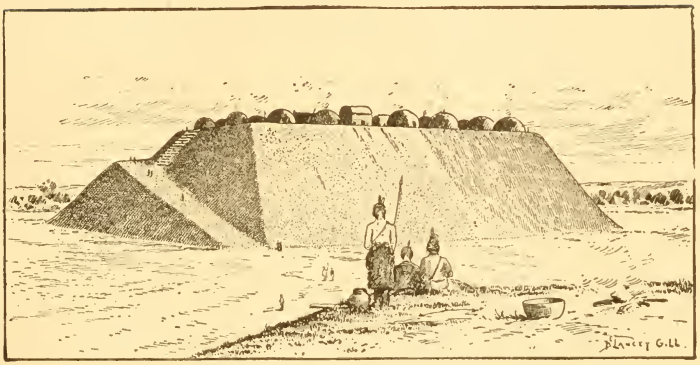
LIST OF TABLES.

Thirteen English Colonies 88
English Sovereigns during First Colonial Period . . . 88
English Sovereigns during Second Colonial Period . . . 126

A HISTORY

OF

THE UNITED STATES.



Etowah Mound (*Restored*).

CHAPTER I.

ANCIENT AMERICA.

1. A Lonely Land.—Four hundred years ago the country we live in was unknown to the rest of the world. There were no cities, no railroads and bridges, no horses and wagons, no broad, smooth roads. The people were of a dark, reddish-brown color, and lived in wigwams covered with bark. In the whole space between the Mississippi and the Atlantic there were probably not so many people as live to-day in a single city like Boston or Cincinnati. Far away to the southward, where

corn grew with little care, and where bananas and other tropical fruits were native, there were large villages in Mexico and Yucatan, and even on the dry plains of Arizona and New Mexico; but with these exceptions America might be called "an empty continent,—a desert-land awaiting its inhabitants."

2. **The Mound-Builders.**—The central part of North America had not always been so lonely. The country drained by the Mississippi and the Great Lakes bears traces of a larger population than the white men found there. These little-known people are called Mound-Builders from the huge piles of earth which they raised for various purposes. They are supposed to have been of the same race as the Indian tribes found by Europeans. But while ten thousand mounds are found within the single State of Ohio, the same region was without settled inhabitants two hundred years ago.

3. **The Mounds.**—Many of these were for purposes of burial. We learn something of the habits of the people from the ornaments of copper, stone, and shell which they buried with the dead. Other mounds were bases of watch-towers and signal-stations; some were fortresses, and their angles show much skill in the art of defense. On some, houses were built for safety against attack. They were reached by graded roadways, or by ladders which could be drawn up at night or when enemies were near. Effigy mounds were rudely shaped to resemble men or animals. One of these, in Adams County, Ohio, is like a serpent, over a thousand feet in length, in the act of swallowing an egg one hundred and sixty-four feet long.

Plan of Serpent Mound.

4. **Contents of Mounds.**—Knives, chisels, and axes of flint and copper; carved pipes, beads, and bracelets; vases of polished and painted earthenware have been found in the mounds, and

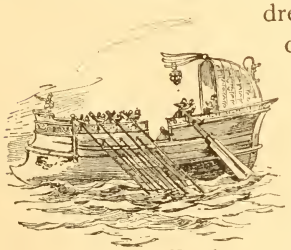
Human Bones. *Shell and Bone Implements.* *Pottery.*

Relics from Mounds.

some of them are of fine workmanship. Smoothly hammered plates of copper are stamped or cut with figures of men and birds, which, though rude to our notions, show some ideas of art.

5. Whence Came the Early Inhabitants of America? is a question that can not be positively answered. A company of Chinese sailors, in the fifth century, driven off shore by westerly winds, sailed many weeks until they came to a great continent. Here they found the aloe and other plants that were strange to them, but which we know to be Mexican. The savages on either side of Behring's Straits meet every year to barter their fish and furs. Many from Asia may have wandered southward along the coast. Even within the last hundred years, fifteen vessels have been driven across the Pacific to our western shores; and during all the previous ages we may believe that many like things had taken place. Doubtless, also, Greek and Phœnician sailors may have crossed the narrower Atlantic. The first white visitors to America, of whom we have any trustworthy record, came from Iceland, and its present white inhabitants are of European descent.

Chinese Junk.



Phœnician Vessel.

6. **Northmen in Greenland.**—Iceland had been occupied about a hundred years by a hardy, sea-faring race from Norway, when, in A. D. 985, Eric the Red, an Icelandic chief, discovered Greenland, and planted a colony on its southwest shore. This became a thrifty settlement through its trade with the Esquimaux, and paid a yearly tribute to the Pope. One of Eric's comrades, driven out of his way by a storm, saw the mainland of NORTH AMERICA stretching far away to the southwest.

7. **Leif in New England.**—In A. D. 1000, Eric's son, Leif the Fortunate, undertook, with thirty-five brave companions, to examine this more fertile and attractive shore. They saw the flat rocks of Newfoundland, the white banks of Nova Scotia, and the long, sandy beach of Cape Cod. From its great number of wild grapes, the Rhode Island coast was called *Good Vinland.* Leif's party wintered in New England, and in the spring carried home news of their discovery.

8. **"White-man's Land."**—Parties of Icelanders are thought to have visited the shores of what are now South Carolina and Georgia. The northern natives had told them of a "white-man's land" to the southward, where fair-faced processions marched in white robes, with banners at their heads, to the music of hymns. Though they never found this abode of pale-faces, the Northmen named it *Great Ireland;* and some writers believe that Irish fishermen had indeed settled on this continent.

9. **Thorfinn Karlsefne,** a famous Icelandic sea-rover, explored the bays and harbors of the New England coast. Huts were built, and a brisk trade was carried on with the natives, who were glad to exchange their furs for bright-colored cloth, knives, and trinkets. At least one little Northman was born on the American continent. His name was Snorri, and from him, in our day, the great sculptor, Thorwaldsen, and the learned historian, Finn Magnusson, traced their descent.

A. D. 1007.

A Vessel of the Northmen.

10. In time, however, the Northmen loaded their ships with timber and sailed away to Greenland, and thence to Iceland. If any settlers remained behind, they became so mingled with the dark-brown natives that, when white men came again, their descendants were not to be distinguished from other Indians on the coast.

Questions.—What traces are there of prehistoric inhabitants in America? Why is it supposed that the central part of North America was not always so sparsely inhabited as it was when Europeans came? What can we now learn of the habits of the Mound-Builders? In what ways may the first inhabitants have reached America?

Map Exercise.—Point, out on Map II., pp. 30, 31, Iceland. Greenland. The route of the Northmen.

Points for Essays: A view of North America before white men came. Story told by a comrade of Leif Ericson on his return to Iceland.

Read Baldwin's *Ancient America;* Squier and Davis's *American Antiquities* and *Discoveries in the West.* L. H. Morgan's *Ancient Society.* Beamish's *Discovery of America by the Northmen.* Dr. C. C. Abbott's *Primitive Industry.* L. Carr, *The Mounds of the Mississippi Valley*, published by the Kentucky Geological Survey.

NOTE.

DIODORUS OF SICILY, a historian who lived in the first century before Christ, wrote: "Over against Africa lies a very great island in the vast ocean, many days' sail from Libya [west Africa] westward. The soil is very fruitful. It is diversified with mountains and pleasant vales, and the towns are adorned with stately buildings." After describing the gardens, orchards, and fountains, he tells how this pleasant country was discovered: the Phœnicians having built Gades [Cadiz in Spain], sailed along the Atlantic coast of Africa. The Phœnician ships sailing down this coast, were "on a sudden driven by a furious storm far into the main ocean, and after they had lain under this tempest many days, they at length arrived at this island."

Plutarch, nearly a century after Christ, wrote of "a great continent beyond the ocean." Ælian, a hundred years later, repeats the account of a "great continent beyond the Atlantic, larger than Asia, Europe, and Libya together." The Phœnicians were "the Yankees of the ancient world." Their ships penetrated all known seas, and doubtless the rumors above quoted came from some of their sailors who had crossed the ocean, or from Greeks who in later times were equally bold, and fond of new places. But the ancients had no desire for homes in these distant lands, and the very memory of what they had seen had nearly died out of the world before the time of Eric or of Columbus.

CHAPTER II.

PHYSICAL FEATURES AND EARLY INHABITANTS.

11. While North America is again hidden from the rest of the world, let us take a view of the lonely continent and its savage people, learning, if we can, what is its fitness for a home of civilized men. As before, for the sake of clearness, we shall use names which were given by white explorers long after the time of which we write.

12. Two Great Mountain Systems form the rocky framework of the continent. The eastern, or **Appalachian**, system forms a line nearly parallel with the Atlantic coast. It is divided by several river-valleys into the White Mountains of New Hampshire, the Green Mountains of Vermont, the Adirondacks of New York, the Alleghanies of Pennsylvania and Virginia, the Blue Ridge and the Cumberland Mountains of the southern States. Boats can ascend the Connecticut, Hudson, Potomac, James, and many other rivers to a great distance from the sea; and the two thousand miles of coast which form the eastern and part of the southern limit of the United States, are broken by bays, inlets, and fine harbors, large enough to receive the shipping of all the world.

13. The Cordilleras of the western part of the continent form a grand mountain-system a thousand miles across at its greatest width. This system consists of high table-lands cut by narrow cañons and bounded by still higher ridges. The Coast Range slopes abruptly to the Pacific, and many of its westward-flowing rivers are short and rapid. It is broken by several low gaps. Those of the Columbia River, the Klamath River, and San

Francisco Bay form drainage outlets for territory east of the high Cascade and Sierra Nevada ranges.

14. On the various levels west of the Sierra Nevada, nearly all the grains and fruits of the world can be made to grow. The largest trees in the world are the *Sequoias* of California, whose trunks, twenty feet or more across near the base, rise sometimes to a height of three hundred feet.

15. The Great Basin lies east of the Sierra Nevada. In crossing this high mountain-wall, the moist winds from the Pacific are cooled, and robbed of their moisture; hence, the great interior basin to the east, with its alkaline plains and salt lakes, is as dry and barren as the deserts of western Asia. Sagebrush is the only fuel; the largest beast is the prairie wolf. The human inhabitants live mainly on roots and insects. The few rivers of the Great Basin lose themselves in the sands, or in salt lakes which have no outlet.

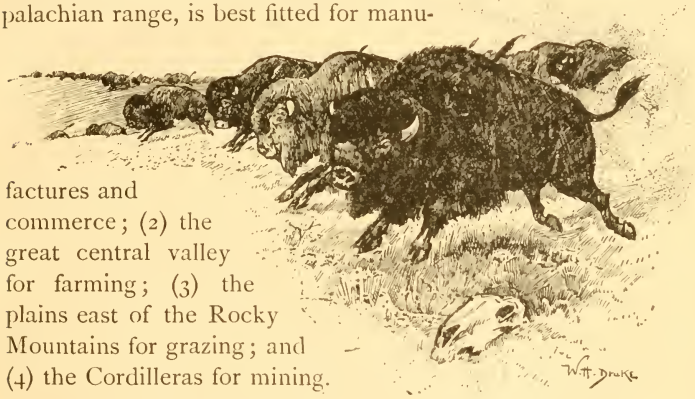
16. Two Great Rivers rise in the mountains northeast of the Great Basin. The *Columbia* begins its long course to the Pacific, and the *Colorado* to the Gulf of California. The Rocky Mountains form the eastern barrier of the Cordilleras, and from their eastern slope many rivers flow to the great central valley of the Mississippi.

17. The Mississippi Valley.—North and south through the interior of the continent stretches an immense plain, twelve hundred miles in width, the home, in ancient times, of vast herds of bisons. Through this plain flows the longest river in the world, measuring more than four thousand miles from the head of its longest branch. It receives fifty-seven other rivers from the east and west. The natives called it *Miche Sépé*,—the Father of Waters. The soil of its valley is very fertile, and a great writer has declared it to be "the most magnificent dwelling-place prepared by God for man's abode."

18. Five Great Lakes, containing as much fresh water as flows from all the rivers of the world during a year, lie northeast-

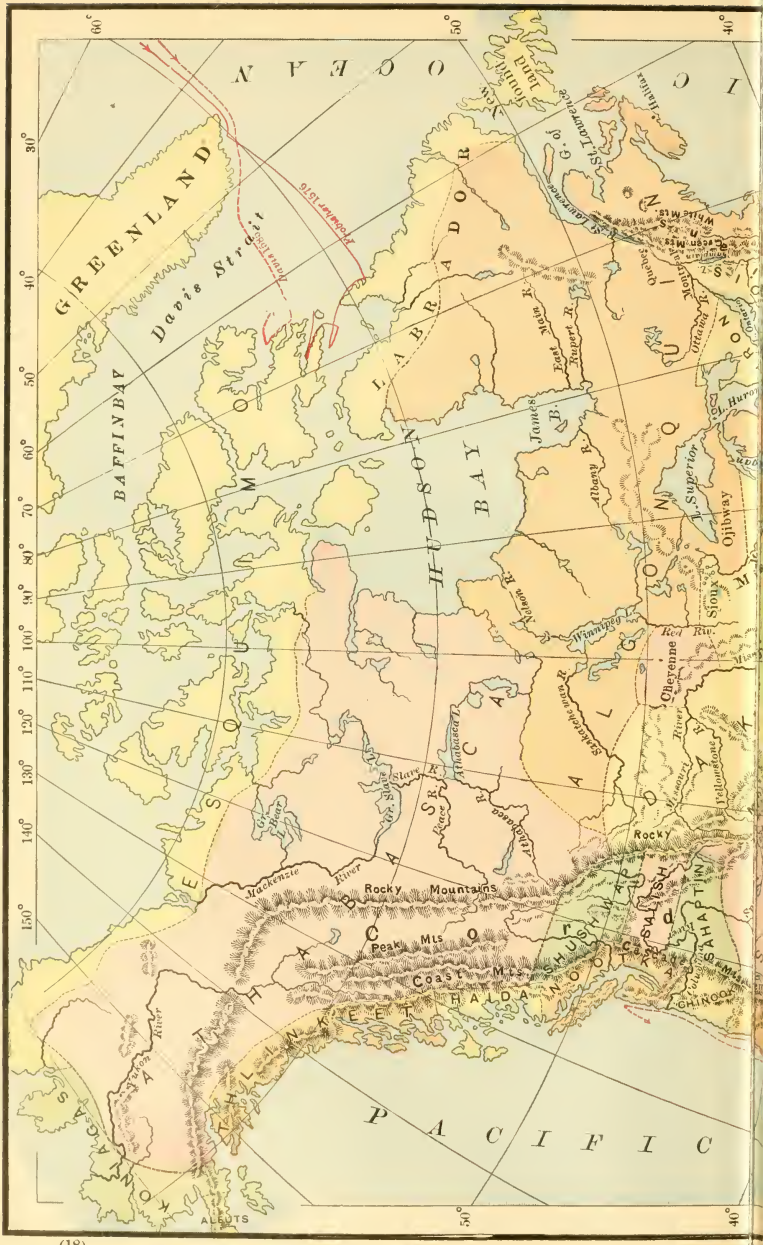
ward from the central valley. Before reaching the last of the lakes, the water plunges over a cliff 160 feet in height, making the Falls of Niagara. After passing through Lake Ontario, it flows away through a broad and rapid river to the Atlantic. By means of the Great Lakes, and of several canals around the falls and rapids between them, ships from Europe can be unloaded a thousand miles inland on the docks of our western cities.

19. Physical Divisions.—For the uses of man, the lands of the United States may be viewed in four chief divisions: (1) the eastern sea-board, bounded by the Appalachian range, is best fitted for manufactures and commerce; (2) the great central valley for farming; (3) the plains east of the Rocky Mountains for grazing; and (4) the Cordilleras for mining.



The Bison, or Buffalo.

20. Three Regions.—Before men learned to cultivate the soil, fish and wild roots were their chief food; and there were only three regions in North America that could sustain any great number of people at that grade of savagery. First and chief was the valley of the Columbia. Its rivers swarmed with salmon, its forests with game; and, besides the shell-fish on the coast, there were a kind of bread-root, and an abundance of berries on the prairies. From this land of plenty, successive bands of emigrants may have moved out to occupy various regions of North and South America. The second center of population was the lake-region


GREENLAND
Davis Strait
BAFFINBAY
LABRADOR
HUDSON BAY
ALGONQUIN
ESQUIMOS
ATHABASCA
KONIAGAS
ALEUTS
PACIFIC
Rocky Mountains
Peak Mts
Coast Mts
Rocky
Cheyenne
Sioux
Ojibway
Winnipeg
Red Riv.
Mackenzie River
Yukon River
Athabasca L.
Athabasca R.
Peace R.
Gr. Slave L.
Gr. Bear L.
Nelson R.
Albany R.
James B.
East Main R.
Rupert R.
Quebec
Montreal
Ottawa R.
St. Lawrence
Halifax
Yellowstone R.
Missouri River
Sinkatchewan R.
Athabasca R.
Fraser R.
Columbia
Cascade Mts
CHINOOK
SHUSHWAP
SALISH
SAHAPTIN
NOOTKA
HALDA
KEET
Probe Mar 1876
Davis 1880
Hudson Land
New
Lawrence
Ontario
Huron
L. Superior
Mississippi
Wells Mts
Green Mts
Ocean
60°
50°
40°
30°
40°
50°
60°
70°
80°
90°
100°
110°
120°
130°
140°
150°

Eclectic U.S. Hist. Map No. 1. Chaps. II. III. & IV.

L. B. Folger Sc. Cin.

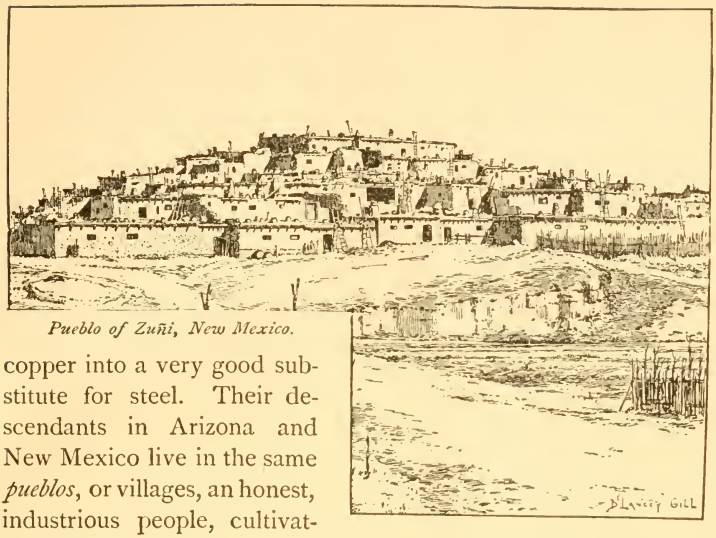
of Minnesota, the nursery-land of the Dakotas; and the third was on the south shore of Lake Superior, whose fisheries afforded food to the Ojibways and many kindred tribes. Thus plentifully supplied by nature, the natives of the Northwest were not spurred on by want to learn new arts. They had no pottery, and they cleaned their game or fish with knives of flint, and cooked it, if at all, in ovens dug in the ground.

21. **The River-tribes** of the interior had risen above savagery to the lower grade of barbarism: they cultivated corn, beans, squashes, and melons, and laid up a store of dried berries and grain for winter use. But they had no tamed animals, knew but little of the metals, and their earthenware was of the rudest and coarsest kind. Their houses were wigwams, or lodges, made of saplings joined at the top and covered with sheets of bark, or sometimes with woven mats or skins.

Indian Wigwams.

22. **Occupations.**—The entire labor of wigwam and garden was done by the women, who dug up the soil with clam-shells or sharp sticks; planted, tended, and gathered the crops; hid the next year's seed-grain from the hungry hunters in vessels underground; made clothing of deerskin, and sometimes embroidered it with beads; wove the mats and baskets, which were their only household furniture; and, on a march, carried all loads, including perhaps the whole covering of their houses, or at least a papoose bound upon a board and hung at the mother's back. The men, meanwhile, made their canoes of bark, carved their war-clubs, pointed their arrows with bone or flint, and hunted the forest for food.

23. **The Indians of the Far Southwest.**—The Pueblo, or Village, Indians were less barbarous. They built houses of *adobes* (sun-dried bricks) or stone; they made bronze tools, and hardened



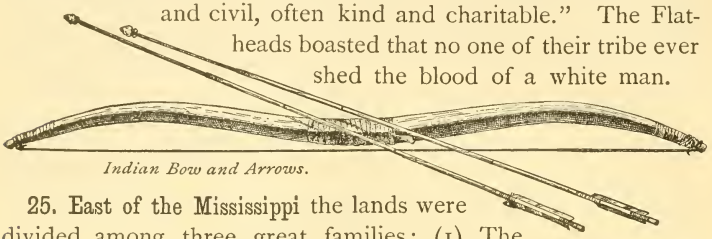
Pueblo of Zuñi, New Mexico.

copper into a very good substitute for steel. Their descendants in Arizona and New Mexico live in the same *pueblos*, or villages, an honest, industrious people, cultivating cotton, grain, and many fruits, and weaving cloth and blankets. Their great adobe houses, often four or five stories high, contain several hundred persons. Each story is smaller than the one below it, leaving a long flat terrace or roof through which alone the house is entered, by means of ladders. The *Navajos* are a wealthy tribe of Pueblo Indians, owning horses, mules, cattle, and sheep; and the blankets woven by their women are both beautiful and costly.

The *Comanches* or Shoshones of northwestern Texas, unlike most Indians, drank no intoxicating liquors; they were fine horsemen and fond of manly sports. Baby Comanches were often tied upon the backs of half-wild Mustang ponies, and they handled bows and rifles almost from infancy.

The *Apaches* proper roamed over the sandy plains of Arizona and New Mexico. Their huts were low and coarsely made; when among the rocks they lived in caves and clefts, and did not build at all. The village Indians of the river-valleys had to be constantly on guard against their thievish raids.

24. West of the Mississippi, on the north, were the *Dakotas*, or *Sioux*, and their kindred tribes, including the *Minnitaree* of the upper Missouri, who seem to have been a superior race. Farther west were the northern *Shoshones*, in two divisions: the *Snakes* of Oregon, Idaho, and Montana, and the *Utes* of Utah, Nevada, and Arizona. In the far northwest, the *Nez Perces*, *Flatheads*, and *Kootenais* were said to be "just and honest, quiet and civil, often kind and charitable." The Flatheads boasted that no one of their tribe ever shed the blood of a white man.



Indian Bow and Arrows.

25. East of the Mississippi the lands were divided among three great families: (1) The *Algonquins* spread from Hudson Bay southward to the Tennessee and Cape Fear rivers, and from the Mississippi to the Atlantic. (2) The *Huron-Iroquois* were in the region of the lower lakes. (3) The *Mobilians*, including the Creeks, Choctaws, Chickasaws, and Seminoles, were bounded by the Mississippi, the Atlantic, and the Gulf.

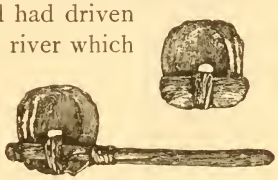
26. The Iroquois excelled all other northern Indians in the arts of war and government. Knowing well the advantage of their position on the great waterways which lead to the interior of the continent, they made themselves feared by all their race. From Canada to the Carolinas, and from Maine to the Mississippi, Indian women trembled at the name of the *Ho-de-no-sau'nee*,* while even the bravest warriors of other tribes went far out of their way in the wintry forests to avoid meeting them.

Within sixty years from the coming of the white men, the Iroquois had destroyed the Hurons,—their own nearest kindred

---

* Or "People of the Long House," the name by which the Iroquois called themselves. The English called them "The Five Nations," and later "The Six Nations." See § 177.

and bitterest foes,—the Eries and Neutrals about Lake Erie, and the Andastes of the upper Susquehanna; while they had forced a humiliating peace upon the Lenape, or Delawares, the most powerful of the Algonquins, and had driven the Ottawas from their home upon the river which bears their name. Though then at the height of their power, they numbered only 1,200 fighting-men of their own race; but they had adopted a thousand young warriors from their captives to fill the vacancies made by war and sickness.



Indian Implements of Shell

27. **Clans.**—Throughout the continent families were grouped into clans, which took their names from various animals supposed to be their ancestors. Thus the Mohawks, on the upper Hudson, included the three clans of the Wolf, the Bear, and the Turtle. The Senecas had these three and five more: the Beaver, the Deer, the Snipe, the Heron, and the Hawk. All the members of the same clan, in whatever tribe, looked upon each other as brothers and sisters. Some believed that after death they would take again the shape of the ancestral bird, beast, or reptile, whose form, rudely drawn on bark, was placed over the door of their lodge.

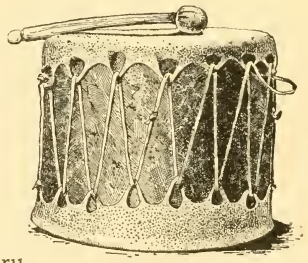
Indian Moccasins, or Shoes.

28. **Leaders.**—Each lodge had a *sachem*, or chief counselor, in matters of peace. On his death, a member of his family, usually his brother, or his sister's son, was chosen to take his place. Women, as well as men, voted in these elections. In time of war, *chiefs* were chosen who continued in office as long as they lived. Being chosen for personal qualities, such as wisdom, eloquence, or bravery, these chiefs were often very able men. The sorcerers, called *powwows*, or medicine-men, had still greater power, owing to the superstitions of the people. They really had some skill in healing sick persons by

Medicine-man.

vapor baths and extracts of roots and herbs; but to these real remedies they added howlings, and violent motions of the body, which were supposed to frighten away the evil spirits that caused disease.

29. **Religion.**—According to the dark notions of barbarians, the Indians were a very religious people. They believed in a Great Spirit, who had made the world, and whose goodness they celebrated by six annual thanksgivings,—at the first flowing of maple-sap, at planting, at the ripening of berries, when their green corn was ready for eating, at harvest, and at New Year. They believed, also, in an Evil Spirit, who might bring upon them famine or sickness, or defeat in war, and whom they sought to appease by fastings and sacrifices. They expected another life after death, and desired to have their weapons, and sometimes a favorite dog, buried with them for use in the "happy hunting-grounds." The Natchez, on the lower Mississippi, were sun-worshipers, and kept a sacred fire always burning in their temples.



Indian Drum.

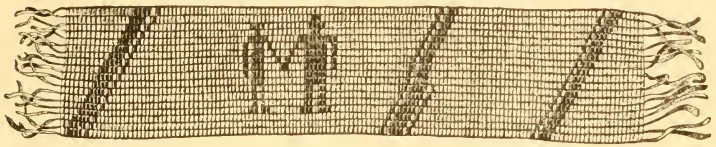
30. **Dancing and Singing** were important parts of their religion. No sick person could be cured, no war planned, and no treaty made without a dance, which often lasted several days. Their musical instruments were drums, rattles, and a rude kind of flute. The war-dance was common to all the tribes, but each clan had peculiar dances of its own, sometimes numbering thirty or more.

Though they had neither books nor letters, some Indian

tribes practiced *picture-writing* on bark or tanned skins, which answered all their purposes. They had even a way of writing music, so that a leader could read off his song from a piece of birch-bark marked with a charred stick. Beads made of shells were called *wampum*. These served them for money, and when strung and woven into bands or belts, served as mementoes of treaties or other great events.

Indian Rattle.

31. **Communism** was the social law of the whole continent. In some of the "long houses" of the Iroquois, twenty families were fed daily from the common kettle of boiled corn and beans. Hunters left their game to be carried home by other



Wampum Belt.

members of their clan, while they pushed on for fresh supplies. The salmon of the Columbia River was speared, dried, and kept in common store-houses for the benefit of the whole tribe. Most of the Mexican *pueblos* consisted of three or four "joint tenement houses," in each of which a hundred or more families lived together.

32. **Appearance and Character.**—The natives of America were of a dark, reddish-brown color, with straight, shining black hair and high cheek-bones. With but few exceptions they were treacherous, cruel, and revengeful. Often hospitable and friendly when at peace, they were merciless and brutal in war. Prisoners were tortured with fiendish barbarity. It was thought an ill-omen for the conquerors if they failed to make their victim cry out with pain; therefore, though they tore out bits of his flesh with teeth or pincers, night after night, and at last roasted him

in a slow fire, he continued to sing his death-song with a calm, unwavering voice until his last breath.

33. War, famine, and sickness destroyed so many Indians every year, that we may doubt whether many would now be living but for the coming of the whites. The cruelties and frauds of the white men can never be remembered without shame; but they were mercy compared with the tortures which the savages inflicted on each other. Indians are more numerous now within the limits of the United States than they were when Englishmen first landed on our coasts. The only tribes which can look forward to continued existence are those which, like the Cherokees, have become somewhat civilized (§ 407).

Questions.—What are the chief physical features of North America? Why is the eastern sea-board of the United States especially adapted for manufacturing and commerce? What parts of the United States are best adapted respectively for agriculture and grazing, and why is this the case? Which were the most civilized Indians in the United States? Which the strongest in war? What characteristics were common to all the Indians?

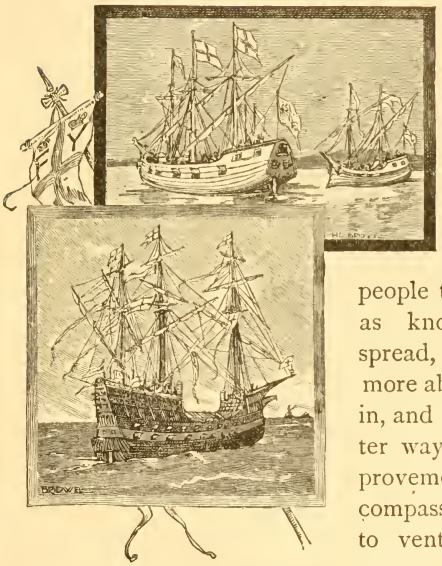
Map Exercise.—(Map No. I., pages 18, 19.) Name the chief ranges of the Cordilleras. Point out the Appalachian Mts. The Great Basin. The Great Salt Lake. The branches of the Columbia. The course of the Colorado; of the Sacramento; of the San Joaquin. The Mississippi. Its great branches. The Great Lakes. Their outlet. The country of the Algonquins; of the Huron-Iroquois; of the Mobilians; of the Athabascas; of the Pueblos; of the Apaches; of the Dakotas; of the Shoshones.

Points for Essays.—Scenery of the eastern and central mountain systems. Indian life. Character. Religion. A Green-Corn Festival.

Consult J. D. Whitney's *The United States.* Day's *Mineral Resources of the United States*, and other reports of the United States Geological Survey. Chapter I. of Parkman's *Conspiracy of Pontiac*, and the Introduction to his *Jesuits in North America.* Morgan's *League of the Iroquois* and *Ancient Society.* Schoolcraft's *Algic Researches* and other works. Catlin's *North American Indians.*

CHAPTER III.

DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS BY EUROPEANS.



Spanish and Portuguese Caravels.

34. The fifteenth century was a great age in Europe. The art of printing from movable types, then newly invented, so vastly increased the number of books that it became worth while for the people to learn to read. Thus, as knowledge became widespread, many began to think more about the world they lived in, and to invent easier and better ways to move about. Improvements in the mariner's compass made it safe for sailors to venture out on the open ocean. Spaniards discovered and colonized the Canary Islands; Portuguese sailors reached the Madeiras, Azores, and Cape Verdes, and, far more important than all, found a sea-route to India.[1]

35. Greek geographers had known long ago that the earth is a globe, instead of the oblong plain which many ancients imagined. Their knowledge was lost during the Dark Ages,

Christopher Columbus.

and when their books were found again, Christopher Columbus,[2] a Genoese sailor, was the first to put it to the test. He resolved to sail westward to China and Japan. The means for such a voyage had first to be secured; and Columbus spent many years in begging the various governments of Europe for men, money, and ships. At length the good queen, Isabella of Spain, said: "I will undertake the enterprise for mine own crown of Castile; and if it be necessary I will pawn my jewels to pay the cost."

36. On Friday, the third of August, 1492, Columbus set out from Palos, in Spain, with three small ships, manned by 120 sailors. He followed first the well-known route to the Canaries, where he took in fresh supplies of food and water, and then stood away to the westward for forty days into the unknown sea. The ignorant terror of his men peopled the solitude with all kinds of horrors. "They sighed and groaned," said one of them afterwards, "and every hour seemed a year." Just as they had resolved to throw their commander overboard, and turn their ships toward Spain, a gun from one of the smaller boats announced a discovery, and the glad cry of "Land ahead!" was soon heard. (See Map II.)

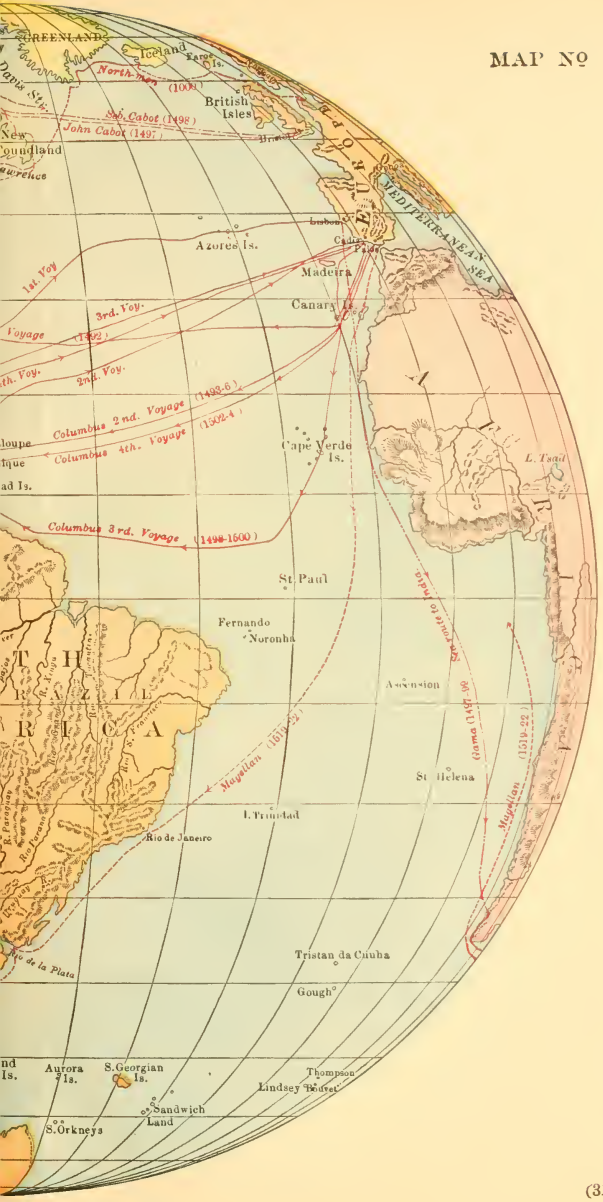
37. The Discovery by Columbus.—On the far horizon the low, green shore of one of the Bahamas was seen by the early morning light. Terror and discontent suddenly gave way to the greatest joy. At sunrise of October 12, 1492, the Admiral landed, and, kneeling on the beach, gave thanks to heaven. He then took possession of the country in the name of the king and queen of Spain, calling it San Salvador (Holy Savior).

38. The natives, who were gentle and friendly, came running to the shore with gifts of fruit, while others ran from house to house crying, "Come! see the people from Heaven!" Isabella and Columbus had indeed hoped to carry a message of heavenly grace to these untaught heathen; but the cruelty of most of their messengers defeated their high purpose. Not knowing that a great continent barred his passage to the eastern seas, Columbus called the people "Indians" and their islands "Indies." With the word "West" before it, this name is still in use, while the red-skinned natives of the whole continent are known as "Indians."

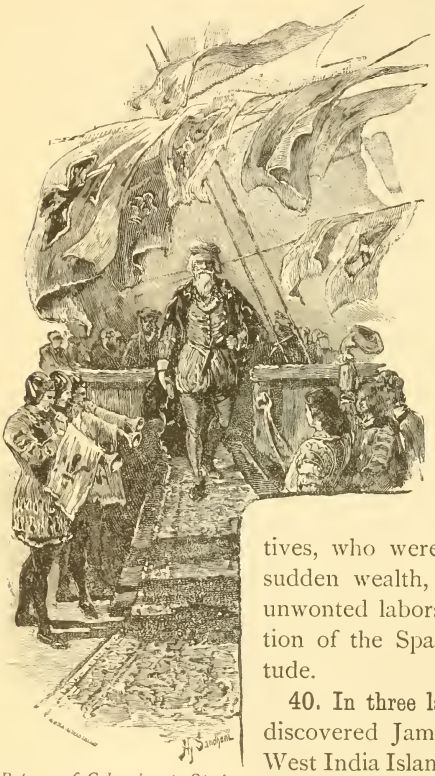
39. Having visited Hayti and Cuba, Columbus returned to Spain, taking with him a few of the people and products of the new world. He was received with a truly royal welcome, and now hundreds of the rich and the great were eager to join his

Hudson Str.
HUDSON BAY
Churchill R.
Severn R.
L. Superior
L. Michigan
L. Huron
L. Erie
L. Ontario
Nova Scotia
Cape Cod
Long Is.
NORTH AMERICA
Chesapeake Bay
Bermuda Is.
Red R.
Mississippi R.
Florida
Guadalupe
Mexico
G. of California
GULF OF MEXICO
Cuba
Bahama Is.
San Salvador
Columbus
Cayman Is.
Jamaica
Haiti
4th. Voy.
Revillagigedo Is.
Bonacca Is.
CARIBBEAN SEA
CENTRAL AMERICA
Isthmus of Darien
Clipperton Is.
Orinoco R.
Cocos Is.
Malpelo Is.
Galapagos Is.
Rio Japura
Rio Negro
Putumayo
Amazon
Rio Madeira
Rio Beni
Titicaca
Low Archipelago
Ducie
Pitcairn
Gomez Is.
Oster Is.
S.Twins
Juan Fernandez
R. Negro
Cape Horn

MAP Nº 2.


GREENLAND
Iceland
Faroe Is.
Davis Str.
North-men (1000)
British Isles
Sab. Cabot (1498)
John Cabot (1497)
New Foundland
Lawrence
EUROPE
MEDITERRANEAN SEA
Lisbon
Cadiz
Azores Is.
Madeira
Canary Is.
1st. Voy
3rd. Voy.
Voyage (1492)
2nd. Voy.
Columbus 2nd. Voyage (1493-6)
Columbus 4th. Voyage (1502-4)
Cape Verde Is.
L. Tsad
Columbus 3rd. Voyage (1498-1500)
St Paul
Fernando Noronha
Ascension
Sea route to India
Gama (1497-99)
Magellan (1519-22)
St Helena
Magellan (1519-22)
I. Trinidad
Rio de Janeiro
Rio Paraguay
Rio Paraná
Rio de la Plata
Tristan da Cunha
Gough
Aurora Is.
S. Georgian Is.
Thompson
Lindsey
Bouvet
Sandwich Land
S. Orkneys

company. Knowing nothing, men imagined whatever they most desired of the new continent. It was said to contain walled cities built of gold and pearls, and to hold, deep in its enchanted forests, a fountain of perpetual youth! But for the very reason that they were looking for these impossible things, the early adventurers failed. No man came to stay; each hoped to become very rich by one fortunate discovery, and return to dazzle his countrymen with a blaze of jewels. The poor natives, who were to help them to this sudden wealth, died by thousands of unwonted labors, and station after station of the Spaniards was left to solitude.



Return of Columbus to Spain.

40. **In three later voyages,** Columbus discovered Jamaica and others of the West India Islands, and in 1498 touched the mainland near the mouth of the Orinoco. But the great Admiral died in 1506, believing that he had only found a new route to Asia, and a few islands, some large and some very small, off its eastern coast. The *New World*, which he had discovered, received its name, almost by accident, from Amerigo Vespucci,[3] whose description first made it known to central Europe.

41. English in North America.—When the kings who had refused aid to Columbus heard of his great success, they hastened to try their fortune in discovery. Henry VII. of England sent *John Cabot* and his sons to take possession in the king's name of any "islands or regions inhabited by infidels" which they could find,—they taking all the risk and expense of the voyage, to be repaid, if at all, by the profits of trade with the "infidels." These men were the first to visit the mainland of North America. They saw the coast of Labrador fourteen months before Columbus touched South America (§ 40). The next year they discovered Newfoundland, and sailed along the coast as far south as Chesapeake Bay.

42. The **Portuguese,** *Cabral,* discovered, in A. D. 1500, the rich forests of Brazil; while his countryman, *Cortereal,* following the Cabots, explored the North American coasts, and carried off fifty or more of the natives to be sold as slaves in Europe. A third Portuguese, *Magellan,*[4] found at last a southwest passage to the Pacific Ocean through the strait which bears his name. For more than a hundred years sailors from all parts of western Europe were sailing into the bays and rivers of the American coast, hoping that each might lead to the Pacific.

43. Spaniards, following Columbus, visited the coasts and islands of the Caribbean Sea. *Diego Columbus* conquered and colonized Cuba, having his father's title, "Viceroy of the New World." *Ponce de Leon,* a comrade of the great Admiral, but now an old man of failing fame and fortune, hoped to regain all that he had lost, and more, by finding that fabled fountain (§ 39) which could restore youth and the vigor of life.
On Easter Day, which the Spaniards call *Pascua Florida,* he came in sight of land; and, after exploring its coasts, gave to the whole peninsula the name *Florida.* But he never found the Fountain of Youth. In his attempt to gain possession of the country, a few years later, he received a A. D. 1513.

mortal wound, and died in Cuba, disappointed in all his hopes. Another Spaniard, *Nuñez de Balboa*, was the first European who saw the Pacific Ocean, which he reached by crossing the Isthmus of Darien. Advancing waist-deep into the waters of the western sea, he drew his sword and swore, as a true knight, that he would defend it, with its coasts, islands, and all that it contained, for his master, the king of Spain.

A. D. 1513.

44. **Vasquez de Ayllon,** in 1520, visited the coasts of South Carolina, and carried away two ship-loads of natives to toil in the mines of Hayti. One ship sank on the return-voyage; the other arrived with only a part of its wretched freight, numbers having died from suffocation and the cruelties of their captors. Naturally, a later attempt of De Ayllon to plant a colony in the country he had thus robbed, ended in failure and disgrace. *Cabeza de Vaca* coasted the Gulf of Mexico, saw the Mississippi at its mouth, and in eight years of great toils and hardships, crossed the continent to the Gulf of California. He brought back exciting rumors of great cities to the northward (§ 46).

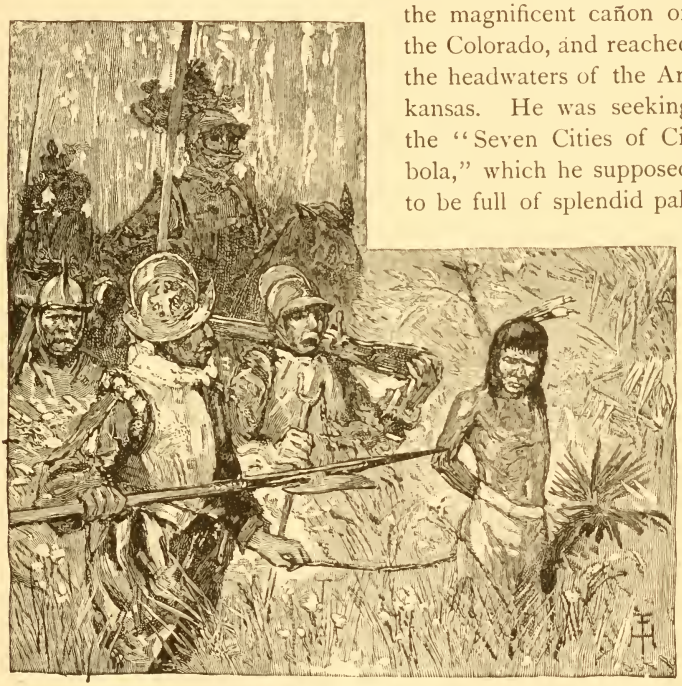
Costumes of Spanish Explorers.

45. **Narvaez,** in A. D. 1528, landed with 300 men in Tampa Bay, Florida, and marched inland, through dense pine woods and sickly swamps, to Appalachee Bay. Many of his company died of fever and by the arrows of the savages, and neither conquest nor settlement was made. His countryman, *Hernando de Soto*, with a gallant company of 600 men, marched northward and westward into the interior, and in the third year of his wanderings reached and crossed the Mississippi near the present city of Memphis. After a

A. D. 1541.

winter of untold hardships he died in the wilderness, and was buried beneath the muddy waters of the great river which he had discovered.

46. **Coronado,** another Spaniard, explored the western shores of Mexico about the same time, ascended the river Gila, visited the magnificent cañon of the Colorado, and reached the headwaters of the Arkansas. He was seeking the "Seven Cities of Cibola," which he supposed to be full of splendid pal-



De Soto in Florida.

aces, blazing with gold and jewels. He found only some village Indians (§ 23), who offered him a share of their corn, and were amazed at being violently attacked and robbed by the disappointed Spaniards. If Coronado had expected less he would have admired the fine buildings of stone whose ruins still prove the industry of the Pueblos.[5]

47. **French fishermen** were the first to discover the immense shoals of cod-fish on the banks of Newfoundland. Their industry drew thence a steady gain, while the Spaniards were wasting life and fortune in their search for cities of gold. In A. D. 1524, *Verrazzano*, a Florentine in the service of Francis I., king of France, visited the harbors of New York and Newport. After exploring the Atlantic coast from Carolina to Newfoundland, he wrote the first detailed account of the country, which he called New France. Ten or fifteen years later, *Jacques Cartier* explored the Gulf of St. Lawrence, and ascended the river above the site of Montreal.

48. **No settlement**, so far, had been made within the present limits of the United States. In A. D. 1562, the French *Admiral Coligny* undertook to make a home of perfect religious freedom in the American forests. With his aid a company of Frenchmen reached the coast of South Carolina, and built a fort, which they called *Caroline* in honor of King Charles. The harbor was named Port Royal; the land seemed to them "the fairest, fruitfulest, and pleasantest of all the world." Unhappily, they expected the fruitful land to give them harvests without their taking the trouble to sow the seed. The Indians had been friendly at first, but they grew tired of feeding such lazy guests. *Ribault*, the French captain, returned home for supplies. Hunger and home-sickness discouraged those who were left, and, building a rude ship, they followed him.

49. **Two years later** another company of Frenchmen, under *Captain Laudonnière*, built a second Fort Caroline, on the St. John's River, farther south. Among them were many lawless men, who, in defiance of their commander, seized the ships and set off on a plundering cruise among the Spanish West Indies. The Spaniards, who claimed the whole North American continent, and especially Florida, owing to Ponce de Leon's discovery (§ 43), were made still more angry at the French settlers by these robberies.

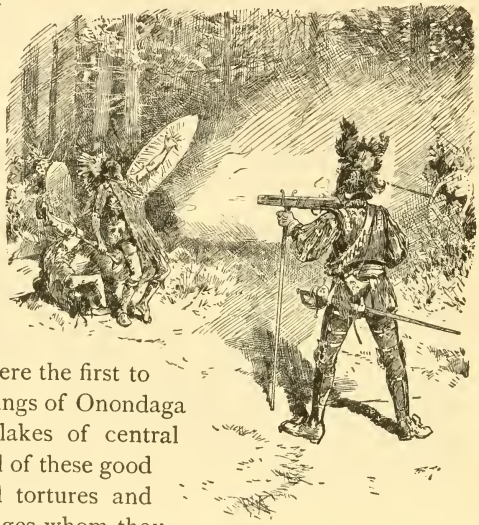
50. Pedro Menendez, in 1565, with nearly 3,000 Spaniards, selected a site for *St. Augustine*, which still exists as the oldest town in the United States. Ribault, who had just come from France, no sooner heard of their arrival than he sailed with a squadron to attack the Spaniards; but Menendez at the same time marched overland to the French fort, and murdered all its occupants.

Old Gate at St. Augustine.

51. When the news of this massacre reached France, the king took no notice of it; but a private gentleman, *Dominique de Gourgues*, resolved upon vengeance. Selling all his lands, he spent the proceeds in ships, and with 150 men sailed to Florida. Aided by the Indians, who had learned to dread and hate the Spaniards, he took and destroyed Fort Caroline, and two other forts at the mouth of the river, and hanged all the men who were not killed in fighting. As France and Spain were not openly at war, he wrote over their heads this inscription: "Not as Spaniards, but as traitors, robbers, and murderers." A. D. 1568.

52. The French in Canada.—Frenchmen were more successful in gaining and keeping a foothold near the St. Lawrence.

Samuel de Champlain[6] was the "Father of New France." In 1608 he laid the foundations of Quebec. The next summer he joined a war-party of Algonquins (§ 25), explored with them the beautiful lake which bears his name, and gave them a victory over the Iroquois by means of fire-arms, which those astonished warriors had never seen nor heard before. Champlain was followed by Catholic missionaries, who were the first to discover the salt-springs of Onondaga and the beautiful lakes of central New York. Several of these good men suffered brutal tortures and death from the savages whom they had come to convert.



Champlain among the Indians.

53. Spaniards in the Southwest.—Not only St. Augustine, but *Santa Fé*, the next oldest town in the United States, owes its origin to the Spaniards. *Antonio de Espejo*, starting in 1582 from northern Mexico, explored the upper course of the Rio Grande. He found the people clothed in cotton and leather, and living in well-built houses. In consequence of Espejo's discovery of rich veins of silver, colonies were sent in 1595 to *New Mexico*, and a town was built near Santa Fé. Late in the following century, *Jesuit Fathers* established missions in Arizona and California. All the "Mission Indians" were supplied with food and clothing, the former of which they were soon taught to produce from their fields. Wine, grains, flax, hemp, and wool were among the exports from the Missions; and, but for

brief relapses into their old wild manners, the people kept for nearly a hundred years the aspect of civilized communities. Then the Fathers left them, and they soon went back into barbarism.

Questions.—What led the men of the fifteenth century to the discovery of new lands? What were the earliest discoveries? Describe the plans and voyages of Columbus. What nations of Europe had part in exploring America? What was done by each?

Map Exercise.—Trace, on Map No. II., the several routes of Columbus. Of Cabot, Cabral, and Magellan. On Map No. I. the routes of Ponce de Leon, Balboa, De Ayllon, Narvaez, De Soto, Coronado, Verrazzano, Cartier, Champlain, Espejo. Point out the sites of the two French settlements on the Atlantic coast. St. Augustine.

Points for Essays.—A dream of the boy Columbus. Letter from Admiral Columbus to Queen Isabella of Spain. From Nuñez de Balboa to King Ferdinand. From John Cabot to Henry VII. of England. Champlain's own story of his first meeting with the Iroquois.

Read Irving's *Life of Columbus* and *Companions of Columbus*. Hakluyt's *Voyages*. Major's *Life of Prince Henry the Navigator*. Parkman's *Pioneers of France in the New World* and *Jesuits in North America*.

NOTES.

1. PRINCE HENRY THE NAVIGATOR (1394–1460), was the fourth son of King John I. of Portugal. He established a school of navigation, and introduced the use of the compass and the astrolabe. The discovery of the Madeira Islands and the coast of Africa southward as far as Sierra Leone, was due to his aid and encouragement. His influence gave to Portuguese sailors the lead for a time among European explorers. The entire western coast of Africa became known when Bartholomew Diaz discovered the Cape of Good Hope in 1486; but this route to Asia was not used for commerce until after 1500.

2. CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, the eldest son of a wool-comber, was born at Genoa, Italy, in 1436. He was a devout Catholic, and attended the University of Pavia, but at the age of fifteen became a sailor. He learned at sea all that was then known of seamanship. After his marriage with the daughter of an old sea-captain, he earned his living for some years at the Madeiras by making maps and marine charts. Before he was thirty-eight years of age, he had conceived his grand idea of reaching Asia by sailing westward from Europe. He had been in

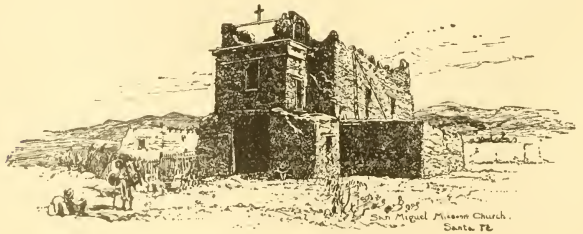
Iceland, and may have heard of Leif Ericson's discoveries (§ 7). But he had no thought of visiting Good Vinland, nor did he expect to find a whole continent blocking his way from Spain to Japan. The voyage of Leif does not lessen the honor due to Columbus.

3. AMERIGO VESPUCCI was a native of Florence. In 1499 he sailed to the West Indies as a pilot in the fleet of Alonzo de Ojeda. In 1501 he sailed from Spain on his second voyage, this time in charge. He landed on the coast of Brazil, and cruised north and south from the Florida peninsula to 54° south latitude. Thus he made it certain that a new continent had been found,— not merely a few islands near the coast of Asia. His account of this voyage, published at Augsburg, Bavaria, in 1504, first made this important fact known in Europe, and the zeal of his friends led them to name the new-found land "Amerige" (America) in his honor.

4. FERNANDO MAGELLAN left Spain in August, 1519, and entered the strait between South America and the island of Tierra del Fuego, October, 1520. He kept on his westward course, and in April, 1521, was killed in an encounter with natives of one of the Philippine Islands. Sailing onward around the southern point of Africa, one of his ships again reached Spain in September, 1522. This was the first voyage completely around the globe.

5. The ruins of the seven great Pueblo buildings on the Rio Chaco, one hundred miles northwest of Santa Fé, probably mark the sites of the "Seven Cities of Cibola." Each building had from one hundred to six hundred rooms, and could accommodate from one thousand to four thousand persons.

6. SAMUEL DE CHAMPLAIN was born at Brouage, France, in 1567. His father was a sea-captain, and the son early became a good sailor. He visited Canada several times before his appointment as lieutenant-general. He founded the first permanent French settlement in the New World. Partly because of his victory over the Iroquois, this powerful tribe became enemies of the French, who were thus led to confine their exploration and trade to the north of lakes Ontario and Erie, and from thence to the valley of the Ohio and the Mississippi. He died in Canada in 1635.



CHAPTER IV.

ENGLISH SETTLEMENTS. — VIRGINIA.

54. The Partition of America.—For centuries Spain, Portugal, France, and England all claimed to own North America; while Holland and Sweden each kept a foothold upon its shores long enough to impress something of their character upon its future inhabitants. But as there was far more land than any or all of them could use, the dispute settled itself at last upon

> "The simple plan
> That they should take who have the power,
> And they should keep who can."

55. Englishmen made no real effort to found homes in North America until eighty years after the discoveries by the Cabots. English sailors had done their full part in exploring the continent. *Frobisher*[1] went beyond all previous captains into the icy regions between Greenland and Labrador; *Davis*, going yet farther north, entered the strait which bears his name; *Drake*,[2] in search of Spanish treasure-ships, explored the Pacific coast as far as Oregon, wintered near San Francisco, and returned to Europe by way of Asia and Africa.

56. Sir Humphrey Gilbert, seeing the failure and misery which had resulted from the eager search for gold, planned a colony for fisheries and regular trade. But his two expeditions failed, and their brave leader was lost at sea. His half-brother, *Sir Walter Raleigh*,[3] was among the greatest and most unfortunate of English adventurers. Under a grant from Queen Elizabeth,[4] in 1585, he sent 108 colonists

A. D. 1578–1583.

to settle the fruitful region from which the French had been expelled (§§ 48–50).

57. Virginia.—Delighted with the accounts of the beauty and wealth of the country, Elizabeth named it *Virginia*, in honor of her own state as a maiden queen. A site was chosen for the colony on Roanoke Island, and trade was carried on with the friendly Indians. But the misconduct of the white men soon turned these into foes; the colonists were then without food, and they soon returned to England.

Sir Walter Raleigh.

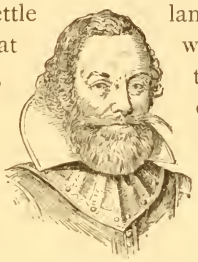
58. **A second colony,** including some women and children, arrived at Roanoke in 1587. But war was now breaking out between England and Spain. Ships which Raleigh sent with fresh supplies for the colonists, went in chase of Spanish ships, and were themselves taken. When Englishmen revisited Roanoke, three years later, no white face was found on the island. Whether the settlers had perished, or had taken refuge with some friendly tribe in the interior, can not be known.

59. Raleigh spent all his fortune, and gained no reward for himself. But his efforts had made America better known to England, and had led many to desire homes in the New World. The voyages of Gosnold,[5] Weymouth, and Pring drew attention to the islands, capes, and noble harbors on the coasts of Maine and Massachusetts; and fleets of English vessels sailed thither for trade and fishing, though for many years no settlement was formed.

60. Colonial Companies.—In 1606 King James I. gave charters to two English companies for planting and ruling two colonies in Virginia. The *London Company* might found a colony anywhere between Cape Fear and the east end of Long Island; the *Plymouth Company*, anywhere between Delaware Bay and Halifax, provided that neither should begin a settlement

within a hundred miles of one already made by the other. The king kept to himself the right to make all laws and appoint all officers for the colonies; and was, moreover, to receive one fifth of all gold and silver, and one fifteenth of all copper, found in them. For five years every man was to labor, not for himself, but for a common fund.

61. **First English Settlement.**—The London Company soon sent three ship-loads of people, commanded by Christopher Newport, to choose and settle lands in Virginia. Of the 105 men, 48 were what were then known as "gentlemen"; that is, they scorned work, and hoped to grow rich either by chance or by the toil of others. The wisest man in the colony was Captain John Smith,[6] who had gained wisdom by much hard experience; and he was imprisoned on the voyage under a foolish charge that he intended to murder the Council and make himself king of Virginia! Upon trial, he was honorably acquitted and restored to his place in the Council.

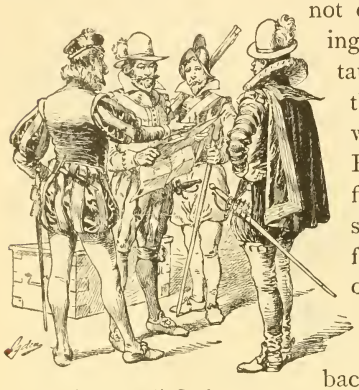


Captain John Smith.

62. It was the spring of 1607 when the three vessels entered Chesapeake Bay. Glad to be sheltered from the storms that were raging without, the adventurers named their first anchorage *Point Comfort.* They called the two capes which guard the entrance to the bay, *Charles* and *Henry*, after their king's two sons; and the noble stream which they soon afterwards ascended, *James* or *King's River*, from the king himself. Fifty miles up the river they chose the site for their first settlement, which bore the name *Jamestown.* The following winter 120 men were added to the colony, and in the autumn of 1608, 70 more persons, including two women, a lady and her maid, who, however, had not come to stay. In June, 1609, nine ships, with 500 colonists, sailed from England for Virginia. Among them were many old soldiers trained in the wars of the Neth-

erlands. There were also the wife and daughters of Lieutenant-General Gates, who were for a time nearly the only white women in the country.

63. Smith soon became the real head of the colony. He enforced the scriptural rule that he who would not work should not eat; he put an end to quarreling and swearing, and in time he taught the "gentlemen" to swing their axes with the rest. Meanwhile he explored Chesapeake Bay and all the rivers which flow into it; sought the friendship of the Indians, and got from them needed supplies of corn.



"Gentlemen" Settlers.

64. **The "Starving Time."**—Forced by a bad wound to go back to England, Smith left about five hundred colonists in Virginia, well supplied with all that was needful for their comfort. Nevertheless, the period following his departure is called the "Starving Time," for the men gave themselves up to idleness and riot, and in six months there were only sixty persons alive in the colony. These resolved to join the fishermen in Newfoundland; but on their way down the river they met Lord Delaware, the new governor, with hundreds of colonists and a fresh supply of stores.

65. A new era soon dawned upon Virginia. Gold-seeking was stopped after a ship-load of earth containing specks of yellow mica had been sent to England and found worthless. It was now seen that the soil was the true source of riches, and a few acres given to each man made the wealth of each depend upon his own labor. Unhappily the high price of tobacco in England led most of the planters to raise it instead of corn and wheat. And though the price soon fell to two-pence a pound,

tobacco was for a long time the chief export of the colony, where it was also used as money. Ministers' salaries, lawyers' fees, and landlords' rents were all paid in tobacco. But the crop at last made the soil poor, and in many cases short-lived wealth was followed by bankruptcy, ruin, and poverty.

66. New Laws.—In 1611 the Company sent out a set of new and very strict laws. Theft, and disrespectful mention of the king were punishable with death at the first offense. Swearing, and absence from public worship received the same punishment after two trials of lighter penalties.

67. Introduction of Slavery. — Hitherto there had been very few women in the colony. In 1619, besides nearly twelve hundred other settlers, ninety honest girls came from England and became wives of planters. A less valuable addition was a lot of criminals, who were sold as servants for a limited number of years. Still worse in the end was an importation of negroes from the African coast, who became slaves for life. The first cargo of negroes was brought to Jamestown in a Dutch ship in 1619.

Landing of the Ninety Honest Girls.

For Questions, see page 51.

Map Exercise.—Trace, on Map I., the voyages of Frobisher, Davis, Drake. Point out capes Charles and Henry. The site of Raleigh's two colonies. On Map III., point out the site of Jamestown. Point Comfort. The chief rivers that flow into Chesapeake Bay.

Read Smith's *True Relation* and *General History*. For this and following chapters to the end of Part III., read Bancroft's *History of the United States*. Bryant's *Popular History*. Hildreth's *History of the United States*.

NOTES.

1. MARTIN FROBISHER entered an inlet north of Hudson Strait in 1576, and he thought he had found a "northwest passage" to Asia. A short sail showed him his error. The next year he came with a fleet to the same region, and went back to England laden with worthless dirt and stones which were believed to contain gold. In 1578 he led a third expedition to form a permanent colony on the shores of Greenland. When his ship sailed into Hudson Strait, "Now, surely," thought he, "I will go through to the Pacific." But with the approach of winter the intense cold made his men mutiny, so that all were glad to get back to their homes without either glory or gold.

2. SIR FRANCIS DRAKE (1545–1595), was one of the most famous of British admirals. In 1577 he passed through the straits of Magellan in his ship, the "Golden Hind"; and, following the western coast of America, named its northern part New Albion. Then steering westward into the broad, unknown Pacific, he crossed it and the Indian Ocean, and entered the harbor of Plymouth two years and ten months after he had left it. He was the first Englishman, and the second of all navigators, to sail around the world.

3. SIR WALTER RALEIGH (1552–1618), was an Englishman of genius and learning—noted as author, explorer, and courtier. He commanded a vessel in the English fleet that destroyed the Spanish "Invincible Armada" in 1588. He explored the coasts of Guiana, and published an account of the expedition. While imprisoned in the Tower of London for a period of twelve years, he wrote his *History of the World*. Raleigh's American colonists have the credit of introducing tobacco and the potato into Europe.

4. QUEEN ELIZABETH, the daughter of Henry VIII. and Anne Boleyn, was born in 1533, and ruled over England from 1558 until her death in 1603.

5. BARTHOLOMEW GOSNOLD, in May, 1602, discovered and named Cape Cod, and was the first Englishman who ever set foot upon the shores of New England. Until Gosnold's expedition, no English voyager since the Cabots had sailed by way of the northern or *direct* course across the Atlantic. They had followed in the track of Columbus, by the way of the Canary Islands and the West Indies. Gosnold was one of the leaders in the company which founded Jamestown in 1607, and died in the fall of that year from the hardships of pioneer life. He ranks with Sir Walter Raleigh as one of the wisest and greatest of the founders of the American colonies.

6. Captain JOHN SMITH was born in England in 1579 and died in 1631. He served as a soldier in the Netherlands, and in the wars against the Turks in Hungary and Austria, where he was taken prisoner and sold as a slave in Constantinople. After his return to England from Virginia in 1609, he visited New England and made a map of the coast from Cape Cod to the mouth of the Penobscot. He published several books on America.

CHAPTER V.

VIRGINIA AND MARYLAND.

Marriage of Pocahontas.

68. Council of Burgesses.—When Sir George Yeardley came to be governor, the true life of Virginia began. The "cruel laws" were changed, and, "that the planters might have a hand in the governing of themselves, it was granted that a general assembly should be held yearly once, whereat were to be present the governor and council, with two burgesses from each plantation [*i. e.*, town], freely to be elected by the inhabitants thereof,—this assembly to have power to make and ordain whatsoever laws should by them be thought good and profitable." The "Council of Burgesses," which met at Jamestown in July, 1619, was the first law-making body in America which was chosen by the people.

69. Indian Hostilities.—While Powhatan lived,—the chief of the forty tribes with which Smith had made friendship,—white men and savages were at peace. His daughter, Pocahontas,[1] married John Rolfe, a young Englishman, and several famous Virginian families are proud to be her descendants. But Powhatan's successor hated the English. Living in careless se-

curity upon their scattered plantations, the colonists had even sold powder and guns to the Indians, who seemed friendly, but were secretly planning to destroy all the white intruders. Suddenly, at noon of March 22, 1622, every village was attacked. A fierce war followed, in which nearly two thousand colonists died, and of eighty settlements only eight remained.

70. **Changes in Government.**—In 1624 King James dissolved the London Company, and made Virginia a royal province; but though the governor and council were appointed by the king, the laws were still made by the representatives of the people. Virginia was strongly attached to both the king and the Church of England. While changes were going on in the home government (§ 131), many royalists found refuge in the colony; and though the Council of Burgesses submitted to Parliament to avoid the ruin of the tobacco trade, there was great rejoicing when a king was again placed in power, A. D. 1660.

71. **Condition of Virginia.**—Virginia had at this time about 30,000 inhabitants. Richmond, on its fine site at the falls of the James River, and Williamsburg, on the peninsula between the James River and the York, were already thriving settlements. The mildness, beauty, and fertility of the region made it "the best poor man's country in the world." But the people wanted schools for their children. Every man taught his children according to his own ability. Thus, between the families of the educated gentry and the untaught workmen there was a strong contrast which was not for the best interests of the colony. The settlers were so scattered that it is said, "no man could see his neighbor without a telescope, or be heard by him without firing a gun."

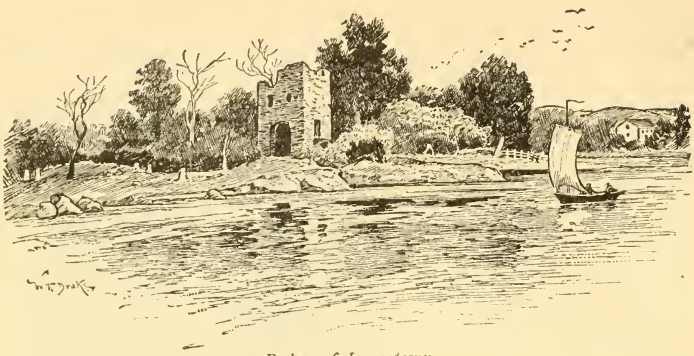
72. **Governor Berkeley.**—The joy at the restoration of King Charles II. was soon changed to grief. The right to vote was taken from the mass of freemen; taxes were laid upon them without their consent; and even the settlers of distant and

lonely places were not permitted to meet in arms against the savages, who were murdering their wives and children. Governor Berkeley,[2] a grasping and selfish man, was supposed to be selling powder and shot to the Indians, against the law. Being sent to England to plead the cause of the colony, Berkeley only enriched himself by robbing it of a portion of its lands, which the king was led to give to a company to which he belonged. In 1673 the same king gave the right to govern all the "land and water called Virginia" to lords Culpepper and Arlington for a period of thirty-one years.

An Indian Warrior.

73. Bacon's Rebellion.—The people might have borne all this, but when the governor refused to send troops against a large force of Indians who were coming down the James, they took up arms and chose for their leader Nathaniel Bacon, a gentleman of fortune and influence, who had lately arrived in Virginia. Bacon's little army routed the savages, while the governor was calling him a rebel and traitor, and raising a troop to fight him. An insurrection in Jamestown compelled Berkeley, however, to disband his army, dissolve his council, and call a more popular assembly, of which Bacon was a member.

74. The governor, weak and violent by turns, broke all his promises. Civil war followed, in which Jamestown was burnt, and only a ruined church-tower remains to mark its site. Bacon died suddenly of disease, and his party, for want of a leader,



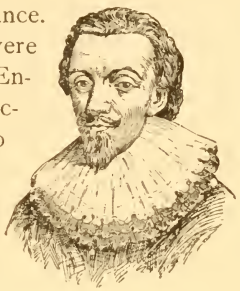
Ruins of Jamestown.

was soon subdued. Berkeley disgraced his victory by the most insolent cruelty. Twenty-two patriots were hanged, and three died from the hardships of their prison. The king recalled Berkeley, and made Lord Culpepper governor of the Old Dominion.

75. **Maryland.**—From a part of Virginia a new colony had been formed, with better security both for civil and religious rights. George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore, obtained from Charles I., in 1629, a grant of lands north of the Potomac, where all persons, but especially members like himself of the Catholic Church, might enjoy freedom of worship. The country was called *Maryland* in honor of the queen,
A. D. 1634. Henrietta Maria; and the settlement near the mouth of the Potomac received the name *St. Mary's*.

76. **Lord Baltimore** died before he could revisit America, and the charter was "published and confirmed" in the name of his son Cecil Calvert, who for forty-three years watched over the welfare of Maryland. Virginia did not willingly submit to this division of her territory. William Clayborne, formerly her secretary of state, had occupied the Isle of Kent, in the Chesapeake, with a trading settlement. He considered himself as within the limits of Virginia, and made armed resistance to

Lord Baltimore's demand for his allegiance. Three Virginians and one Marylander were killed in battle. Clayborne was sent to England to be tried for treason, but was acquitted, though the right of Maryland to Kent Island was confirmed.



George Calvert.

77. Clayborne's Rebellion.—Some years later Clayborne returned and raised another insurrection in the district which he had once governed. Gov. Leonard Calvert, brother of Cecil, was forced to retire, but he soon came back with greater numbers and put an end to "Clayborne's Rebellion."

78. The Calverts.—The liberal charter granted by Lord Baltimore drew crowds of settlers to the banks of the Potomac. Puritans driven from Virginia, English Churchmen from Massachusetts, and refugees from all parts of Europe lived together on equal terms. One party made a selfish use of its privileges. Resisting both the policy and the rights of the Calverts, the Protestants combined to banish all Catholics from the Assembly. Many years of tumult followed. In 1691 the Calverts' charter was revoked, and for twenty-four years Maryland was a royal province. In 1715 the Calvert family regained its lands, and held them until the Revolution.

Questions.—What European nations claimed land in North America? What English captains helped to explore it? Who planned the first English colonies? What companies were chartered by King James I.? What kinds of people were among the early settlers of Virginia? How did they try to become rich? Under what laws did they live?

What changes were made in Virginia by Governor Yeardley, and later? What changes in the feelings and conduct of the Indians? How were Virginian children taught? What was done by Governor Berkeley? How was Maryland founded? What occasioned Clayborne's Rebellion?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map No. III., Richmond. Williamsburg. St. Mary's. The Isle of Kent.

Points for Essays.—Stories that may have been told by sailors who accompanied Frobisher, Davis, or Drake. A letter from Miss Gates (§ 62) to her former schoolmate in England. A grandmother's recollections of the massacre of 1622 (§ 69), which she witnessed as a child.

NOTES.

1. POCAHONTAS was born about the year 1595. The story, long believed, that she saved the life of Capt. John Smith by shielding him with her body from the war-clubs of the savages who were about to beat him to death, is now thought to be false. That she was much attached to Capt. Smith there is no doubt, for in 1609 she made a long and tiresome journey by night through the forest to tell him of a plot by her father to murder him. Her marriage with Rolfe, at Jamestown, in 1613, secured many years of peace between the colonists and the Indians. Professing Christianity, she was baptized as "Lady Rebecca." In 1616 she went with her husband to England. Pocahontas died in March, 1617, leaving one son, Thomas Rolfe, who in later years removed to Virginia.

2. SIR WILLIAM BERKELEY was appointed governor of Virginia in 1641, and arrived at Jamestown early in 1642. Being a royalist, he was removed from power by Cromwell in 1651; but after the Restoration he again became governor, and kept his position until 1677. Berkeley demanded strict loyalty to the civil powers, and conformity to the Established Church. He thanked God there were no free schools, nor printing, in his colony, and hoped there would not be for a hundred years; "for learning has brought disobedience into the world, and printing has divulged [it] and libels against the best governments." Being removed from office in 1677, he returned to England under a sense of disgrace, and died in a few weeks after his arrival.

CHAPTER VI.

PLYMOUTH, PORTSMOUTH, AND DOVER.

79. Great religious differences now existed in England. King James I., who thought himself at least as wise as Solomon, wanted all his subjects to believe and worship just as he did. A very large party in the nation did not like some forms of the Established Church, and were especially shocked at the Sunday sports which were recommended and even commanded by the king himself.

80. Many hundreds of these **Puritans,**[1] finding that there was no toleration for their views in England, left the Church, and as many as were able sought greater freedom in Holland. They were then called Separatists, or Independents, while the great mass of the Puritans staid in the Church, though protesting against some of its rites.

81. The Separatists in Holland were still English at heart, and did not want their children to grow up ignorant of the language and customs of their native land. They resolved, therefore, to seek homes in the American wilderness, where, under English laws, they might have freedom to worship God in the way which seemed to them right. From a thousand pilgrims in Holland, a hundred were chosen to be founders of the new state. They passed over to England, and, after several accidents and delays, set sail for America in September, 1620, from Plymouth.

82. The Mayflower.—Though a patent had been secured from the London Company (§ 60), it proved useless because the per-

son in whose name it was given did not go with the colonists; so that the little ship Mayflower set forth on her voyage without warrant or charter from King, Parliament, or Company. Unlike the Virginian adventurers (§ 61), the "Pilgrims"[2] took their wives and children with them, and came to live and die in America.

83. Founding of the Plymouth Colony.—Their aim was the Hudson River; but after a stormy passage of two months, they came to anchor near Cape Cod. Five weeks were spent in

Landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth, Mass.

looking for a fit place for a new home. At last they came to a safe though shallow harbor, to which Captain Smith had already given the name *Plymouth*. This they chose, and in remembrance of kindness received at Plymouth, in England, they kept the name. Before going on shore, the forty-one heads of families solemnly joined themselves into a "civil body politic" to "enact such just and equal laws" as should be thought fit "for the general good." It was the beginning, in fact, of the American idea that govern-

Dec. 11, 1620.[3]

ments derive "their just powers from the consent of the governed." John Carver was chosen by his comrades to be the first governor of Plymouth.

84. The First Winter.—Then came a winter of bitter suffering, bravely borne. Wolves howled about the wretched cabins, and hunger was kept away only by hunting and fishing, which were not always successful. Governor Carver and half the little company died; but of those who were left, no man nor woman thought of going back with the Mayflower. Early in the spring a strange voice was heard in the village, crying, "Welcome, Englishmen!" It was that of Samoset, an Indian from beyond the Kennebec River, who had learned some words of English from fishermen who visited the coast (§ 87). Massasoit, a chief of the Indians about Plymouth, soon came, and made a treaty of peace which lasted fifty years.

85. The powerful **Narragansetts** were enemies of Massasoit, and a rattlesnake-skin, stuffed with arrows, was sent as a challenge to the colonists. But when Governor Bradford, Carver's successor, filled the skin with gunpowder and sent it back, Canonicus changed his mind and begged for peace. Before the coming of the Pilgrims, a fatal disease had swept away many hundreds of the Indians near Plymouth, so that the tribes, reduced to weakness and poverty, gave no trouble to the colonists.

86. For several winters food was scarce; but when, in 1623, each settler began to work for his own family instead of putting his earnings into the common stock, plenty came, and the white men were soon able to sell corn to the Indians. Though only forty miles distant from the richer and stronger settlements soon afterwards made about Boston, and though it had no charter of its own, Plymouth was independent until 1692, when it became part of the colony of Massachusetts Bay.

87. Maine.—Sir Ferdinando Gorges, governor of Plymouth in England, was a man of great wealth and influence, and a chief

promoter of colonization in New England. In partnership with John Mason, former governor in Newfoundland, he obtained a tract of land extending from the St. Lawrence to the ocean, and from the Merrimac to the Kennebec River; and, in 1623, sent out companies of emigrants to find homes where now stand the cities of Portsmouth and Dover, in New Hampshire. But though among the oldest towns in the United States, these places were little more than fishing stations for many years after their foundation; and, in 1641, the people between the Merrimac and Piscataqua joined themselves by a free vote to the colony of Massachusetts Bay.

Costumes of the Puritans.

88. Conflicting Grants.—Many settlements were formed along the coast of Maine, and so many conflicting grants were made by the king that no lawyer could reconcile them. The noble rivers and safe harbors had attracted attention, as promising wealth through commerce. Few attempts were made at farming, because it was not certain who owned the land, and the nearness of the French threatened much fighting. Moreover, furs could be taken from the forest and fish from the sea without leave asked of any company. So it happened that the English settlers were little more than scattered companies of adventurers. The "first court ever duly organized on the soil of Maine" was held at Saco, in 1636, by William Gorges, nephew of the owner. The land between the St. Croix and the St. Lawrence had been given by James I. to a Scotchman, and it was called *Nova Scotia*. But the French already held this region, the southern part of which they called *Acadia*,[4] and it did not become a British possession until a much later date.

Questions.—How did Englishmen differ in matters of religion? Why did some Puritans become Pilgrims? Describe the voyage of the Mayflower. How were the first years spent at Plymouth? How were the homes of white men first established in New Hampshire? In Maine?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map No. III., Cape Cod. Plymouth. Portsmouth. Dover. The boundaries of Gorges and Mason's patent (§ 87). Saco. Casco Bay. The Penobscot. The Kennebec. The original boundaries of Nova Scotia (§ 88).

Point for Essay.—Imaginary journal of Mary Chilton, the young girl who first landed at Plymouth.

NOTES.

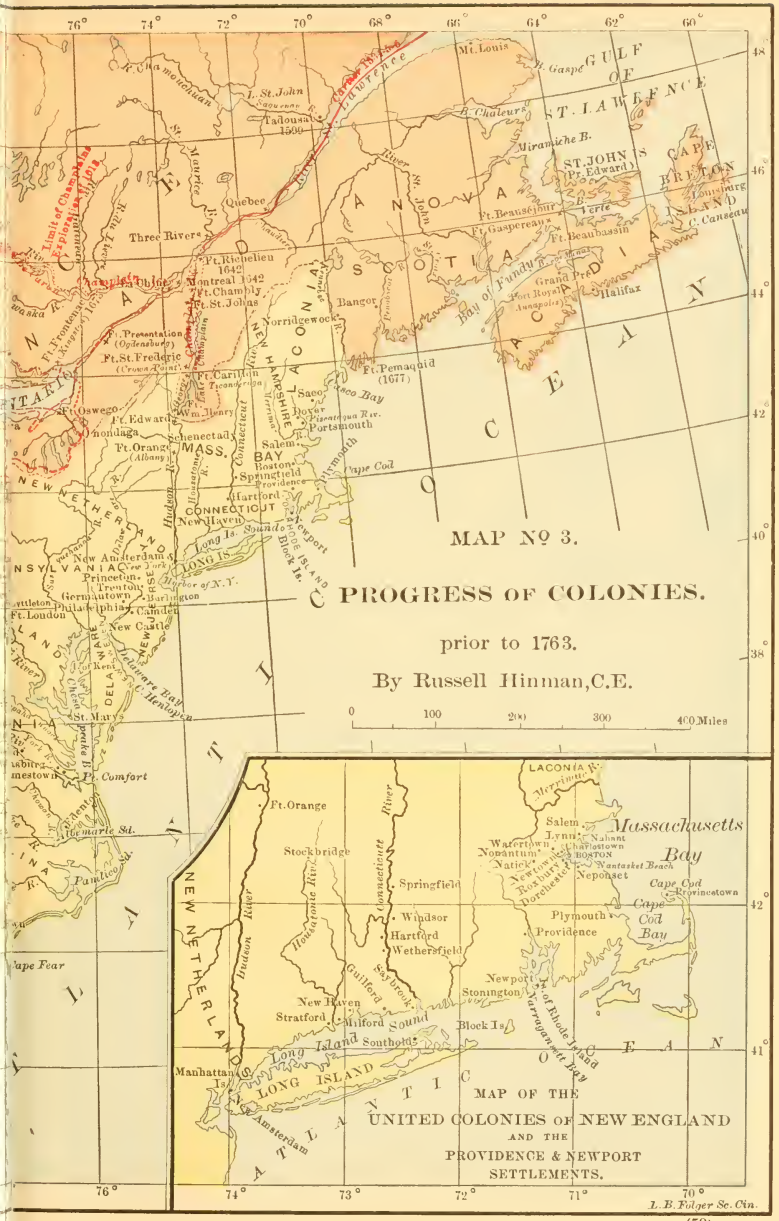
1. THE PURITANS.—The term "Puritan" was first applied by way of derision, in 1564, to a large body of non-conformists in England who were not satisfied with the changes in church affairs brought about by Henry VIII. They were loyal to the throne, and always had at heart the best interests of the Protestants. But they were rigid Calvinists, and no civil power could make them yield their convictions. Some died at the stake for their principles. During the reigns of Edward VI., Elizabeth, James I., and Charles I., the Puritans increased in numbers and influence. With Cromwell and the Commonwealth, they gained control of the government.

2. PILGRIMS.—This name has been applied to such of the Puritans as left England to seek homes where they might worship God after their own manner. They had been told that in Holland there was "freedom for all men." The first band of Pilgrims, under John Robinson and William Brewster, reached Amsterdam in 1608. The next year they removed to Leyden, and many followed them from various parts of England. Bancroft says: "They were Englishmen, Protestants, exiles for conscience, men disciplined by misfortune, cultivated by opportunities of extensive observation, equal in rank as in rights, and bound by no code but that of religion or the public will."

3. This was December 21 according to our present calendar. In the seventeenth century the difference between *Old Style* and *New Style* was ten days. In England, however, the old method of reckoning dates was continued until 1752, when, by act of Parliament, the error was corrected. By adding ten days to the dates given in the text regarding the movements of the Pilgrims, we get the true dates, new style.

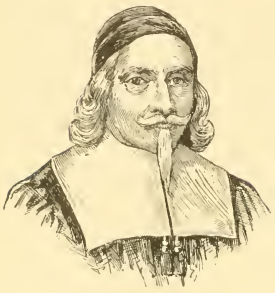
4. ACADIA was granted by King Henry IV., in 1604, to the Huguenot De Monts, who sailed thither with a company of colonists. They founded Port Royal, on the present site of Annapolis, Nova Scotia.

Eclectic U.S. Hist. Map No. 3. Chaps. IV-XIII.


MAP Nº 3.
PROGRESS OF COLONIES.
prior to 1763.
By Russell Hinman, C.E.
0 100 200 300 400 Miles
MAP OF THE
UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND
AND THE
PROVIDENCE & NEWPORT
SETTLEMENTS.
L. B. Folger Sc. Cin.
Massachusetts Bay
Cape Cod Bay
Plymouth
Providence
Newport
Stonington
Block Is.
Rhode Island
Narragansett Bay
Springfield
Windsor
Hartford
Wethersfield
Stockbridge
Ft. Orange
New Haven
Stratford
Milford
Southold
Long Island
Manhattan Is.
New Amsterdam
Salem
Lynn
Boston
Dorchester
Nantasket Beach
Cape Cod
Provincetown
Bangor
Ft. Pemaquid (1677)
Ft. Richelieu 1642
Montreal 1642
Three Rivers
Quebec
Ft. St. John
Ft. Chambly
Ft. Frontenac
Ft. Oswego
Ft. Edward
Ft. Orange (Albany)
Schenectady
Ft. Carillon (Ticonderoga)
Ft. William Henry
Ft. Presentation (Ogdensburg)
Ft. St. Frederic (Crown Point)
Ft. Beauséjour
Ft. Gaspereau
Ft. Beaubassin
Grand Pré
Halifax
Port Royal (Annapolis)
Louisbourg
Cape Canseau
St. John (Portland)
Penobscot
Kennebec
Saco
Piscataqua Riv.
Portsmouth
Boston
Springfield
Providence
Hartford
New Haven
Cape Cod
Philadelphia
Germantown
Princeton
Trenton
Burlington
Camden
New Castle
Ft. London
Ft. Comfort
Cape Fear
St. Mary's
Pamlico R.
Albemarle Sd.
Roanoke R.
Chesapeake Bay
Delaware Bay
Hudson R.
Connecticut R.
Merrimac R.
Kennebec R.
Penobscot R.
St. Lawrence R.
Mt. Louis
Mt. Royal
Gaspé
Chaleurs
Miramichi B.
Bay of Fundy
Basin of Minas
Cape Sable
Cape Breton
St. John's (Pr. Edward)
Labrador
Gulf of St. Lawrence
Limit of Champlain's Explorations 1613
Limit of Champlain's Explorations 1615
Laconia
New Hampshire
Massachusetts
Connecticut
New Netherland
New Sweden
Pennsylvania
Maryland
Virginia
Carolina
Nova Scotia
Canada
Acadia
New England
Atlantic Ocean
Long Island Sound
Block Is.
Housatonic River
Connecticut River
Hudson River
Merrimac
Laconia B.
Ft. Comfort
Ft. Orange
Stockbridge
Springfield
Windsor
Hartford
Wethersfield
Plymouth
Providence
Newport
Stonington
Block Is.
Rhode Island
Narragansett Bay
Cape Cod Bay
Massachusetts Bay
Salem
Lynn
Boston
Dorchester
Nantasket Beach
Cape Cod
Provincetown
New Haven
Stratford
Milford
Southold
Long Island
Manhattan Is.
New Amsterdam
Long Island Sound
Guilford
Westbrook
Indian River
Housatonic River
Connecticut River
Merrimac River
Laconia B.
Merrimac
Nahant
Charlestown
Boston
Natick
Newton
Roxbury
Dorchester
Neponset
Cape Cod
Provincetown
Cape Cod Bay
Massachusetts Bay
Plymouth
Providence
Newport
Stonington
Block Is.
Rhode Island
Narragansett Bay

CHAPTER VII.

MASSACHUSETTS, CONNECTICUT, AND RHODE ISLAND.

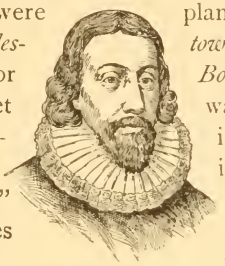


John Endicott.

89. Salem Colony. — Eight years and more after the settlement at Plymouth, five vessels, bearing two hundred English emigrants, entered the harbor of Salem, in Massachusetts Bay. Their governor, *John Endicott*, had come, a year before, and chosen the place. The new-comers were Puritans, but not Separatists: they believed in the union of Church and State, and the authority of the civil government in matters of religion; but they dropped many of the usages of the Church of England, and there was little apparent difference between them and their neighbors at Plymouth. A. D. 1629.

90. The Charter.—The next year seventeen ships brought a thousand more emigrants, with horses, cattle, and whatever was needed for farming. A royal charter[1] for all the new settlements on Massachusetts Bay gave them leave to make their own laws and choose their own rulers, so long as they did nothing contrary to the laws of England. Among them were men of wealth, influence, and high education, who, distrusting their king, thought to build up better homes for their children in the New World. Their chosen leader was *John Winthrop*, a man of noble character, who continued to be either governor or deputy-governor of the whole colony for twenty years, until his death.

91. Towns about Boston.—Reports of the peace and order to be enjoyed in Massachusetts drew crowds of colonists. Before 1640 many towns were planted: *Roxbury*, *Dorchester*, *Lynn*, *Charlestown*, *Watertown*, and others. *Shawmut*, or *Boston*,[2] was chosen for its "fountain of sweet waters" and its fine harbor to be the capital of the colony. Each settlement had its town meeting, in which each "freeman" voted for magistrates, and for delegates to the General Court. Every township was required to maintain a school for reading and writing; every town of a hundred householders must also have a Latin and a Grammar school; and heads of families were fined if they did not have their children and apprentices taught.



John Winthrop.

92. Harvard College.—A college, the first in the United States, was founded at *Cambridge* by order of the General Court. To endow it, all the people brought such things as they had. Those who could do no more, gave a peck of corn yearly. Many gave pieces of silver plate, and one rich man gave a flock of sheep. Rev. John Harvard gave to it (at his death) all his books and half his estate, and it has ever since borne his name. The first printing-press[3] within the present limits of the United States was set up in the president's house in 1639. Its first publications were the "Freeman's Oath" and a "New England Almanac." A. D. 1638.

93. Settlements on Connecticut River.—Reports of the rich lands in the Connecticut Valley soon reached the settlers on the coast. As early as 1633 a company from Plymouth built a fort at *Windsor*, on that river, and began a fur trade with the Indians. Two years later, parties of emigrants from Massachusetts Bay laid the foundations of *Hartford*, *Wethersfield*, and *Springfield*. In June of 1636, a hundred persons, led by Rev. Thomas Hooker,[4] whose sick wife was carried on a litter beside

The Hookers Moving to the Connecticut Valley.

him, marched through the woods, driving their cattle and flocks to these far western settlements.

94. Settlements on Long Island Sound.—Two English noblemen, Lord Say and Lord Brook, sent the younger Winthrop, son of the Massachusetts governor, to found a fort at the mouth of the Connecticut. It was called *Saybrook*. *Guilford*, *Milford*, *Stratford*, and other towns with English names were soon begun along the Sound. *New Haven*[5] was founded in 1638 by a company of Puritans from England. John Davenport, their pastor, preached to them under a spreading oak. The Bible was their only law-book, and members of the church only were allowed to vote.

A. D. 1635.

95. Religious Intolerance.—Having crossed the ocean at great cost for the sake of enjoying a perfect and peaceful society, the rulers of Massachusetts Bay had no patience with opinions

different from their own—less, indeed, than had the Pilgrims of Plymouth, who had suffered yet more for conscience' sake, and knew the hearts of strangers and exiles from their own experience in Holland (§§ 80, 81).

96. The magistrates of Massachusetts Bay held themselves bound to secure not only orderly conduct, but right belief and character in every soul in the colony. They believed that they had gone just far enough in their withdrawal from the English Church. Those who lagged behind them were looked upon with suspicion; but their heaviest penalties were for those who went beyond them in the direction of "soul-liberty."

97. Roger Williams,[6] the young minister of Salem, taught that every man is answerable for his belief to God alone, and that governments have no right to interfere in matters of religion. He insisted, moreover, on the payment of the Indians for their lands, while the rulers claimed that their charter from King Charles gave them full ownership. For these and other differences of opinion, Williams was put out of the colony; and, having wandered fourteen weeks in cold and hunger through the wintry forests, he came to the lands of the Narragansetts (§ 85). Their chief, Canonicus, received him as a friend, and sold him a tract of land; here, with five companions, he began the settlement of *Providence*, and "desired it might be a shelter for persons distressed for conscience." A. D. 1636.

98. Rhode Island.—Many such persons lived in those days, and of them, Mrs. Anne Hutchinson, a woman of great gifts and independent spirit, an exile, like Williams, from Massachusetts Bay; William Coddington, a former magistrate of that colony, but a steady foe of persecution; John Clarke, William Aspinwall and many others went to the Narragansett country. They bought the beautiful island of Rhode Island for "forty fathoms of white beads," and there, in 1638, *Newport* was founded.

Roger Williams.

99. The Pequod War.—Roger Williams soon had a chance to do good to those who had wronged him. The settlers in Connecticut had for neighbors the Pequods, the most powerful and hostile of New England savages, who, enraged by the coming of the white men, tried to engage the Narragansetts and Mohegans in a league for their destruction. The governor and council of Massachusetts wrote to Williams, who lost not a moment, but, crossing Narragansett Bay during a tempest, in an open boat, met the Pequod chiefs in the wigwam of Canonicus, and, after three days and nights of violent discussion, persuaded him not to grant their request.

100. The Pequods had to fight the English without aid. Their fort at Stonington was destroyed by men from Hartford, and almost all of their tribe were killed. The few who surrendered themselves were made slaves, and for forty years no serious war troubled the New England settlements.

May, 1637.

101. The State of Connecticut.—In 1639, Hartford, Windsor, and Wethersfield joined themselves in one state under the first written constitution which was ever formed in America. In 1641 Massachusetts also adopted a set of well-tried laws, giving to every person prompt and equal justice in the courts. The education of all children, the training of young men in military

exercises, and the security of town meetings were among the chief cares of the law-makers.

102. In 1643 a league of the four governments,—Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Haven, and Plymouth—was formed under the name of the United Colonies of New England. Providence and the neighboring settlement on Rhode Island were not admitted because they refused to be subject to Plymouth. But the league lasted forty years, and was of great use in preparing the way for a larger union.

103. The Charter of Rhode Island.—In 1644, Roger Williams, visiting England, got from Parliament a "free and absolute charter of civil government for the plantations on Narragansett Bay," with full power to rule themselves "by such laws as they should find most suitable to their estate and condition." The system chosen was a pure democracy; farmers and shepherds met on the sea-shore or under some spreading tree, and discussed plans for the general good; and though debate was often violent, the result was one of the most wise, liberal, and merciful governments that the world has seen. No person was ever disquieted or called in question for his religion; the best men were elected to office; and the seal of the new state bore the motto of its constitution,—"Love will conquer all things."

104. Society of Friends.—In 1636 the first "*Friends*," or "*Quakers*,"[7] arrived at Boston, a people who, notwithstanding their pure, peaceful, and upright characters, were the cause of great disorder. They thought it their duty to protest against a paid ministry, civil oaths, military service, and several other customs of society. When they refused to leave the colony peaceably, they were publicly whipped and sent away; some were imprisoned; four, who returned, were hanged on Boston Common. Two children, whose parents had been sent away, were fined for not going to meeting; being too poor to pay the fine, they were ordered to be sold as slaves in the Barbadoes. We are glad to know that no ship-master could be found who

would carry out this order, so that it was never enforced. Though the rulers made harsh and cruel laws, there were always kind hearts among the people who either silently disapproved or openly protested; so that the sin of persecution can not be charged upon the whole colony.

Quaker Publicly Whipped.

105. John Eliot.—The people of New England were, as a rule, both just and merciful toward the Indians. Never a bushel of corn was taken from them without payment; and offenses against them were punished by the courts with greater severity, if possible, than if the victims had been whites. (See Chapter XIII., note 3.) Many good ministers were at great pains to teach them the truths of religion: among these the most celebrated was the Rev. John Eliot, the "Apostle of the Indians."

106. Praying Indians.—He translated the whole Bible, as well as other books, into their native language. As the number of

converts increased, he gathered them into the villages of Nonantum, Natick, and Neponset, where he taught them to support themselves by useful labor, and to live under civilized laws which he made for them. These "praying Indians" numbered at one time four thousand souls. They were never fully trusted, however, by the whites, while they were regarded with suspicion and hatred by their own people.

107. King Philip's War.—Metacom, commonly called Philip, chief of the Pokanokets, did not share his father, Massasoit's, friendship for the whites. He saw them advancing farther and farther upon the lands of his people, and in 1675, fourteen years after he became chief, the smothered flames of his revenge burst forth. Most of the savage tribes joined him in a grand effort to destroy the English. Terror spread along all the borders of the white settlements from Connecticut to Maine. Farm-houses were surprised, women and little children murdered, and of all the men in the colonies one in twenty fell in battle. The Christian Indians were faithful to their teachers, and often warned them of the coming danger. But it is sad to tell that they were treated with suspicion and contempt, and even murdered by white women, who were filled with rage at the sight of a dark face. Eliot and his friend Daniel Gookin, for thirty years Indian superintendent in the Massachusetts colony, pleaded for justice against the popular fury.

108. On the part of the heathen Indians, it was a war of desperation without hope. Canonchet, chief of the Narragansetts, an ally of Philip, was taken and put to death. Philip was driven from his lands; his wife and son were captives. "My heart breaks; now I am ready to die," cried the chief, when he heard of their fate. His own people plotted against him, and he fell by a traitor's bullet. His only son was sold as a slave in the Bermudas. Peace was not restored until 1678, when two thousand Indians had been killed,[8] and the scattered remnants of the tribes were unable longer to resist the whites.

Questions.—How were settlements begun near Massachusetts Bay? What sorts of men were among the colonists? What provision was made for government? What for education? Name the eight oldest towns in Connecticut. How much "soul-liberty" was enjoyed in New England? What was said and done by Roger Williams? Who were the founders of Newport? What part did Williams take in the Pequod War? How did the war end? What league was formed in 1643? Describe the charter of Rhode Island. What about the Quakers? Describe King Philip's War.

Map Exercise.—Point, on Map III., to the several towns near Massachusetts Bay. The site of Harvard College. Eight towns in Connecticut.

Read Palfrey's *History of New England.* Neal's *History of the Puritans.* Longfellow's *New England Tragedy. A Puritan Gentleman*, in *Harper's Magazine*, November, 1876. *The Hundred Years' War*, in ditto, June, 1883.

NOTES.

1. This ROYAL CHARTER created a body styled "The Governor and Company of the Massachusetts Bay in New England," and by this charter the Massachusetts colony regulated its affairs for more than half a century. The granting of this charter was regarded by the Puritans throughout England as a call to them to escape the religious fetters by which they were bound, and to seek new homes in that free land of the west, where they could worship God without restraint. Massachusetts began to be talked about in every Puritan household, and plans were quietly laid by the heads of families to join the tide of emigration at an early day. This accounts for the rapid growth of the Salem colony, and of the others that soon sprang up around the shores of Massachusetts Bay. Within ten years from the arrival of Winthrop, it is thought no fewer than 20,000 Englishmen came to America.

2. BOSTON.—The first settlement was made in the fall of 1630 by some of John Winthrop's party, who had first located at Mishawum (now Charlestown). William Blackstone had lived near Shawmut since 1623, and two other Englishmen had for some time lived on a couple of islands in the harbor; but these were the only white men in the region before Winthrop came. The settlement was called "Boston," in compliment to the Rev. John Cotton, who had been vicar in Boston, Lincolnshire, England, whence many of the leading colonists had come.

3. This was not the FIRST PRINTING-PRESS in America. As early as 1535, Catholic priests set up a press in the city of Mexico; a second one was at work in Lima, Peru, in 1586.

4. THOMAS HOOKER, "the light of the Western Churches," was born in Leicestershire, England, in 1586. He was a cousin of the celebrated divine, Richard Hooker. For three years he preached with great power to the Puritan refugees at Delft and Rotterdam. In 1636 he came to New England with his fellow pastors, Cotton and Stone. We cite a few lines from Bancroft touching the pilgrimage of Hooker and his one hundred companions to their new homes: "Traversing on foot the pathless forest, they drove before them numerous herds of cattle; advancing hardly ten miles a day through tangled woods, across the valleys, swamps, and numerous streams, and over the intervening highlands; subsisting on the milk of the kine, which browsed on the fresh leaves and early shoots; having no guide through the pathless wild but the compass, and no pillow for their nightly rest but heaps of stones. . . . . Never again was there such a pilgrimage from the seaside to 'the delightful banks' of the Connecticut."

5. NEW HAVEN.—The Indian village at this point was Quinnipiack. The colonists paid the natives for a large tract of land, "twelve coats of English cloth, twelve spoons, twelve hatchets, twelve hoes, two dozen knives, twelve porringers, and four cases of French knives and scissors."

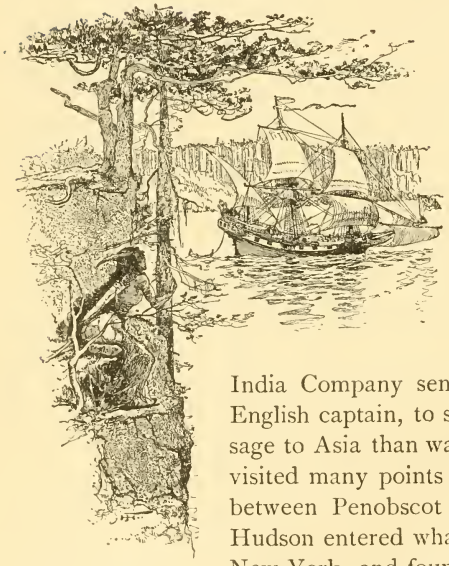
6. ROGER WILLIAMS was born in Wales, in 1599, passed with honor through Oxford University, England, was for a time minister in the Established Church, but soon joined the ranks of the Puritans. He learned the Narragansett language, which was understood by all the Massachusetts Indians and by most of the tribes to the west and south. Williams reached Boston early in 1631, and in a few weeks was called to be pastor over the church at Salem. In 1635 he was banished from the colony, and went directly among his old friends, the Indians. Although Canonicus freely offered him the tract of land on which the colony of Providence was planted, Williams insisted upon paying a fair price for it. He was president of the colony from 1654 to 1657. A writer of his day judges Roger Williams from "the whole course and tenor of his life and conduct to have been one of the most disinterested men that ever lived,—a most pious and heavenly-minded soul." He died at Providence, in 1683.

7. The QUAKERS, or RELIGIOUS SOCIETY OF FRIENDS, had their origin in the preaching of George Fox, of Leicestershire, England, who was born in 1624 and died in 1691. They were called "Quakers" because Fox admonished them to *tremble* at the word of God. Under the leadership of William Penn, they established one of the most successful of American colonies.

8. KING PHILIP'S WAR had lasted for more than a year. "Thirteen towns had been destroyed, six hundred buildings burned, countless numbers of stock of all kinds were lost, six hundred men killed in fights or murdered, and great numbers disabled by wounds. There was hardly a family without its scar of sorrow. But the power of the Indians in all Southern New England was destroyed forever. Some escaped by flight into the western wilds, where the white man had not penetrated; but many small tribes were obliterated; whole families had perished; many who were captured were sent to the West Indies, and dragged out the remainder of their miserable lives as slaves."—*Bryant.*

CHAPTER VIII.

NEW NETHERLANDS. — THE MIDDLE STATES.



Hudson on the River

109. The Dutch Republic was, during the seventeenth century, the foremost maritime nation on the globe. Its trading stations were scattered along the islands and coasts of Asia, and its ships penetrated the remotest seas. In A. D. 1609, the Dutch East India Company sent Henry Hudson,[1] an English captain, to seek for it a nearer passage to Asia than was yet known. Having visited many points on the American coast between Penobscot and Chesapeake bays, Hudson entered what is now the harbor of New York, and found himself at the mouth of a great river flowing between wooded heights to the sea. This he ascended beyond Albany, hoping to find an entrance to the Pacific Ocean.

110. Five years later, **Adrian Block** built on Manhattan Island a small ship called the *Unrest*, with which he cruised through Long Island Sound, discovered the Housatonic and Connecticut rivers, gave his name to the island which guards the eastern

entrance to the Sound, and followed the coast as far as Nahant. By reason of all these discoveries, the land between Delaware Bay and Cape Cod was called *New Netherlands*,[2] while the noble river which Hudson explored has ever since borne his name.

Costumes of Dutch Settlers.

111. A little trading-post, called **New Amsterdam**, was established on Manhattan, where now *New York* stands, the greatest city of the western continent. Another fort was built in 1614, upon the present site of *Albany;* and thither came Mohawks and other Indians to exchange the skins of otter, beaver, and mink for knives, beads, looking-glasses, and, later, the coveted fire-arms. In 1621 a Dutch West India Company was formed, and emigration to New Netherlands was encouraged for purposes of trade.

A. D. 1613.

Costumes of Dutch Settlers.

112. Like their mother-country, the Dutch settlements in America were thrown freely open to persons of all nations and religions; and before long, eighteen languages were spoken in New Amsterdam. The Company especially desired to secure "farmers and laborers, foreigners and exiles, men inured to toil and penury." A free passage from Europe was granted to skilled mechanics. Large tracts of land with many privileges were

offered to rich men who would bring out whole colonies at their own expense. Such persons were called *patroons*,[3] and in time some of them had thousands of tenants on their estates.

113. **Dutch Forts and trading-houses** were erected on the Delaware and Connecticut rivers, where *Camden* and *Hartford* now stand. The English refused to admit that the Hollanders had any rights in America. Though some friendly visits were exchanged between the rulers of Plymouth and New Amsterdam, the latter were advised to obtain a title to their lands from King Charles I.; and not only the valley of the Connecticut, but a large part of Long Island was at last settled by Pilgrims from Massachusetts.

A D 1627.

114. **Swedes in America.**—King Gustavus Adolphus, the greatest and best of Swedish kings, resolved to open for his people a refuge in America from the wars and oppressions of the Old World. His untimely death delayed the execution of his purpose; but the plan was taken up by his Chancellor, Oxenstiern, "one of the greatest men of all time." In the spring of 1638, two vessels bearing a company of Swedes and Finns entered Delaware Bay.

115. All the lands along the bay and river, from Cape Henlopen to the falls near Trenton, were bought from the Indians, and named *New Sweden*. A fort was built within the present limits of Delaware, which received the name of the little queen, *Christiana*. The fame of the mild climate and fertile soil drew many more of the hardy and industrious people from the frozen shores of the Baltic. In 1643 Governor Printz removed his residence to Tinicum Island, near the mouth of the Schuylkill; and neat cottages and gardens were soon seen within what are now the suburbs of *Philadelphia*.

116. **Indian Troubles.**—The people of New Amsterdam and its neighborhood had much to fear from the Indians, to whom they first sold gin, muskets, and gunpowder, and then treated them so unjustly that they might be sure the weapons would be

turned against themselves. Governor Kieft, the third of the Dutch chief magistrates, punished the poor savages with needless cruelty for offenses which his own crimes had provoked. He was recalled in 1647, and Peter Stuyvesant,[4] a better man and a brave soldier, was sent in his place.

117. Governor Stuyvesant visited Hartford and made a treaty with the English settlers, which fixed the eastern limit of New

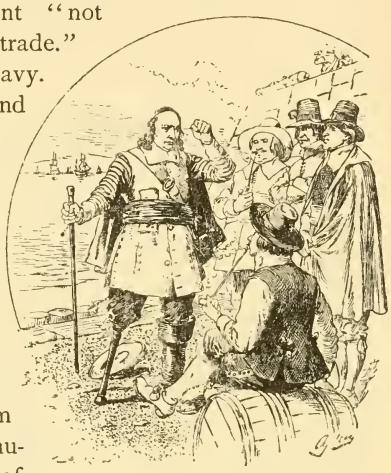
New York in 1650.

Netherlands on the mainland, not far from the present boundary of New York and Connecticut. Half of Long Island was ceded to the English. He made peace with the Indians, and to protect the beaver-trade on the Delaware he built a fort where Newcastle now stands, near the mouth of the Brandywine. A. D. 1651.

118. End of New Sweden.—The Swedes resented this intrusion, and, in 1654, their governor overpowered the Dutch garrison and seized the fort. But Sweden was not strong enough to protect her colony. Stuyvesant soon came with six hundred men, and, as he sailed up the Delaware, all the forts surrendered without a life being lost. The people submitted to Dutch

rule, and remained peaceably on their farms. New Sweden had existed seventeen years.

119. Discontent in the Dutch Colony.—Though consciences were free in New Netherlands, the people had no share in the government. Citizenship meant "not much more than a license to trade." Taxes were often very heavy. The Director was haughty and obstinate, replying to all remonstrances, that he derived his "authority from God and the West India Company, not from the pleasure of a few ignorant subjects." The English, of whom there were now many in the colony, looked with envy upon the greater freedom of their brethren in Massachusetts; and there were few of any race who would not rather be subjects of England than servants of a trading company.



Governor Stuyvesant.

120. English Conquest of New Netherlands.—During a war between England and Holland, an English fleet entered the harbor of New Amsterdam, and demanded a surrender. Stuyvesant had no power to resist; the citizens had no wish to aid him. New Amsterdam became *New York*, and Fort Orange, on the upper Hudson, was named *Albany*, from the English king's brother, the Duke of York and Albany, to whom the whole region between the Connecticut and the Delaware had been given (§ 134).

A. D. 1664.

121. New Jersey.—The Duke in his turn gave the land between the lower Hudson and the Delaware to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. Eastern New Jersey, which fell to

Carteret's share, was already settled in part by English Puritans. To attract settlers, perfect freedom of conscience was promised; and the fertile river banks, so easy of access, were soon occupied by industrious and worthy people.

122. **Reconquest by the Dutch.**—The hope of English liberty was not at once fulfilled to the people of New York. The Duke of York was a tyrant, and the groom of his bed-chamber, Richard Nicolls, whom he appointed to govern the colony, levied taxes at his own will. The people of Long Island complained that they were "deprived of the privileges of Englishmen." No one was sorry when a Dutch fleet reappeared in New York Harbor, and the city was quietly surrendered after nine years' occupation by the English. The second Dutch rule lasted, however, only fifteen months; for by the treaty of peace between Holland and England, New Netherlands was permanently given to the latter. A. D. 1673.

123. **England now ruled all the Atlantic coast** between New France and New Spain; *i. e.*, between Acadia and Florida. Berkeley and Carteret resumed their possession of New Jersey. The former, now a very old man, soon sold his half of the territory for $5,000 to an English Quaker, and in 1674 John Fenwick sailed with a large company of "Friends" to the eastern bank of the Delaware. A liberal government was established at Burlington, giving all power to the people and securing equal rights to every man. East New Jersey was afterwards bought from the heirs of Carteret by a company of English "Friends," of whom William Penn[5] was one.

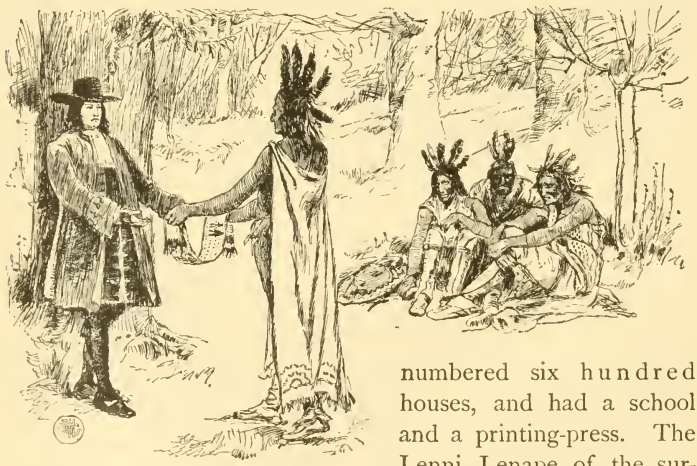
William Penn.

124. **Pennsylvania.**—In 1681 William Penn obtained from King Charles II. a tract of land west of Delaware River, instead of a large sum of money which the king owed Penn's

father. The owner of *Pennsylvania* was given sovereign rights; but the "Quaker king" wanted only to make a "free colony for the good and oppressed of all nations." He had himself suffered imprisonment and persecution for conscience' sake; and he wished, as he said, to make the "holy experiment" whether perfect justice and good will toward high and low, rich and poor, heathen and Christian, were not a safe and sufficient foundation for a state.

125. Buying land of the Swedes, who had already bought it of the Indians (§115), he laid out **Philadelphia**, the "city of brotherly love." In August of that year it contained only three or four cottages; two years later it numbered six hundred houses, and had a school and a printing-press. The Lenni Lenape of the surrounding region had been so humbled by the Iroquois (§26) that they were not able to make war: their hearts were touched, moreover, by the kind and just words of Penn; and the treaty which they made with him under the great elm-tree at Shackamaxon was "the only Indian treaty never sworn to and never broken."

A. D. 1683.



Penn's Treaty at Shackamaxon.

126. "English freedom" was given to the Swedes, Finns, and Dutch, who were already numerous in the region. News of the very liberal constitution granted by Penn drew settlers from many parts of Europe. "Friends" from Kirchheim, near Worms, settled on lands then six miles from Philadelphia, now forming *Germantown*. All forms of belief were free in Pennsylvania; superstitions were met by that calm good sense which is their only cure. Only one trial for witchcraft ever took place; the prisoner, a Swede, was set free after trial, though censured for disorderly conduct. (See § 146.)

Costumes of Quakers.

127. Delaware.—The Duke of York, an old friend and comrade of Penn's father, gave to the son the "three lower counties" on Delaware Bay. They were included for nine years in Pennsylvania; but in 1691 a separate governor and assembly were chosen for the "Commonwealth of Delaware." A. D. 1682.

128. Duke of York becomes King.—In 1685, the Duke of York became King James II. of England. Penn used all his influence with his royal friend to secure justice for the oppressed, and had the joy of setting free twelve hundred "Friends" from the foul English dungeons, where some had suffered many years for no crime but obedience to their consciences.

129. Ingratitude toward Penn.—Though the colonies established by Penn flourished, their proprietor became poor. He had spent all his fortune in carrying on his great "experiment." Many settlers refused to pay the low rent which he asked, as some little return for all his expense; and he who had set so many prisoners free, went to jail in his old age for debt.

Questions.—What can be said of the Dutch Republic? What did Hudson look for? What did he find? What was done by Block? What is meant by New Netherlands? Give the present names of four Dutch trading-posts. How were settlers drawn to New Netherlands? How and why was New Sweden founded? What was done by two Dutch governors? What complaints were heard in New Netherlands? What changes in 1664? What, in 1673? Describe the beginnings of New Jersey. How was Pennsylvania founded? How, Delaware? What of Penn's old age?

Map Exercise.—Map III. Point out two Dutch settlements on the Hudson. Two on the Delaware and Connecticut (§ 113). Long Island. Two Swedish settlements on the Delaware. The three principal rivers of New Netherlands. Extent of English dominion in America in 1674. (See § 123.) Penn's chief city. The capital of West Jersey. The boundaries of Delaware.

Points for Essays.—Chapter VII.: The story of Roger Williams. Old Harvard days. Chapter VIII.: Adventures of Henry Hudson. German Friends at Philadelphia.

Read Brodhead's *History of New York.* Chapters xxii–xxiv. of Bancroft's *History of the United States.* Mrs. Lamb's *History of the City of New York.* Irving's *Knickerbocker's History of New York. The Knickerbockers*, in *Harper's Magazine*, December, 1876. *Lives* of William Penn by Clarkson, Weems, and Ellis. Whittier's *Pennsylvania Pilgrim.*

NOTES.

1. HUDSON had twice tried with English ships to find a way to Asia through the frozen seas of the north. His countrymen refused the means for new attempts, so he offered to sail for the Dutch Company, and his services were accepted. His vessel, the "Half Moon," was a yacht of only eighty tons burden, and with this small craft he first tried the "northeast passage" around Nova Zembla. Finding it blocked with ice, he turned his prow westward, and, after a stormy voyage of nearly three months, sighted the foggy banks of Newfoundland. Cruising south, he landed first on the Maine coast, then on Cape Cod (which he called New Holland), and, before entering New York Harbor, explored Delaware Bay. On the fourth of September, 1609, a boat's crew from the "Half Moon" landed on Coney Island. In 1610 Hudson made his last voyage to America. He sailed through the straits and discovered the bay which bears his name. His ship, the "Discovery," was caught in the fields of ice. Mutiny broke out among his sailors, and they cast Hudson and his son, with

seven others, into a small shallop, and set them adrift among the icebergs. Their fate was never known, but the entire party must have perished from cold or starvation.

2. The United Netherlands was the official name of the DUTCH REPUBLIC, which embraced the present kingdom of Holland, and a part of Belgium. Amsterdam was its chief commercial city.

3. The PATROONS, or lords of the early Dutch settlements of New York and New Jersey, were granted almost princely powers. Provided they would bring a colony of fifty persons to America, they were permitted to select lands having a frontage of sixteen miles along any river bank, and extending back "so far into the country as the situation of the occupiers would permit." They appointed officers and magistrates to govern the colony, and their sway over the people was absolute. No man or woman could quit the patroon's service until the time of contract had expired, whether treated well or not; and the only privilege which these tenants enjoyed was freedom from taxation for ten years.

4. PETER STUYVESANT was warmly welcomed by the people of New Netherlands when, in 1647, he came as director-general to relieve them from the rule of the despotic Kieft. They soon found that he was as self-willed and violent in temper as his predecessor. He was, however, a man of better judgment. He made peace with the Indians, and introduced system and good order into the affairs of the colony. Stuyvesant lost a leg in a naval attack on the island of St. Martin in 1644, and had it replaced by a wooden one, bound with silver rings. Hence he was called by some of his disrespectful subjects, "Old Silver Leg," while for his obstinacy he was also named "Hard-headed Peter." After surrendering New Netherlands, Peter Stuyvesant lived quietly for eighteen years on his farm, which lay upon both sides of the street now called the Bowery, in New York City. He died at the age of eighty, and his remains are now in a vault in St. Mark's Episcopal Church, New York City.

5. WILLIAM PENN was the son of a noted English admiral, and was born in London in 1644. At the age of fifteen, during his first year at Oxford University, he heard the preaching of Thomas Loe, an eminent "Friend," and became impressed with his doctrines. For his disregard of Church he was expelled, and for some years traveled in Holland, France, and Ireland, where he was often at court, and led a gay life. But again falling in with the Quaker preacher, Loe, he became a convert to his views, and adopted the garb and professions of the Society of Friends. He was thrown into prison for heresy, but spent the time by writing in favor of the new doctrines. In 1670, William Penn came into possession of his father's large estate. The grant comprised 40,000 square miles in the wilderness of America, which King Charles named Pennsylvania. When James II. was deposed and in exile (A. D. 1692), William Penn was accused of treasonable correspondence with him. On the strength of this charge, his title to Pennsylvania was annulled; but a long and severe trial proved his innocence, and his province in the New World was restored to him. In 1712 a stroke of apoplexy impaired his mind. He died in Berkshire in 1718.

CHAPTER IX.

ENGLISH REVOLUTIONS. — THE SOUTHERN COLONIES.

130. **Important changes** took place about this time in England, and had their influence in America. A majority of the great middle class of the people and of Parliament were now Puritans (§§ 79, 80, note 1, page 57). They were the party of freedom in civil as well as in religious matters, and they soon came into conflict with Charles I., the second of the Stuart kings, whose ideas of royal authority were as absolute as his father's (§ 79). To escape their opposition, he tried for many years to rule without a parliament, and to support his government by forced loans. Want of money drove him, however, to summon the representatives of the people, and he found them even less obedient than before.

131. **Civil War** at length broke out in England. Many families sought peace and security in America. The king, after many defeats, was taken prisoner, tried, condemned, and beheaded. The last parliament which he summoned voted itself perpetual by an act which the king signed. It is hence called the *Long Parliament*, for it continued in session twelve years. It contained many warm friends of the New England colonies; but the latter were careful to ask no favors, lest they should confess themselves dependent.

A. D. 1649.

132. **Oliver Cromwell,**[1] the head of the army, at length dissolved the Long Parliament, and made himself chief ruler of England with the title of Lord-Protector of the Commonwealth. He was a great man, and England was never more respected than when governed by him.

A. D. 1653–1658.

But the power of the Commonwealth ended with his life; for his son Richard, who obtained his title, had not the strength to keep it.

133. Charles II.[2] was called to his father's throne in 1660. He came with grand ideas of his powers and privileges as a king, and in four years gave away half of North America to men who had shared his exile or helped in bringing him back. During the same years several new *Navigation Acts* gave to English merchants all the benefit of colonial trade. No goods could reach the colonies except in English ships; even the trade of one colony with another was loaded with heavy duties. Americans could buy foreign goods only in England, and must sell in England all their products which the English merchants would take; the rest must be sold "south of Cape Finisterre," so as to compete as little as possible with the interests of the mother-country. Under such harsh laws, it is needless to say, American merchants had little chance of success, for they bore all the risks and losses, while receiving scarcely any of the profits, of European trade.

King Charles II.

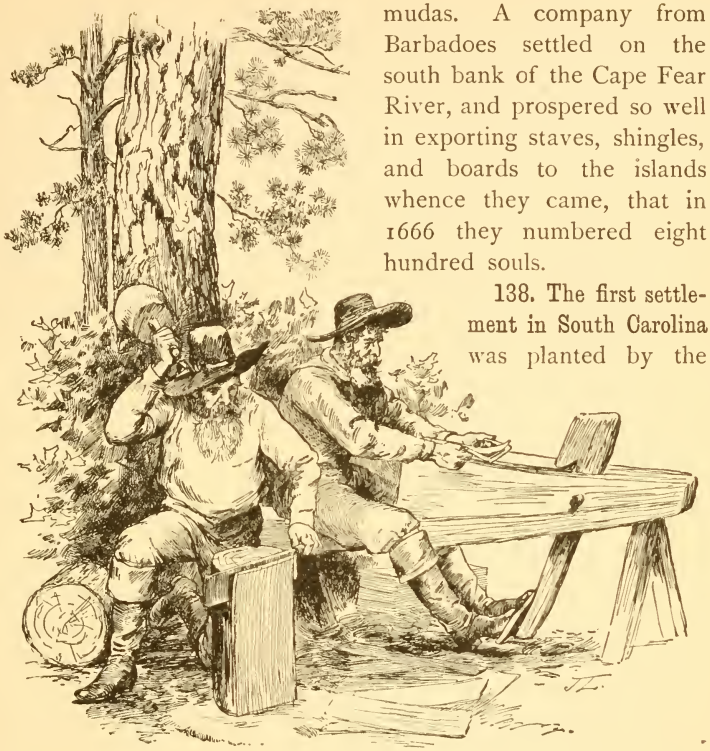
134. Conflicting Grants.—Probably the years of the king's exile had not been spent in the study of geography, for, while giving *Acadia* back to the French, he renewed a grant of *Nova Scotia* to Sir Thomas Temple, who had succeeded the first owner (§ 88). He gave to Connecticut—now made to include Saybrook and New Haven—all the land between Narragansett River and the Pacific Ocean, together with a new and very liberal charter; and at the same time he gave to his brother, the Duke of York, the tract between the Delaware and Connecticut rivers. (See § 120.) Wiser men than King Charles had as yet no true idea of the breadth of the American conti-

nent, and the boundary lines of several colonies, extending from ocean to ocean, were hopelessly mixed. It was under the charter of Charles II. that Connecticut held the lands in Ohio, since known as the "Western Reserve," which made the basis of her school-fund.

135. **The Carolinas.** — Hitherto both French (§§ 48–52) and English (§§ 56–59) had failed to make any lasting settlements in the southern half of the United States. In 1663 Charles II. granted to eight of his courtiers the whole vast country south of Virginia, and extending beyond the Mississippi on the west. Here the English dukes and earls thought to set up an empire with all the show of ranks and ceremonies to which they were used in Europe. To this end, John Locke,[3] the great philosopher, together with Lord Shaftesbury, drew up a "Grand Model" of government. The country was divided,—on the map,—into provinces of nearly half a million acres, each to be governed by a landgrave, with a whole order of nobles under him. No settler was to vote unless he owned fifty or more acres of land; the tillers of the soil were to be serfs, and beneath them were slaves.

136. The "Model" proved to be too "grand" for the woods and marshes of the American wilderness. The farmers and lumbermen near Albemarle Sound, while awaiting the arrival of their lords, struck out a plan of government better suited to their needs; and the proprietors at last consented to its adoption, only reserving to themselves an annual rent of a half-penny per acre, and the right to appoint two governors, the one for the northern, the other for the southern, part of the territory.

137. **North Carolina.**—The Albemarle settlement, though within the original limits of Virginia, was now made the beginning of North Carolina. Its first governor was William Drummond, a Scotchman, who afterwards lost his life in Bacon's Rebellion (§ 73). Its numbers were increased by emigrants from New England, and by a colony of ship-builders from the Ber-



Settlers on Cape Fear River.

mudas. A company from Barbadoes settled on the south bank of the Cape Fear River, and prospered so well in exporting staves, shingles, and boards to the islands whence they came, that in 1666 they numbered eight hundred souls.

138. **The first settlement in South Carolina** was planted by the proprietors themselves, who sent out three shiploads of emigrants in 1670 at their own expense. A site was chosen at the mouth of the Ashley and Cooper rivers; and in the midst of ancient forests, brightened in the spring by yellow jasmine, a little village was begun which received the name *Charleston* in honor of the king.

139. **French Colonists.**—The genial climate drew crowds of settlers. Among others were thousands of French Protestants, whose own land was made unbearable by persecution, while,

strangely enough, they were forbidden to leave it under penalty of death. Their industry, intelligence, and high moral character were what the new colony most needed, and their gentleness and refinement of manners made a lasting impression upon the society of South Carolina.

French Settlers of South Carolina.

140. Their plantations of pears, olives, and mulberry trees soon stretched along the Cooper and Santee rivers. Rice was brought from Madagascar, and was found suited to the lowlands; indigo grew well, and cotton at a later day became the most important crop. The heat of the summers made labor in the forests and rice-swamps fatal to white men, and negroes were imported in greater numbers than to any other colony. In a few years they numbered nearly two thirds of the population.

141. Monmouth's Rebels.—The Duke of Monmouth rebelled against King James II. (§ 128), and tried to seize the crown. The movement was put down and its leader beheaded, but a cruel vengeance was taken upon all who were suspected of having part in it. Hundreds were sold as servants to work in the tobacco fields of Virginia, and their wealth, with the price paid for them, went to enrich the king's courtiers. But Virginia was more merciful than her sovereign. In 1689 these exiles were set free, and many of them became honored citizens of the colony.

142. Covenanters in New Jersey.—King James's persecution of the Covenanters[4] in Scotland led thousands of worthy people to emigrate to New Jersey. Here, instead of being hunted

among dens and caves of the mountains, they went to work in peace and security upon fertile fields; schools and churches multiplied, and it was soon said, "There is not a poor body, nor one that wants, in all the colony."

143. Andros as Royal Governor.—As duke, James had granted a free constitution to his province of New York; but becoming king, he took it away. After several changes, he intrusted Sir Edmund Andros[5] with the government of all the country from the Delaware to the St. Croix. Boston, then the "largest English town in the New World," was the capital of one great despotism. All discussion in town meetings was forbidden; public funds for schools and charities were seized; and when it was said that the new and enormous taxes would ruin the colonies, the rulers answered, "It is not for his majesty's interest that you should thrive." A. D. 1686.

144. Lost Charters.—The great seal of Rhode Island was broken, and its government overthrown. The charter of Connecticut was demanded by Andros in person. Tradition states that it disappeared during the discussion, and was hidden in the hollow trunk of an old oak,[6] which stood nearly two centuries later, a beloved and venerated relic of colonial times. Andros wrote *Finis* at the end of the records of Connecticut, but happily his power, like his master's, was short-lived. The revolution which ended the short reign of James, restored some degree of order and freedom to the colonies (A. D. 1689).

Andros Demanding Connecticut Charter.

Questions.—What differences arose between King Charles I. and the Puritans? What became of the king? How did New England and the Long Parliament regard each other? Who was Oliver Cromwell? How did the Navigation Acts affect the colonies? What lands did Charles II. give away? What plan of government was made for the Carolinas? What was adopted? Describe the beginnings of North Carolina. Who were the early settlers of South Carolina? How did one colony feel the effect of Monmouth's rebellion? How did another profit by King James II.'s persecutions? What was Andros's treatment of the colonies? What did they gain by the fall of James II.?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map No. III., the various territories granted by Charles II. The first city in South Carolina. The extent of Andros's government.

Points for Essays.—The letter of a young French refugee in South Carolina to friends at home. Of a forced settler in Virginia. Of a Covenanter in New Jersey.

Read Mrs. Charles's *Draytons and Davenants* and *On Both Sides of the Sea*. Weiss's *History of French Refugees*. Harrison's *Oliver Cromwell*, in "Twelve English Statesmen" Series. Macaulay's account of Monmouth's rebellion and the sale of prisoners, in his *History of England*.

NOTES.

1. OLIVER CROMWELL was born A. D. 1599, and died in 1658. His is one of the great names in history. "Never," says Macaulay, "was any ruler so conspicuously born for sovereignty. Insignificant as a private citizen, he was a great general: he was a still greater prince." Cromwell's rule was as absolute as any king's: his word was law throughout his reign. During the persecution of English Puritans by Charles I., Cromwell and Hampden are said to have taken passage for America; but, being discovered on board the vessel before starting, they were ordered by the king to disembark. In after years the Lord-Protector took great interest in the Puritan colonies of the New World.

2. Upon the coming of CHARLES II. to the throne of England, the Massachusetts colonists appealed to him "as a king who had seen adversity, and who, having himself been an exile, knew the hearts of exiles." They besought him for "a continuance of civil and religious liberties," and King Charles wrote a letter assuring them of his good will. The Navigation Acts bore heavily upon the people of New England, and they sent agents to remonstrate with Charles against the injustice of such laws. All entreaty, however, was in vain. In 1684

the Massachusetts charter was declared to be forfeited. Charles II. was ever ready with pleasant promises, but few of them were kept. His reign was one of the most corrupt in English history. He died of apoplexy in 1685.

3. JOHN LOCKE was born in 1632 and died in 1704. His great philosophical work is an *Essay Concerning Human Understanding*. Locke was called upon as a wise man to choose the form of government that should be most perfect and lasting. His work showed a lack of practical common sense.

4. The COVENANTERS, or Cameronians, were a sect of Presbyterian dissenters in Scotland who rebelled against the religious forms which King James I. tried to force upon them. In 1638 they entered into a *covenant* "in behalf of true religion and freedom of the kingdom." Five years later they formed a new covenant, far bolder and more sweeping in its terms than the first. In 1650 Charles the Second, when in exile, signed the covenant for the sake of gaining popularity and regaining the crown; but after the Restoration he broke his pledges and cruelly persecuted the Covenanters. Richard Cameron was the founder of this sect.

5. SIR EDMUND ANDROS was governor of New York from 1674 to 1682; of New England from 1686 to 1689; and of Virginia from 1692 to 1698. His appointment as governor-general was very displeasing to the Puritans. His first acts were arbitrary, and he enforced them rigidly. Not only in civil but in religious matters he violated the customs of the people. He decreed that no marriage should be legal unless the ceremony was performed by a minister of the Church of England. His rule became so harsh that the people of Boston could bear it no longer, and they deposed him by force of arms. He was arrested, and twice escaped from prison, but both times was recaptured. He was permitted after a while to return to England. The private character of Governor Andros was not bad, and his despotic acts were done in obedience to his king.

6. CHARTER OAK.—This famous tree stood on the grounds of Samuel Wallys in Hartford, and was blown down during a severe storm in 1856. It was in 1687 that Governor Andros appeared with a band of soldiers, and commanded the General Court to give him the royal charter of Connecticut. The story goes, though there are no contemporaneous records to substantiate it, that Governor Treat warmly pointed out the injustice of this demand. The writing was in a box on the table in front of him while he spoke. Suddenly the candles were put out, and in the darkness and confusion Captain Wadsworth, of Hartford, seized the box and bore the precious charter safely to the hollow oak, where it remained for a long time.

Thirteen English Colonies.

Virginia.—Settled first at Jamestown, 1607.

New York.—Settled first at New York (by the Dutch) 1614; became English, 1664.

Massachusetts.—Settled first at Plymouth, 1620; at Salem, 1629.

New Hampshire.—Settled first at Portsmouth, 1623; became a royal province, 1675.

Connecticut.—Settled first at Windsor, 1633; at New Haven, 1638.

Maryland.—Settled first at St. Mary's, 1634.

Rhode Island.—Settled first at Providence, 1636; at Newport, 1638.

Delaware.—Settled first at Christiana (by Swedes), 1638; included in New Netherlands, 1654; granted to Penn, 1682.

Pennsylvania.—Settled first near Philadelphia, 1643; settlements conquered by the Dutch, 1654; granted to Penn, 1681.

North Carolina.—Settled first near Albemarle Sound, 1663.

New Jersey.—Settled first at Elizabethtown, 1665.

South Carolina.—Settled first at Charleston, 1670.

Georgia.—Settled first at Savannah, 1733. (See §§ 155, 156.)

English Sovereigns during the First Colonial Period.

Elizabeth, A. D. 1558–1603, authorized adventures of Frobisher, Davis, Drake, Gilbert, and Raleigh (§§ 55–59).

James I., A. D. 1603–1625, gave charters to the London and Plymouth companies; made laws for Virginia; wrote a "Counterblast" against tobacco; offended English Puritans, who took refuge in Holland and America (§§ 60, 79–81).

Charles I., A. D. 1625–1649, gave charter to Massachusetts and proprietary patent for Maryland; at the end of civil war with Parliament, was condemned and beheaded (§§ 75, 90, 130, 131).

Charles II., A. D. 1660–1685, gave popular charters to Connecticut and Rhode Island; proprietary patents for all the country east of the Kennebec, and west and south of the Connecticut as far as Florida and the Mississippi; renewed "Navigation Acts," which bore heavily on the colonies (§§ 124, 133–135).

James II., A. D. 1685–1688, as Duke of York, proprietor of eastern Maine, New York, and New Jersey; as king, sends Andros to govern all the colonies east of the Delaware (§§ 120, 121, 127, 128, 134, 141–144).

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW.—Part I.

		Section
1.	What is known concerning the Mound-Builders?	1–4
2.	How did men first reach America?	5
3.	Describe the cruises of the Icelanders.	6–10
4.	Sketch the main physical features of the United States.	12–19
5.	Sketch the appearance, customs, and tribal divisions of the North American Indians.	20–33
6.	What led to the re-discovery of America?	34, 35
7.	Tell the story of Columbus.	36–40
8.	Describe the consequent maritime adventures of English, Portuguese, and Spaniards.	41–44
9.	Describe the inland explorations of Narvaez, De Soto, and Coronado.	45, 46
10.	French adventures and early attempts at settlement.	47–51
11.	What was done in New York by Champlain and the French missionaries?	52
12.	Describe the Spanish explorations and settlements in the southwest.	53
13.	Tell something of English voyages and vain attempts at settlement.	54–59
14.	Describe the first English colony that kept its ground.	60–67
15.	How was Virginia governed?	68–72
16.	Tell the story of Bacon's Rebellion.	73, 74
17.	Describe the foundation and government of Maryland.	75–78
18.	What were the movements of English Puritans and Independents?	79–81
19.	How was the Plymouth Colony founded?	82–86
20.	Describe the settlements east of the Merrimac.	87, 88
21.	Describe the beginnings of Massachusetts and Harvard College.	89–92
22.	How was Connecticut settled?	93, 94
23.	Describe the beginning of Rhode Island.	97, 98

		Section
24.	How were religious differences regarded in Massachusetts?	95–98, 104
25.	Describe the Pequod War.	99, 100
26.	How were the several colonies governed?	101–103
27.	How were Indians treated and regarded?	105–107
28.	Describe King Philip's War.	107, 108
29.	What was done by the Dutch in exploring and occupying New Netherlands?	109–113
30.	What by the Swedes?	114, 115
31.	What changes were made under Governors Kieft and Stuyvesant?	116–120
32.	How was New Jersey first settled?	121, 123, 142
33.	On what principles was Pennsylvania founded?	124–126
34.	What other colony belonged to Penn?	127
35.	What changes occurred in England during the seventeenth century?	130–132
36.	What was done by King Charles II.?	133–135
37.	How were the Carolinas settled and governed?	135–140
38.	Describe the character and policy of James II.	122, 141–144

PART II.—GROWTH OF THE COLONIES.

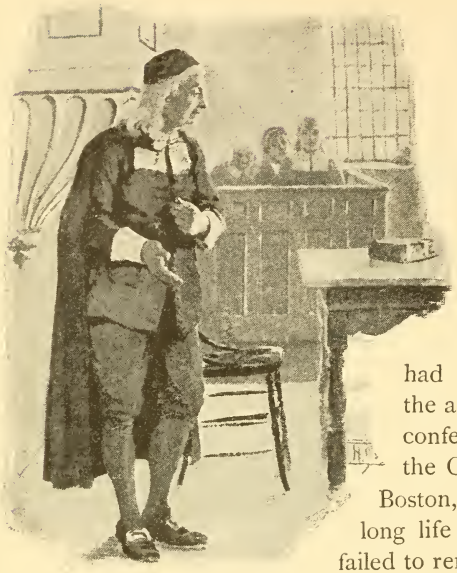
CHAPTER X.

PARLIAMENTARY RULE.

145. Revolution in England.—James II. had been King of England only three years when the Whig or liberal party called his son-in-law and daughter, the Prince and Princess of Orange, to take his place on the throne. The accession of William and Mary was hailed with great joy[1] by the people of New England, who hastened to throw off the hated government of Andros and resume all their chartered rights. A new charter, in 1690, made the "Old Colony" of Plymouth a part of Massachusetts, and added to the latter all the country between the eastern boundary of New Hampshire and the St. Lawrence. (See §§ 86–88.)

A. D. 1688.

146. Salem Witchcraft.[2] —One or two towns in Massachusetts became about this time the scene of a strange delusion. All the world then believed that a person could be possessed by evil spirits. The witch, or possessed person—usually some helpless and harmless old woman—was supposed to rise through her chimney at night, and ride on a broomstick or on the wings of the wind to some meeting of demons. Once accused, no one could prove her innocence; for envy and spite seized this opportunity to vent themselves, and even religion, which should be the protector of the wronged, was now turned against them.



Sewall's Public Confession.

147. Twenty innocent persons were put to death as witches, and fifty-five more saved themselves only by false confessions, before the people awoke from their horrid dream. Then Justice Sewall, who had sentenced some of the accused, made public confession of his error in the Old South Church at Boston, and to the end of a long life the good man never failed to renew this act of penitence at each annual Fast-day.

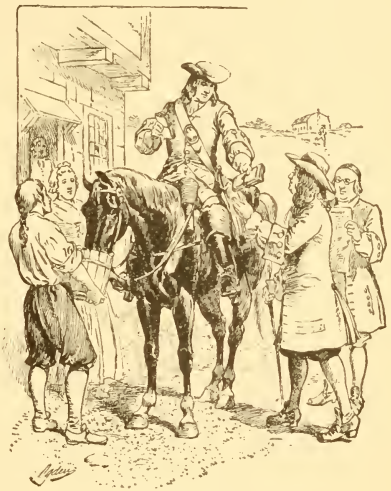
148. Death of Leisler.—The Dutch people of New York were rejoiced when their countryman, the Prince of Orange, became their king. In the absence of Andros and his lieutenant, they made Jacob Leisler their chief magistrate until instructions could be received from England. On the arrival of Sloughter, the new governor sent by William III., Leisler wanted to surrender the fort to him, but Sloughter chose to consider him as a traitor, and in an hour of drunkenness signed a warrant for his execution. All the other colonies willingly acknowledged William and Mary as their sovereigns.

149. The English Revolution established the principle that governments exist for the benefit of the people, and not for the selfish advantage of their rulers. It was a long step toward that greater revolution which made the United States independ-

ent of Great Britain; but for a time the colonies were subject to a worse despotism than before, namely, that of the English Parliament.

150. Board of Trade.—In 1696 colonial matters were placed in charge of a "Board of Trade and Plantations," consisting of five high officers of the crown and eight special commissioners. This Board was to study how to "make the colonies most useful and beneficial to England"; to revise the acts of the provincial governments; and to see how all their money was spent.

151. Plans for Union.—For the sake of the common defense, the Board advised a closer union of the colonies. Postal service, already existing between Boston and New York, was now extended, and letters could be carried eight times in the year from Philadelphia to the Potomac! William Penn drew up a plan for the union of the American colonies by means of a general congress. But the time had not come for union. If it had been made then, it would have been under a military despotism.



The Postal Service in 1700.

152. The Navigation Acts (§133) were renewed and enforced. England was to be the only market and the only storehouse for colonial commerce. Wool, being one of the chief exports of England, was not to be carried out of any colony upon horse, cart, or ship. A sailor in want of clothes must not buy more than forty shillings' worth in any American port. Not a pine-

tree could be felled on public lands except by the king's permission. Later, no iron-works were allowed.

Landing Slaves at Providence, R. I.

153. Courts of Admiralty.—As the colonial juries would not pronounce men guilty for breaking laws like these, new "Courts of Admiralty" were set up to try all offenses against the Navigation Laws. Among the greatest injuries inflicted by Parliament upon the southern colonies was the forced increase of the slave trade. Virginia and Carolina made many attempts to stop the importation of negroes from Africa. But Queen Anne, the successor of William III., was, by the terms of her treaty[3] with Spain, the greatest slave-merchant in the world. Many English lords, also, had large shares in the traffic; and for their sake Parliament forced every American port to receive men as merchandise.

154. Literary Progress.—The twelve colonies now numbered about two hundred thousand people. When Queen Anne came to the throne in 1702, they had three colleges: Harvard in Massachusetts, Yale in Connecticut, and William and Mary in Virginia. There was no newspaper printed as yet upon the western continent; but in 1704 the Boston *News Letter*, the first American journal, was started. It was a small sheet which merely reported facts and never expressed opinions. There were but two public libraries in the whole country; one was in Massachusetts and the other in South Carolina.

155. Georgia.—One more was yet to be added to the cluster of English colonies on the Atlantic coast. The great proprietors of the Carolinas (see § 135), weary of disputing with the people about rents, taxes, and political rights, gave back their lands to the crown. A part of this territory was given by King George II. to General Oglethorpe [4] "in trust for the poor." Oglethorpe was not only a famous soldier, but a good and kind man. As a member of Parliament, his attention was called to the wretched condition of persons imprisoned for debt under laws then existing in England. Their sufferings seemed to him needless as well as cruel, while great, rich lands in America were without people; and he resolved to open in the New World a refuge for the unfortunate of every name.

A. D. 1733.

James Oglethorpe.

156. He himself came over with the first settlers, and lived for a year in a tent, where he afterwards laid out the broad avenues and spacious squares of *Savannah.* The colony was named Georgia, in honor of the king. The neighboring Indians were treated justly, and they repaid the kindness of Oglethorpe by the same friendliness which their northern brethren had shown to Penn. German Lutherans and Moravians, Swiss Calvinists, and Scotch Covenanters were among the early settlers of Georgia.

157. So long as he staid with the colony, Oglethorpe refused to admit either slaves or rum, though the latter would have been received at a great profit in exchange for the pine-timber, which was the chief natural wealth of Georgia. The great English preachers, John [5] and Charles Wesley, who visited America in 1736, strongly opposed negro slavery; but Whitefield,[6] a no less noted preacher, approved and recommended it; and after Oglethorpe's departure African slaves were soon introduced.

John Wesley Preaching.

158. **Spain,** meanwhile, claimed the whole territory of Georgia as her own (§ 49). Foreseeing war, Oglethorpe built forts at Augusta, Darien, and Frederica, and brought a regiment of soldiers from England. War was declared in Europe in 1739; and in the following winter General Oglethorpe invaded Florida, took two fortified posts, and besieged St. Augustine, though without success. In return the Spaniards invaded Georgia, but after a severe defeat at Bloody Marsh, on St. Simon's Island, they sailed away to Florida with their forces much diminished.

159. In 1743 Oglethorpe left the colony which he had spent ten years in founding, and returned to England, where for forty years he was known as a warm friend of America. Considered as an institution of charity, Georgia was not a success: the people who had failed to support themselves in England, had seldom the courage and industry needed for life in the wilderness. Happily, more energetic settlers were not wanting, and Georgia became in time one of the richest and most thriving colonies.

Questions.—What was the English Revolution? How did it affect New England? Tell the story of the Salem witchcraft. What was gained by the English Revolution? How did Parliament govern the colonies? How many people were in the colonies in 1702? How many colleges? Newspapers? Libraries? Describe the beginnings of Georgia. What were the Spanish claims, and their results?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map No. III., the enlarged boundaries of Massachusetts (§ 145). Savannah. St. Augustine. Augusta. Darien and Frederica.

NOTES.

1. KING WILLIAM, as chief magistrate of Holland, had always been opposed to France, and as the conquest of New France was now the great ambition of New England, it was hoped by the latter that a common sentiment would unite England and the northern colonies. William III. was born at the Hague, 1650, his father, William II., Prince of Orange, being then Stadtholder (or governor) of the Dutch Republic. His mother, Mary, was a daughter of Charles I. of England, and sister of the two English kings, Charles II. and James II. He married his cousin Mary, daughter of the last-named king. She died in 1694.

2. The spread of this delusion among intelligent people almost surpasses belief. It was not confined to America, but had a much wider prevalence in France, Switzerland, and Germany. In England and Scotland many thousands of witches were put to death during the seventeenth century.

3. In the words of the treaty: "Her Britannic Majesty does offer and undertake, by persons whom she shall appoint, to bring into the West Indies of America belonging to his Catholic Majesty, in the space of thirty years, one hundred and forty-four thousand negroes, at the rate of four thousand eight hundred in each of the said thirty years." It was further agreed that all the slave-trade of Spanish America, as well as of the British possessions, should be in the Queen's hands.

4. JAMES EDWARD OGLETHORPE was born in London in 1688, and entered the army at the age of fourteen. He served against the Turks in 1716–17, and in 1722 was elected to Parliament, where he held his seat for thirty-two years. In 1765 he was made General of all His Majesty's forces, when he retired upon half-pay. His death occurred in 1785.

5. JOHN WESLEY (1703–1791), was the founder of Methodism. He graduated at Oxford in 1727, and the next year was ordained priest in the English Church. From 1729 to 1735 he was a teacher at Oxford, where he became the leader of a set of pious young men, who were called "Methodists," from their methodical mode of living. In 1735, Oglethorpe persuaded Wesley to go to Georgia as a missionary. His brother Charles and two Oxford friends went with him; his chief object was the conversion of the Indians. It was upon this journey that Wesley met with some Moravian missionaries, and was so impressed that, immediately upon his return to England, he commenced the study of their doctrines, which finally led to his founding the Methodist Church.

6. GEORGE WHITEFIELD (1714–1770), an associate of the Wesleys at Oxford, was the most remarkable preacher of his day,— his audiences frequently numbering ten thousand persons. He was deeply interested in spreading Methodist doctrines, and visited the American colonies no fewer than seven times, preaching wherever he went. His death, from asthma, occurred at Newburyport, Mass.

CHAPTER XI.

FRENCH COLONIES.

A Jesuit Missionary.

160. While Englishmen thus occupied the Atlantic coast, French adventurers were laying the foundations of several important States in the great central valley, and along the southern shores of our country. Missionaries, traders, and soldiers were the three classes who planted the lily-standard of France by the lakes of central New York and the northwest, along the Mississippi and its branches, and by the Mexican Gulf. The Franciscan and Jesuit Fathers[1] were moved by zeal for the souls of the savage heathen; and the chanting of the Mass in their little chapels broke the silence of many a wilderness far from the dwellings of white men.

161. In 1673 **Father Marquette,**[2] with six Frenchmen, made his way, first of Europeans, to the upper waters of the Mississippi, and descended it in boats as far as the mouth of the Arkansas. Michigan traces its origin to Marquette, who established the missions of St. Mary and St. Ignace. At Kaskaskia he became, in 1675, the founder of Illinois.

French Traders in summer.

162. Fur-traders.—Next to the missionaries came the fur-traders, pushing their canoes up every navigable stream from the Great Lakes, carrying them over watersheds to the headwaters of rivers flowing to the Mississippi; becoming as hardy and skillful in wood-craft as the Indians themselves, from whom they received rich furs in exchange for knives, trinkets, axes, and guns.

French Traders in winter.

163. The name **Louisiana** was given to the whole Mississippi Valley by La Salle,[3] the greatest of French adventurers. He aimed to make it a vast inland empire, drawing its wealth from the fur-trade, and subject to the king of France. Building the first ship that had ever been seen above the Falls of Niagara, La Salle sailed through the Lakes, then struck inland, and, after many losses and disasters, passed through the Mississippi to the Gulf. A.D. 1679.

La Salle on the Lower Mississippi.

164. The French in Texas.—Frenchmen were eager to take possession of the great country thus thrown open to them, and their "Grand Monarch," Louis XIV.,[4]

spent more in one expedition to plant a city at the mouth of the Mississippi than all the English sovereigns in a hundred years bestowed upon their thirteen colonies. Nevertheless, it proved a miserable failure. The fleet passed the great river, and La Salle never found his way back. He was murdered by one of his men, and the colony which he had founded in Texas dwindled away until its site was occupied only by graves.

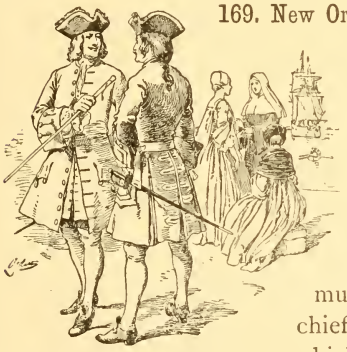
165. **In Mississippi and Alabama.**—In 1699 Lemoine d'Iberville,[5] with two hundred French immigrants, arrived at Biloxi, in the present State of Mississippi. *Natchez*, already a cluster of Indian villages, became the site of Fort Rosalie, a French colony, two years later. In 1702 the chief French station on the Gulf was removed from Biloxi to the fine harbor of *Mobile*, and the State of Alabama received its first white inhabitants.

166. **Louis XV.**—The eighteenth century saw a revival of the scheme for a great French empire in America. The throne of France was inherited in 1715 by Louis XV.,[6] a child five years old, under the regency of the Duke of Orleans. The wars and luxuries of Louis XIV. had left his kingdom buried in hopeless debts. Law, a Scotch banker, formed a wild plan for paying these debts with the untold wealth of Louisiana.

167. **The "Mississippi Scheme"** for a time seemed successful. Rich and poor hastened to exchange their gold for Law's paper money, and the public debt disappeared as by magic. And though France was soon in deeper poverty than before, the colony prospered, for several thousands of people had meanwhile sought homes in the New World. The city of *New Orleans*, founded in 1717, took its name from the Regent. Law himself secured a great tract of prairie-land on the Arkansas, and spent a fortune in founding a city and villages. Though his plan was not fulfilled, a new State was thus begun.

168. **The Natchez** (§ 29) were superior in some respects to other Indians of the region, and their monarch, "The Great Sun," was the proudest of native chiefs. Around him was a

race of nobles greatly respected by the people. They were jealous of the French, whose rapidly increasing numbers threatened to occupy the whole land; especially when Chopart, the commander in their neighborhood, demanded for a plantation the site of their chief village, which contained their temple. Aided by the Chickasaws, they planned a sudden vengeance, and murdered in one morning two hundred Frenchmen. When the news reached New Orleans, a force was sent which surprised and defeated the Natchez. The "Great Sun" and four hundred of his subjects were sold as slaves to the Spaniards in Hayti. All who escaped joined other tribes, and the nation became extinct. A. D. 1729.



French Colonists in New Orleans.

169. New Orleans, which, in 1723, succeeded Mobile as the seat of French government in Louisiana, now contained 4,000 white settlers and 2,000 negroes. It exported to France small quantities of cotton, indigo, and the wax of the candle-berry, a curious production which was much valued in those days. Its chief trade, however, was in the furs which were collected from the northern Indians and brought down the great river in canoes. Discouraged by the report of the loss of Natchez, the Company decided that the cost of the colony was greater than the profit, and surrendered all its rights to the crown.

170. French Forts.—The French guarded their American possessions by a chain of sixty forts from the mouth of the St. Lawrence to that of the Mississippi. Among the most important, besides the citadels of Quebec and Montreal, were Fort St. Frederic (Crown Point), on Lake Champlain; Frontenac

near the outlet of Lake Ontario; Niagara, Detroit, *Chicagou;* forts on the present sites of Vincennes in Indiana, Memphis, and Natchez.

Questions.—What three classes of Frenchmen explored America? What was done by Marquette? What by the fur-traders? Tell the plans and adventures of La Salle. How were Mississippi and Alabama founded? What was the Mississippi Scheme? What State did Law found? What became of the Natchez Indians? What was the early trade of New Orleans? Name the principal French forts.

Map Exercise.—Point, on Map No. III., to the towns founded by Marquette (§ 161). The French settlements on the lower Mississippi and the Gulf (§§ 165, 167). The boundaries of French Louisiana. The chief military stations of the French.

Read Parkman's *Jesuits in North America* and *La Salle and the Discovery of the Great West.*

NOTES.

1. JESUIT FATHERS.—The "Society of Jesus" was founded by Ignatius Loyola in 1540. Its members were pledged to extend the Roman Catholic religion over the world, at whatever cost of personal sacrifice or suffering. In the early history of America, the exploits of Jesuit missionaries among the Indians furnish some of the most thrilling chapters. Their zeal for the conversion of the savages is proven by the terrible privations they endured, many of their number having fallen victims to exposure, starvation, and the scalping-knife. One of them wrote from a Canadian wilderness in 1647, after several of his companions had been murdered by the Iroquois, "Do not imagine we are cast down. We shall die; we shall be captured, burned, butchered. Be it so. Those who die in their beds do not always die the best death."

2. JACQUES MARQUETTE was born in northern France in 1637, and became a member of the order of Jesuits at the age of seventeen. He came as a missionary to Canada in 1666, and with Louis Joliet, set out, in 1673, around the Great Lakes, to find the headwaters of the Mississippi. In due time they reached Green Bay, where a Jesuit mission had been established; they ascended the Fox River to "the portage." A mile and a half brought them to the Wisconsin River; friendly Indians helped them drag their canoes. They drifted down this stream for a couple of days, when they were rejoiced to see the waters of the great river they had come so far and toiled so hard to reach. Marquette died two years later, in the wilderness on the eastern shore of Lake Michigan.

3. Robert Cavalier de La Salle was born at Rouen in 1643. Becoming interested in the accounts of discovery in the New World, he set out for Canada when twenty-three years old. Hearing from the Indians at Quebec of the great river of the west, the Miché Sepé, La Salle thought that it must flow into the Pacific. He determined to find out whether it did or not. His first expedition was in the summer of 1669, and resulted in the discovery of the Ohio River, which he followed to the falls at Louisville. The next year he descended the Illinois. The vessel which he built above Niagara Falls was named the "Griffin": in this he sailed around the lakes as far as Green Bay, then coasted Lake Michigan, ascended the St. Joseph River, made a portage to the Kankakee, and reached the Illinois. Just below the present site of Peoria, he built Fort Crévecœur, whose name, meaning *heart-break*, tells of the desperate straits to which they were reduced. In 1680 he floated down to the Mississippi. On the 9th of April, 1682, he set up a column near the Mississippi's mouth, bearing the royal arms of "Louis the Great," and claimed the vast territory which drains to the great river as the domain of France. Recrossing the wilderness to Montreal, he sailed for his native land to bring out a colony to Louisiana. In 1684 he left France with some three hundred adventurers, reached Matagorda Bay, and built a fort for protection against the Indians. Two years of ill success and heavy losses disheartened the settlers. They blamed La Salle for their sufferings, and one or two of them determined to take his life. He was killed in 1687, on the banks of the Trinity River in Texas.

4. Louis XIV. was king of France for seventy-two years—A. D. 1643–1715. His reign, until towards its close, was marked by prosperity at home and great conquests abroad, while it was the most brilliant period in French literature and art. Until the great discoveries of La Salle, and the compliment he bestowed upon his king in the name given to Louisiana, Louis XIV. cared little for his territory in America.

5. Lemoine D'Iberville, born in Montreal, 1642, early entered the French navy, and became distinguished as one of its ablest officers. Having won many victories over the British, he was chosen to plant colonies in the extreme southwest of New France, where La Salle had set the arms of his king nearly twenty years before. After building Fort Biloxi, D'Iberville sailed for France, leaving his brother, Bienville, in command. He returned in A. D. 1700. D'Iberville is regarded as the founder of Louisiana.

6. Louis XV. was the great-grandson of Louis XIV. His reign covered the period from 1715 to 1774. It was a brilliant era in French literature, but the court was very corrupt, and the wild speculations of the times brought about bankruptcy. During the reign of Louis XV., France lost all her valuable possessions in America as a result of the "French and Indian War." (See § 194.)

CHAPTER XII.

INTERCOLONIAL WARS.

171. King William III. was the sworn foe of Louis XIV. of France, and their wars were fought out even more fiercely in American forests than on battle-fields in Europe. For here the French had savage allies,[1] who, falling upon the inland settlements of the English, murdered women, children, and defenseless men, with cruelties which civilized people can hardly imagine.

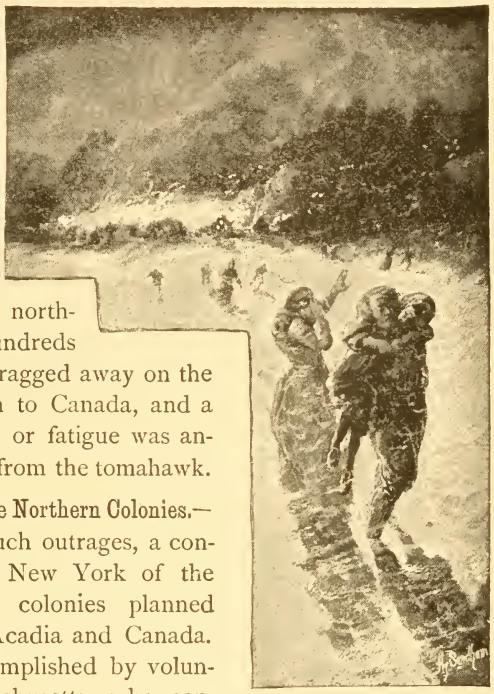
172. Four distinct wars between the French and English colonies are commonly named as:

King William's War	A. D. 1689–1697
Queen Anne's War	" 1702–1713
King George's War	" 1744–1748
The Old French and Indian War	" 1754–1763

These wars were ended in Europe by treaties of peace, but fighting hardly ceased on this continent at any time within the seventy-four years.

173. Attack on Schenectady.—During that time no mother hushed her babe to its night's rest, in any frontier village of New York or New England, with the least certainty that it would not be snatched from her arms and murdered before morning. The inhabitants of *Schenectady*, in New York, were awakened one wintry night, in 1690, by the savage war-whoop, to find their village in flames. The few who escaped the tomahawk, fled, half-clothed, over the snow to Albany. Those who made the

attack gained nothing but sixty scalps to repay them for twenty-two days' march through snows and frozen forests from Montreal. Similar attacks were made all along the northern frontier. Hundreds of captives were dragged away on the rapid return-march to Canada, and a single cry of pain or fatigue was answered by a blow from the tomahawk.



Escaping from Schenectady.

174. Congress of the Northern Colonies.— To put a stop to such outrages, a congress at New York of the northern colonies planned the conquest of Acadia and Canada. The first was accomplished by volunteers from Massachusetts, who conquered Port Royal; but the attempts against Montreal and Quebec ended in failure. At the end of the war all conquests were restored, but a few years later Port Royal was retaken and named Annapolis, in honor of the queen of England. Acadia also changed its name to that of *Nova Scotia*, by which the English had always called it (§ 88).

A. D. 1690.

175. Queen Anne's War was called in Europe the "War of the Spanish Succession," and it ended in placing a French prince on the throne of Spain. This was a serious matter for the English colonies, as it united their French and Spanish rivals, who hemmed them in on the north,

A. D. 1702–1713.

west, and south. Spaniards as well as French now stirred up the Indians to attack the English towns.

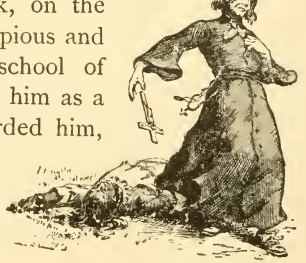
176. In return, Governor Moore, of South Carolina, led a company of volunteers through the pine forests which then covered Georgia, and attacked the Spanish settlements on Appalachee Bay. A force of twenty-three Spaniards and four hundred Indians was defeated; six towns submitted to the English, and many of their people joined the South Carolina colony. A French fleet from Havana attempted the next year to capture Charleston, but so brave was the defense that the invaders had to retire with immense loss. The boundary between Georgia and Florida was pushed far south of the limit which Spain had claimed before the war.

A. D. 1705.

177. **The settlements on Albemarle and Pamlico sounds** were nearly destroyed by the Tuscaroras. Their wrath had been excited by a survey of their lands for a new colony of Germans, and they resolved to kill all the white men. The war was fierce and long, but at last the Indians were so far subdued that they left their old hunting-grounds, and moving northward became the sixth nation in the League of the Iroquois (§26).

A. D. 1713.

178. **The French in Maine.**—The French still claimed the greater part of Maine; and their westernmost station was at Norridgewock, on the Kennebec. Here Father Râle, a pious and learned priest, had gathered a school of Indian converts, who looked upon him as a saint. The English colonists regarded him, however, as a promoter of savage raids upon their homes, and several attempts were made to capture him. In one of these raids an Indian village above



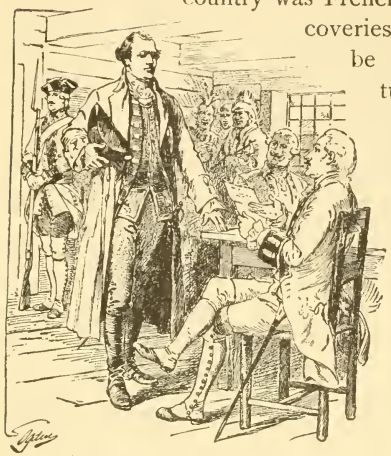
Death of Father Râle.

Bangor, on the Penobscot, was burned to the ground. At length Râle's settlement was surprised by a party from New England; he made no effort to escape, but bravely met death in protecting the retreat of his flock. His chapel was burnt, with all the Indian cabins. A. D. 1724.

179. **A new war** soon broke out between Florida and the English colonies at the south. General Oglethorpe besieged St. Augustine without success; the Spaniards invading Georgia, were driven from Frederica with great loss. (See § 158.) All the colonies north of Carolina furnished men to a great English fleet for the conquest of Mexico and the Spanish West Indies. *Carthagena* on the South American coast was taken, and its fortresses were thrown down; but there was nothing gained to balance the loss of 20,000 men. Nine tenths of all the colonial troops fell victims to the unhealthful climate. A. D. 1740–1742.

180. **King George's War.**—These colonial contests were only a part of the "War of the Austrian Succession," in which nearly all Europe was engaged. In America it was known as "King George's War." Its chief event in the north was the capture of Louisburg, on Cape Breton Island, then the strongest fortress in America. The main burden of the undertaking was borne by the farmers and fishermen of New England; and their success was of great service as proving their power. In 1748 peace was restored, one of its conditions being the restoration of all conquests. Thus, eight years of untold suffering and loss left the boundaries of all the nations unchanged. A. D. 1744–1748.

181. **The Ohio Valley.**—French forts and English settlements had now extended so far as to meet in the Ohio Valley. In 1753 Governor Dinwiddie, of Virginia, sent George Washington, then twenty-one years of age, to know from the French commander at Ft. Le Bœuf, on the Alleghany, "his reasons for invading the British dominions." It was replied that the whole



Washington at Fort Le Bœuf.

country was French by right of La Salle's discoveries, and that it could and would be defended. Washington returned, in great peril from Indian bullets and floating ice, and the next year was put in command of an expedition to finish and defend a fort already begun by the English at the forks of the Ohio.

182. Washington's Failure.—Before his arrival the French had seized the fort, which they named Du Quesne [kāne] in honor of the governor of New France. Washington surprised and defeated a party of the enemy; and while awaiting the promised aid from the colonies, he fortified his little camp in the "Great Meadows," and named it *Fort Necessity*. No help came, excepting a company from South Carolina; and its captain, who held a commission from the king, claimed to be the superior of Washington, who, though a lieutenant-colonel, had received his rank only from the governor of Virginia. This unhappy disagreement ruined the expedition. Attacked by the French and Indians, Washington was compelled, after nine hours' fighting, to retreat, leaving the whole Ohio basin to the enemy.

A. D. 1754

183. Union of the Colonies.—The prospect of a general war was now so near that the English colonies were forced to unite for the common defense. A convention of all the colonies north of the Potomac was held at Albany, and a plan of permanent union was laid before it by Dr. Franklin. (See §§ 203–205.) It was accepted by the convention, but rejected by the

Board of Trade in England as tending toward American independence; while the people themselves feared that a central government would interfere with the rights of each colony.

184. French and Indian War.—Though the colonial troops had borne so much of the labor and hardship of the wars with the French, they were despised by the regular British officers, who made no account of their better knowledge of Indian modes of fighting, and expected to enforce the same rules in the tangled forests of America as upon the fields of Europe. One result of the French and Indian War was that American soldiers, while profiting by British drill, learned something of their own value. A. D. 1755–1763.

185. Braddock's Defeat.—In 1755 a force of British and colonists undertook the capture of Fort Du Quesne (§ 182). General Braddock commanded, and Washington was his aid. As they marched through the dense woods, suddenly a swarm of savages

Braddock's Defeat.

seemed to spring from the earth on every side. The British were allowed to fire only in platoons, hitting rocks and trees much oftener than Indians, while the colonists, springing behind trees, took aim with effect. Braddock was mortally wounded, and his men fled, while Washington and his "continentals" covered their retreat with great bravery.

186. Three other expeditions occupied the summer of 1755. I. *The forts in Nova Scotia* were taken; but the honor of the victory was effaced by the cruel expulsion of the peasantry from their homes.[2] These poor people, to the number of more than six thousand men, women, and children, were driven on board the British fleet, and were scattered through the colonies, wherever it suited their conquerors to leave them, from Maine to Georgia. To prevent their return, their cottages were burnt. II. The attempt to seize *Fort Niagara* failed through desertion by Indian allies, and the discouragement caused by Braddock's defeat. III. The portage between *Hudson River and Lake Champlain* was of great importance to both nations. The English built Fort Edward on the upper waters of the river, and met the French, under Baron Dieskau, near the head of Lake George. After a frightful slaughter, Dieskau was defeated, wounded, and captured. The English general, Johnson, built *Fort William Henry* near the field of his victory.

Acadian Peasants.

Sept., 1755.

187. The next two years were disastrous to Great Britain. *Fort Oswego*, with ships, cannon, valuable stores, and 1,600

men, was taken by the Marquis of Montcalm. The Indians of the Ohio Valley fell upon the western settlements and made great havoc of life and property. They were punished, however, by a company of brave Pennsylvanians, who destroyed Kittanning, the chief village of the Delawares.

188. In 1757 **Fort William Henry** was taken and destroyed by the French under Montcalm. The garrison were promised a safe retreat to Fort Edward, but as soon as they came out from the surrendered fortress they were attacked by the savages, and many were killed. The French officers risked their lives and received many wounds in trying to put a stop to the brutality of their allies. "Kill me," cried the brave Montcalm, "but spare these English who are under my protection."

189. Of all North America, France now owned *twenty* parts in twenty-five, Spain *four*, and England *one*. But the misfortunes of the latter had arisen from the incompetency of her officials at home and abroad. In 1757 *William Pitt*, a plain English commoner, came to the head of affairs, and soon new energy was felt in all English movements, from his cabinet in London to the battle-fields of Germany, America, and India.

190. English Disaster.—Before the tide turned, one great disaster befell the English. In July, 1758, General Abercrombie, with the largest army which had ever been in America, embarked on Lake George for the capture of the French fort, Carillon, at Ticonderoga. More than a thousand boats conveyed the soldiers; the cannon were mounted on rafts; and, as the whole force moved down the lake, with waving banners and gay strains of music, victory seemed certain.

191. Montcalm commanded the French. His numbers were less than those of the English, but his works were strong, and he was foremost among his men, cheering them by example not less than by words, while Abercrombie remained out of sight and out of danger. In a skirmish, Lord Howe,[3] the bravest

Montcalm.

and best of the English officers, was killed. Two days later the main army was defeated, with a loss of nearly 2,000 men, and General Abercrombie, though his force was still four times as large as that of the French, hastily retreated in "fright and consternation."

192. Colonel Bradstreet, of New York, with difficulty obtained leave to go with a small colonial army against *Fort Frontenac*. He was completely successful; the garrison surrendered, and an immense quantity of stores and cannon, designed for Fort Du Quesne, was captured or destroyed. A few months later the last-named fort was taken by an advanced guard under Washington's command, and was named *Pittsburgh* in honor of the great English statesman. The same year Louisburg, with the islands of Cape Breton and Prince Edward, were conquered by the combined forces of Old and New England, and France never regained a foothold on the eastern coast.

A. D. 1758.

193. Capture of Quebec.—The great event of the war was the capture of Quebec in 1759. Quebec is the strongest natural fortress on the continent,[4] and the key to all Canada. Montcalm, watchful and brave, made the most of every advantage for defense; and for two months the British forces lay beneath the steep heights, surrounded by enemies and scarcely hoping for success.[5] The quick eyes of General Wolfe, the brave young British commander, at length discovered a path up the cliff so narrow as hardly to allow of two men walking abreast, and so steep that they needed the aid of projecting roots and branches in the ascent. Landing by night, Wolfe sent a small party up the cliff. These overpowered the guards on the heights, when Wolfe followed with his army, and surprised Montcalm at daybreak by the unwelcome spectacle of glittering rows of bayonets drawn up in perfect order on the "Plains

Wolfe.

of Abraham." The two armies were equal in numbers, but the English were superior in discipline, and the French were soon thrown into confusion. Both Wolfe[6] and Montcalm[7] received mortal wounds. As Wolfe was carried off the field, he heard a shout, "They run! they run!" "Who run?" he whispered. "The French." He gave some last orders, then sighed, "Now God be praised, I die happy!" and expired. Montcalm asked his surgeon how long he had to live. "Ten or twelve hours, perhaps less," was the reply. "So much the better," he rejoined. "I shall not see the surrender of Quebec."

194. Treaty of Paris.—The attempt of the French, next year, to retake their great fortress was defeated by the arrival of a large British fleet. Three English armies were sent against *Montreal*, which surrendered in September, 1760. By the Peace of Paris, signed in February, 1763, France surrendered to Great Britain all the country north of the St. Lawrence and the Great Lakes, with the provinces south of that river, now included in New Brunswick, Nova Scotia, and eastern Maine, and all lands east of the Mississippi. Spain ceded Florida to England, and received from France all the lands west of the Mississippi. "Of all her boundless territories in North America, nothing was left [to France] but the two island rocks on the coast of Newfoundland that the victors had given her for drying her codfish." (See § 189.)

195. The Conspiracy of Pontiac.—The Indian allies of the French did not at once accept the peace. Pontiac, the great Ottawa chief, enraged at the transfer of his lands from one European power to another, stirred up a great conspiracy of the tribes on the lakes for the destruction of all the English garrisons. Eight forts were captured. Hundreds of settlers were murdered along the western borders of Pennsylvania,

Maryland, and Virginia. Detroit was saved by an Indian girl who revealed the plot in time, but it had to stand an eight-months' siege. At length the savage confederacy was broken up, and Pontiac was slain while on a visit to the Illinois.

Questions.—How did America suffer from European wars? What four wars in seventy-four years? Describe an Indian attack. What was done to stop such attacks? What is now the name of Port Royal? Of Acadia? What resulted from Queen Anne's War? What was done in Florida? What became of the Tuscaroras? Tell the story of Father Râle. Where was war waged between Spaniards and Englishmen? Describe the chief event of King George's War. What was gained by this war? Tell about Washington's errand in the Ohio Valley. What was done at Fort Necessity? What attempt was made towards a union of colonies? Why did it fail? What did British officers think of colonial troops? Describe Braddock's defeat. What was done in Nova Scotia? What at Niagara and Lake George? What was lost in 1756 and 1757? How was North America now divided? Who was Pitt? Tell the story of Abercrombie's expedition. Of Bradstreet's. What forts were taken from the French? Tell about the siege and capture of Quebec. What was done in the treaty of Paris, 1763? Tell the story of Pontiac.

Map Exercise.—Trace, on Map No. III., the nearest route from Montreal to Albany. Point out Annapolis, N. S. Bangor. The Kennebec. The Penobscot. Cape Breton Island. Louisburg. Fort Du Quesne. Pittsburgh. Lake George. Fort William Henry. Fort Edward. Oswego. Niagara. Detroit. Ticonderoga. Quebec. On Map No. I., Havana. The change of boundaries by the Peace of Paris.

Read Volume I. of Irving's *Life of Washington*. Bancroft's *History of the United States*, Volumes II. and III. Parkman's *Conspiracy of Pontiac* and *Montcalm and Wolfe*. Longfellow's *Evangeline*.

NOTES.

1. Many French officers regarded these Indian allies with a horror almost equal to that of the victims. The savages tormented, killed, and ate their English captives, in spite of the entreaties and commands of the French. They scorned all control; the most important war-movement had to await their whims, and if they chose to butcher and devour the cattle provided for the army, no officer dared object, lest they should desert in a body. "Their paradise was to be

drunk," and, when mad with liquor, "they grappled and tore one another with their teeth like wolves."

2. Parkman ends his account of Acadia by saying: "The agents of the French court had made some act of force a necessity. They conjured up the tempest, and when it burst upon the heads of the unhappy people, they gave no help. The government of Louis XV. began with making the Acadians its tools, and ended by making them its victims." To do justice to both sides, one must read Chapters IV. and VIII. of *Montcalm and Wolfe* in connection with *Evangeline*.

3. "Pitt meant that the actual command of the army should be in the hands of Lord Howe, and he was in fact its real chief, 'the noblest Englishman that has appeared in my time, and the best soldier in the British army,' says Wolfe. The army felt him, from general to drummer-boy. While bracing it by stringent discipline, he broke through the traditions of the service and gave it new shapes to suit the time and place. 'In Lord Howe the soul of General Abercrombie's army seemed to expire.' The death of one man was the ruin of fifteen thousand."—*Parkman*.

4. QUEBEC is built partly on and partly at the foot of a promontory, and is divided into what are known as the "Upper" and the "Lower" Town,—the Upper Town being surrounded by a heavy wall. The highest point of the promontory is 333 feet above the river, and here are built the fortifications which have given to Quebec the name, "The Gibraltar of America." "A hundred men posted there," said Montcalm, "would stop a whole army, for we need not suppose that the enemy have wings." The "Plains of Abraham" are the open fields on top of the promontory, outside the walls.

5. On the 31st of July Wolfe made an unsuccessful attack on Montcalm's forces, which were drawn up in front of the Lower Town. The instant the English landed from their boats, they rushed forward without forming in line or waiting for orders. Volley after volley mowed them down, and a great storm bursting over the town made the steeps too slippery to climb. A retreat was ordered, but the flower of Wolfe's army was left on the bloody field.

6. JAMES WOLFE (1727–1759), entered the English army as a second lieutenant at the age of fifteen. He distinguished himself as a brigadier-general at the siege of Louisburg (§ 180), and Pitt selected him to command the expedition against Quebec, making him a major-general, with a force of 8,000 men and a strong fleet.

7. LOUIS JOSEPH MONTCALM DE SAINT-VERAN (1712–1759), was a French marquis. He entered the army when fourteen years old, and gained distinction in several European wars. In 1756 he took command in Canada, and gained victories over the much larger and better forces of the English. His own troops were mainly raw Canadian volunteers, brave, but without experience or discipline, poorly clad and half starved. Montcalm received his mortal wound within a few moments after Wolfe's fall. A monument common to the memory of the two generals now adorns Quebec.

CHAPTER XIII.

LITERATURE AND GENERAL PROGRESS.

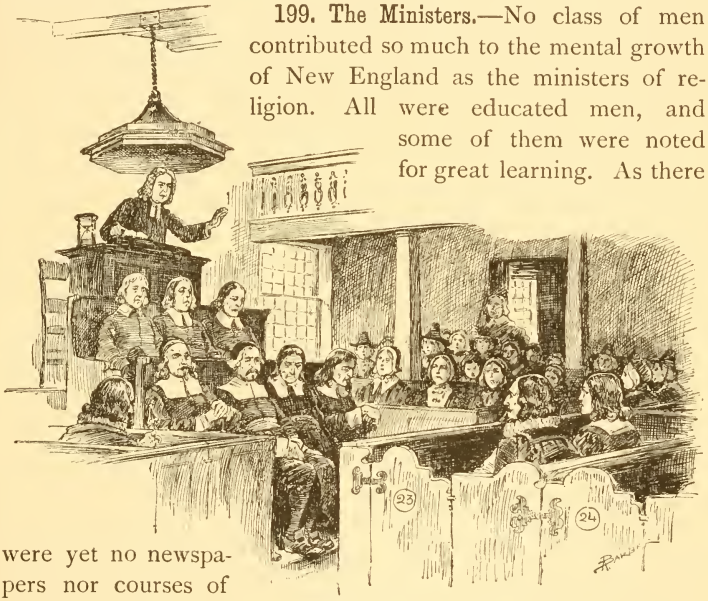
An Early Printing Press.

196. It may be supposed that the first settlers in America found enough to do in clearing the wilderness and making the laws under which their children were to live, without writing books. But so anxious were they to be remembered and understood in England, and to be strengthened by new parties of emigrants; so full of wonder and delight in the new world that was thrown open to them, and so desirous that their children should not lack the advantages that they would have enjoyed at home, that a mass of literature does in fact date from the very earliest years of the colonies.

197. The first book written in America was Captain John Smith's (§§ 61–64) *True Relation of Virginia*, which he sent home in 1608. A few months later he dispatched to the London Company a report of the Jamestown Colony, with a map of Chesapeake Bay and the rivers flowing into it, and a very lively description of the surrounding country. In spite of the hunger and hardship of those early years, he declares that "Heaven and earth never agreed better to frame a place for man's habitation."

198. Besides many other descriptive works, Virginia made one contribution to elegant letters; for *George Sandys*, treasurer of the colony, A. D. 1621–1625, amused himself during his absence from polished society, and the horrors of the Indian massacre (§ 69) by translating Ovid into English verse. The Roman poet had been an exile in a savage country near the Black Sea, and doubtless his translator sympathized with his condition.

199. The Ministers.—No class of men contributed so much to the mental growth of New England as the ministers of religion. All were educated men, and some of them were noted for great learning. As there were yet no newspapers nor courses of lectures, and few new books, ministers were the authors of public opinion, teaching their people how to think as well as how to believe and act.



John Cotton's Church in Boston, Mass.

Among the greatest was *Rev. John Cotton*, who came to the Massachusetts Colony in 1633. He had been rector of St. Botolph's at Boston, in England, and it was in compliment to him that the chief settlement had received its name. He was thought to be the "mightiest man in New England," and

"whatever he delivered in the pulpit was soon put into an order of court."

Next were *Thomas Hooker* (§ 93), whose saintly and kingly presence gave courage and hope to all; *Thomas Shepard*, minister of Cambridge; *President Chauncey*, of Harvard;—all men of great learning. *Increase Mather*, another Harvard president, represented his fellow colonists in England during the troublesome reign of James II. (§§ 141–143). His son, *Cotton Mather*, entered Harvard College at eleven years of age, already a great reader of Latin and Greek. In later life he wrote a vast number of books, of which the chief was his "Magnalia," or religious history of New England. Another was named "Memorable Providences Relating to Witchcraft."

200. Historians.—*Governor Bradford*, of Plymouth (§ 85), may be called the father of American history. His "History of Plymouth Plantation" is a noble record of events in which he took part. The "Journal" and "Addresses" of *Governor Winthrop*, of Massachusetts Bay, are interesting memorials of that fine lawyer and good man, who gave large wealth and great abilities to the service of the colony. His son, *John Winthrop, Jr.*, rendered equal service to Connecticut (§ 94).

201. Yale College.—*Elihu Yale*, a later governor of Connecticut, gave generously to the college which bears his name; but its origin is due to ten clergymen, who, bringing each a few books from his own scanty library, met at Branford, in 1700, and laying their gifts upon a table, said, "I give these books for the founding of a college in this colony." The first terms were held at Wethersfield, later ones at Saybrook; but in 1716 the college was planted on its present site at New Haven.

College of William and Mary.—The desire of the Virginians to have a college for their sons was long baffled by such governors as Berkeley (see note 2, page 52). The House of Burgesses, however, set apart lands for the support of a college, and in 1692 the long wished-for charter was obtained from King

William and Queen Mary, together with grants of money, land, and permanent duties on tobacco. The college took the name of its royal benefactors, and was established at Williamsburg, A. D. 1693.

Other Colleges.—Four more colleges were founded during our second colonial period: at *Princeton, N. J.*, in 1746; *King's*, now *Columbia, College*, in New York, 1754; one at Philadelphia, now the *University of Pennsylvania*, 1755; and that of Rhode Island, now *Brown University*, 1764. These colleges, even in their early years, did good service by training the men who were to be the fathers of the Republic.[1]

202. Jonathan Edwards.—Among the writers of the later colonial period the greatest, perhaps, was *Jonathan Edwards* (1703–1758), whose "Essay on the Freedom of the Will" revealed to the world the most acute and original mind which America had produced. It was written at the little village of Stockbridge, Mass., where he was acting as missionary to the Indians. His childhood was remarkable. Before he was thirteen years old he had read many works in Latin, Greek, and Hebrew, besides the most learned of English books; while his observations in Natural History show that his studies had not been confined to printed pages. He was graduated at seventeen from Yale College, preached in New York before he was twenty, was twenty-four years pastor at Northampton, Mass., and became president of Princeton College two months before his death. His wonderful power as a preacher was thought to be due to his "immense preparation, long forethought, careful writing of every word, touching earnestness, and holy life."

Jonathan Edwards.

203. Franklin.—But the mind which most perfectly represented and most strongly influenced the American character was that of *Benjamin Franklin*,[2] the printer-boy of Boston, the

self-taught sage of Philadelphia, the representative of the colonies at London, the embassador of the United States at Paris, whose plain good sense, genial humor, and honest self-respect made him the favorite of all ranks and classes. He had accustomed himself from boyhood to write on public affairs, and his pamphlets on the interests of England and the rights of the colonies were read with great attention on both sides of the ocean. Examined by Parliament in 1765 concerning the probable effect of the Stamp Act in America (§ 220), he replied with so much firmness, dignity, and intelligence that even the bitterest enemies of the colonies were forced to heed his arguments.

Benjamin Franklin.

204. His most popular work was "Poor Richard's Almanac," whose numbers were afterwards shortened and reprinted in one volume called "The Way to Wealth." It contains a fund of homely wisdom, and Franklin himself believed the rapid increase of prosperity in Philadelphia was due to the fact that the people read and followed his good advice. (See note 4, page 175.)

205. Among his great services to his country was the postal service, which he organized as early as 1754. "Every penny stamp is a monument to Franklin." His simple experiment with the kite, proving lightning and thunder to be caused by electric currents, and his invention of the lightning-rod, gave him a high place among scientific men. His philosophical writings are in the same clear language as his charming story of

his own life and his almanac, for he aimed to make wisdom useful rather than stately.

206. Science.—From the beginning the colonies contained many noted students of natural science. The soils, minerals, plants, and animals of the new continent were all objects of keen research. Linnæus, the noted Swedish naturalist, declared *John Bartram*, the Quaker gardener of Philadelphia, to be the "greatest natural botanist in the world." Virginia and the more southerly colonies had several botanists of European fame. But the scientific reputation of America was established when Franklin, in 1744, drew about him other gentlemen of like tastes, and formed the *American Philosophical Society*. It was an important bond of union among the best men in all the colonies.

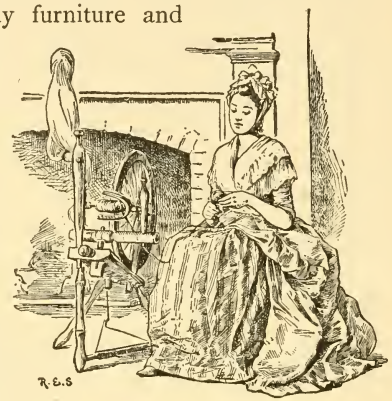
207. *John Woolman* is known only by his "Journal," with a few tracts and letters; but these are of value as expressing the pure uprightness of the early "Friends," and justifying the great influence they had upon the national character. Woolman's efforts went far to put an end to slave-holding among Quakers. He was born in West Jersey, 1720, and died in England, 1773.

208. Pamphlets on questions concerning government and popular rights were the most valuable part of American literature during the second colonial period. The theory of a great, free nation was slowly forming in some of the best minds of the age; and the American state papers of the next generation were ranked in England among the wisest of all ages.

Colonial Costumes of 1750.

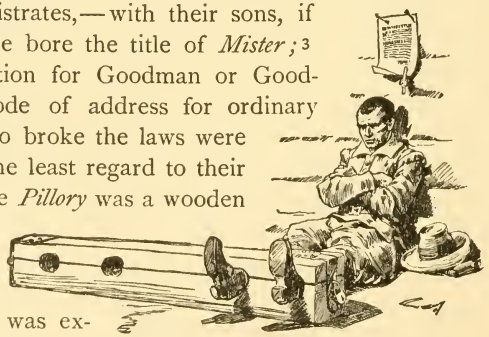
209. Colonial Habits.—All the colonies had greatly increased in wealth by industry and frugal living, while

still among the mass of the people food, dress, and furniture were of the simplest kind. Clothing was usually homespun and home-woven from the wool of their own flocks or the flax of their own fields. Yet there were some families in every colony that imported costly furniture and silver-plate from Europe, and even plain people often spent their slow savings in strings of gold beads or in laces and satins for great occasions. In some colonies clothing was limited by law to the means of the wearer: the grave magistrates had much trouble with the silken hoods and gowns of the women, the "great boots," gold buttons, and ornamented belts of the men; but if the accused could prove that their wealth warranted the cost, they were dismissed without a fine.



Reeling Flax.

210. In New England especially "plain living and high thinking" were the rule. Great respect was paid to educated men. Ministers and magistrates,—with their sons, if college-bred,—alone bore the title of *Mister*;[3] *Goody*,—a contraction for Goodman or Goodwife,—was the mode of address for ordinary people. Those who broke the laws were punished without the least regard to their station in life. The *Pillory* was a wooden frame in which the head and hands of the offender were held fast, while he was exposed to the taunts and sneers of the



The Stocks.

crowd. In the *Stocks*, the feet were similarly held. In Virginia, as in the mother-country, this was a common penalty for religious dissent. When two men quarreled in the Plymouth Colony, they were bound together, head to head and foot to foot, for twenty-four hours. In New York a scolding wife was made to stand all day before the door of her house, having her tongue held in a cleft stick.

211. Roads, in all parts of the country, were few and poor. Whole families went to church through the woods on horseback, the wife, sometimes with a child on her lap, sitting on a pillion behind her husband. In exposed settlements the father carried his gun and left it at the church door in the care of the sentinel who watched for hostile Indians. Long journeys were made, if possible, by water, but stage-coaches ran between Boston and Providence, and between New York and Philadelphia. Like English coaches of the same kind, they were called "flying-machines."

Going to Church.

212. Manufactures.—At first nearly all the people in the colonies were farmers or fishermen; but necessity soon compelled them to make salt, glass, paper, farmers' tools, shoes, hats, and gunpowder; and, though almost every home had its loom, cloth factories were also set up. Circumstances favored inventive talent, for which Americans have always been famous. New England had a saw-mill one hundred and thirty years before one was built in the mother-country. But England, far from encouraging manufactures in the colonies, checked and hindered them, lest they should become rivals of her own.

213. Commerce and Piracy.—The first product of New England which reached Europe was a cargo of sassafras root, taken by Gosnold (§ 59) in 1602. Before long, furs, fish, lumber, corn, rice, and tobacco furnished freight for multitudes of ships; and a lively trade sprang up with England and among the colonies. This was seriously molested by pirates, whose black flags were met on all the seas. To stop this piracy the British Admiralty, in 1696, ordered *Captain Kidd*[4] with a ship to the East Indies. But Kidd, after retaking several prizes, turned pirate himself. For two years he pursued a reckless career of robbery, but he was at length brought to justice, and was hanged in London.

214. Royal Officials.—In a review of civil affairs, it can not be said that England ever sent her best men to govern in America. Younger sons of great families, who were too stupid or too vicious to find places at home, were made governors, secretaries, or treasurers in the colonies, and used their offices for making their fortunes as rapidly as possible. Such, in New York, was the haughty but imbecile Lord Cornbury, a cousin of Queen Anne, who turned to his own use the funds voted for the defense of the harbor, and told the Colonial Assembly that it had no rights but such as the queen was pleased to allow it. He was more useful to the colony, however, than a better governor might have been, for he taught the people to stand for their rights. Here and there a royal officer may have been more just and kind, but as a class they regarded their own interests first, England's next, but a long way after, and those of the colonies last of all. Even at home those who had charge of colonial affairs were usually less wise than great. The Duke of Newcastle, who for twenty-four years was minister for British America, owed his position partly to his stupidity, the prime minister fearing to have able men about him. The duke is said to have directed letters to the "Island of New England," and to have been unable to tell whether Jamaica is in the Mediterranean Sea or elsewhere.

A. D. 1702–1709.

A. D. 1724–1748.

Questions.—Did the first settlers in America write books? Name some writings of John Smith. One, of George Sandys. What good was done by ministers in New England? Name some of the more important ones. What governors have left writings? How was Yale College founded? How, when, and where was the College of William and Mary established? Name four other colleges in the colonies. What can be said of the life and writings of Jonathan Edwards? Describe Franklin's self-training and his influence. His writings. His public services and discoveries in science. What can be said of science in the colonies? By what work is John Woolman known? On what subjects did Americans write best, and why? How did the colonists clothe themselves and furnish their houses? What titles did they use? What punishments were customary? How did they travel to church and elsewhere? What manufactures were carried on in the colonies? What products were sent abroad? Tell the story of Captain Kidd. What kinds of Englishmen tried to govern America?

Points for Essays.—Scenes in the life of Franklin. Journal of a voyage from Boston to Philadelphia, calling at New York, in 1720.

Read Volumes I. and II. of Tyler's *History of American Literature.* Volume I. of Duyckinck's *Cyclopædia of American Literature.* Franklin's *Autobiography.* Palfrey's or Elliott's *History of New England.* Irving's *History of New York by Dietrich Knickerbocker.* Longfellow's *Courtship of Miles Standish* and *New England Tragedy.* Whittier's *Margaret Smith's Journal, Mabel Martin*, and *The Changeling.* Hawthorne's *Twice Told Tales*, and other stories of the colonies in New England. McMaster's *History of the American People*, Vol. I., and articles on colonial manners and customs by John Fiske, T. W. Higginson, John Esten Cooke, Geo. W. Cable, Edward Eggleston, and others, in *Harper's* and *The Century* magazines, 1876–1883.

NOTES.

1. During the same period "there had been established in the American colonies at least forty-three newspapers,—one in Georgia, four in South Carolina, two in North Carolina, one in Virginia, two in Maryland, five in Pennsylvania, eight in New York, four in Connecticut, three in Rhode Island, two in New Hampshire, and eleven in Massachusetts."—*Tyler's History of American Literature.*

2. BENJAMIN FRANKLIN (1706–1790), is described as "the most uniformly readable writer of English who has yet appeared on this side of the Atlantic. No man ever possessed in a greater degree the gift of putting an argument into

an anecdote." During his long public career, Benjamin Franklin accepted very little reward for his services. He drew principally upon his private fortune for expenses. To show his faith in the value of the continental loan, he invested $15,000 in its bonds. When president of the Commonwealth of Pennsylvania, he devoted his entire salary to charities. Franklin was a signer of the Declaration of Independence, and one of the framers of the Constitution.

3. This honorable title was sometimes taken away for misdemeanor. Thus, a minute of a town-council reads: "It is ordered that Josias Plastowe shall (for stealing four baskets of corn from the Indians) return them 8 baskets again, be fined 5 pounds, and hereafter be called by the name of Josias, and not Mister, as he used to be."

4. CAPTAIN KIDD is regarded as the ideal pirate,—a man without feeling, a buccaneer of the high seas; but he probably was not so bad as is generally supposed. When Kidd set out under Admiralty orders to suppress piracy, King William was to receive one tenth of the profits of the cruise, and Governor Bellomont of New York eight tenths, leaving but one tenth for himself. This proved so unprofitable to the captain that he sailed for the coasts of Africa and Asia, and began to privateer on his own account. In 1699 he boldly returned to American waters, and sailed into Long Island Sound, Delaware Bay, and several bays along the New England coast. He even appeared in the streets of Boston, when he knew a large reward was offered for his arrest. Within a week he was seized and sent to jail. He was taken to London, where his trial and execution occurred, A. D. 1701.

ENGLISH SOVEREIGNS DURING THE SECOND COLONIAL PERIOD.

WILLIAM III., A. D. 1689–1702, and MARY II., 1689–1694, called by Whigs to the throne, gladly proclaimed by colonies (§§ 145, 148); charter William and Mary College (§ 201).

ANNE, A. D. 1702–1714, takes contract for supplying Spanish West Indies with African slaves (§ 153); sends Lord Cornbury to govern New York (§ 214).

GEORGE I., A. D. 1714–1727, Elector of Hanover, in Germany.

GEORGE II., A. D. 1727–1760, grants Georgia to Oglethorpe in trust for the poor (§ 155); has part in the War of Austrian Succession, known in America by his name (§ 180).

GEORGE III., A. D. 1760–1820, of despotic temper, but loyally regarded by Americans (§ 219). See also §§ 231, 235, 244, 251.

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW.—Part II.

		Section
1.	What were the causes and results of the English Revolution of 1688?	145, 148, 149
2.	Describe the witchcraft delusion.	146, 147
3.	Describe the policy of Parliament toward the colonies.	150–153
4.	How many American colleges and libraries in the time of Queen Anne?	154
5.	Describe the founding of Georgia.	155–159
6.	Sketch the course of French discoveries in the Mississippi Valley.	160–164
7.	Sketch the course of colonization on the Gulf.	165–169
8.	Name the chief French military stations.	170
9.	Name the four wars between the English and French colonies, giving their dates.	172
10.	Describe King William's War in America, and state its results.	171, 173, 174
11.	Describe Queen Anne's War.	175–178
12.	What were the chief events of King George's War?	179, 180
13.	Give the preliminary events of the French and Indian War.	181–183
14.	Name the chief events in the French and Indian War.	184–193
15.	What territories were acquired by England, and what by Spain?	194
16.	Describe the conspiracy of Pontiac.	195
17.	Name some of the first books written in Virginia.	196–198
18.	Who were some of the most distinguished clergymen in New England?	199
19.	What can you tell of Governor Bradford and other distinguished governors?	200
20.	Who founded Yale College?	201

		Section
21.	What was the origin of the College of William and Mary?	201
22.	Name the first seven colleges in America.	92, 201
23.	What can you tell of Jonathan Edwards?	202
24.	Describe the character and public services of Franklin.	203–206
25.	What is said of John Bartram?	206
26.	What can you tell of other colonial writers?	207, 208
27.	Describe the customary dress, manners, and employments in the colonies.	209–212
28.	What restrictions and interruptions to commerce?	133, 152, 213
29.	What is said of the royal officials?	214

PART III.—WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

CHAPTER XIV.

CAUSES OF THE REVOLUTION.

William Pitt.

215. French Predictions.—"We have caught them at last," said the French prime minister, as he signed away nearly half of North America to the English (§ 194). "I am persuaded," said another French nobleman, when he heard of the act, "that England will soon repent of having removed the only check that could keep her colonies in awe. They stand no longer in need of her protection; she will call upon them to contribute toward supporting the burdens they have helped to bring upon her, and they will answer by striking off all dependence."

216. Taxing the Colonies.—These words were fulfilled. The English public debt was doubled by the French and Indian War (§ 184), and a plan was revived for taxing the colonies with a share of the expense. Now it was well agreed in England that the "power of the purse" belonged to the people; *i. e.*, that taxes could be laid only by the representatives of the whole nation; and violation of this rule had cost one king his head (§§ 130, 131).

217. The colonists insisted upon their privilege as Englishmen,—that as they were not represented in the British Parlia-

ment, they could not be taxed by it, but only by their own assemblies; and some of the best men in England said that they were right.

218. Though hard things must be said of the British government as it was then carried on, we ought never to forget that our fathers were able to repel English injustice because they had been trained to the rights and duties of Englishmen. They hoped at first that the French colonists on the St. Lawrence, so few years subject to the heavy yoke of England, would join them in seeking independence. But under French rule there had been no town-meetings, no colonial assemblies; and the people lacked the spirit to resist even a government which they hated.

219. **George III.**, a narrow-minded and obstinate young king, was now on the throne of Great Britain. He hated Pitt,[1] the friend of America; and his ruling purpose was to exalt kingly authority at the expense of all popular rights. Yet Harvard College celebrated his coming to the throne by a volume of loyal poems in Latin, Greek, and English, promising so to train her sons "that they may be in their future stations grateful as well as useful subjects to the best of kings." Harvard soon saw reason to change her mind.

220. **The Stamp Act.**—In 1765 the famous "Stamp Act" was made a law. All law-papers were to bear a government stamp, costing from threepence to thirty dollars, according to their importance; every newspaper and pamphlet must be stamped, and every advertisement must pay a tax. The day set for the Stamp Act to go into effect was treated by the colonies as a day of mourning. Bells tolled, flags were lowered, and business was stopped.

221. **Declaration of Rights.**—In the Virginia House of Burgesses *Patrick Henry* carried resolutions declaring that the right to tax the colonies rested solely with the Colonial Assemblies. Delegates from nine colonies met at New York in October,

1765, and prepared a Declaration of Rights, with addresses to the king and Parliament, protesting against the unjust Act.

222. **The Stamp Act was repealed** a year after its passage, but new taxes were laid on tea, glass, paper, and painters' materials. The government was authorized to send soldiers to America, and the colonists were required to house and feed them. Two British regiments were sent to Boston, which was looked upon as a "hot-bed of revolt." Fights took place, in one of which,

The Boston Massacre.

called the "Boston Massacre," several citizens were killed. The soldiers who had fired on the mob were tried for murder in the colonial court, but they had a fair hearing, their cause being defended by some of the best lawyers in the colony. All but two were acquitted on the ground that they had fired in self-defense, and the two were only branded on the hand.

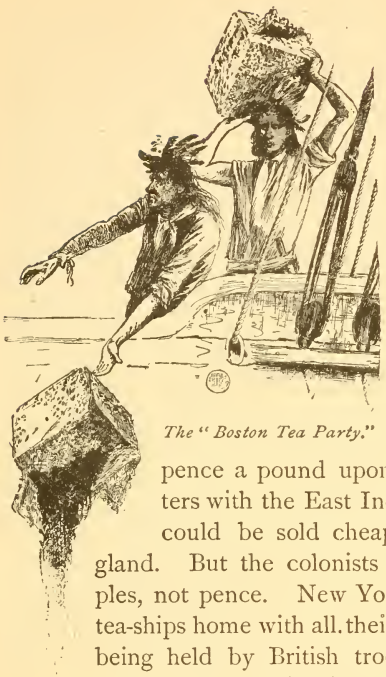
223. **In North Carolina** the general discontent was made worse by the misconduct of the royal governor and his officials, who

shamelessly robbed the people. The "Regulators,"—colonial volunteers who attempted to put a stop to this robbery,—were defeated by Governor Tryon with a British force, and many were slain, while their property went to enrich the governor. Disgusted with his tyranny, many of the planters left the settled limits of the colony, bought lands of the Cherokees to the westward, and founded what is now the State of *Tennessee*,[2] A. D. 1772.

224. **The old laws** hindering colonial industry were in full force. Iron, which abounded in Pennsylvania, could neither be sent to England nor be manufactured at home. The rich pine forests of the southern colonies were made almost useless by act of Parliament, for neither tar nor turpentine nor staves could be made, nor could any tree be cut down without the king's permission. Foreign goods could be bought only of English merchants, and were loaded with taxes for the enriching of the mother-country. The common sense of the people rebelled against such laws.

225. **Rhode Island and the Revenue Laws.**—Rhode Island, with its bays and inlets, was well suited for smuggling, *i. e.*, evading the revenue laws. Moreover, it was the only colony whose governor at the time of the Revolution was chosen by its own people. All other governors were appointed by the king. A governor had the right to grant flags of truce; and, during the French and Indian war, Newport merchants had sailed under these flags, not only as privateers but as smugglers. To stop this lawless traffic, the British schooner *Gaspée* was ordered, in 1772, to lie at the entrance of Narragansett Bay, and question every craft that floated in or out, from tiny market-boats to great East Indiamen.

226. **Burning of the Gaspée.**—Having run aground by accident, the *Gaspée* was seized by eight boat-loads of citizens from Providence; her officers and crew were bound and taken on shore, and the schooner was burnt. Though a reward of $5,000 was



The "Boston Tea Party."

offered for the detection of any of the citizens concerned in the affair, and though almost every child in Providence knew the open secret, not a name was ever reported to the king's commissioners, and the inquiry was dropped.

227. **Taxes on Tea.**— Surprised at the firmness of the colonists, Parliament, in 1773, repealed all taxes, excepting that of threepence a pound upon tea, and so arranged matters with the East India Company that this article could be sold cheaper in America than in England. But the colonists were contending for principles, not pence. New York and Philadelphia sent the tea-ships home with all their cargoes on board. Boston, being held by British troops, could not do this; but after a great meeting in Faneuil Hall,[3] a party of men disguised as Indians boarded the vessels and threw all the tea into the harbor.

228. **The "Boston Tea Party"** caused great wrath in England. Parliament forbade all vessels to enter or leave the port of Boston, and great distress fell upon the laborers who were thus deprived of work. Instead of profiting by their neighbor's loss, Salem and Marblehead offered their wharves for the use of the Boston merchants. Tokens of sympathy poured in from all the colonies: even far-off Georgia and South Carolina sent money and cargoes of rice to relieve the suffering poor in the northern city.

229. The House of Burgesses in Virginia appointed a solemn

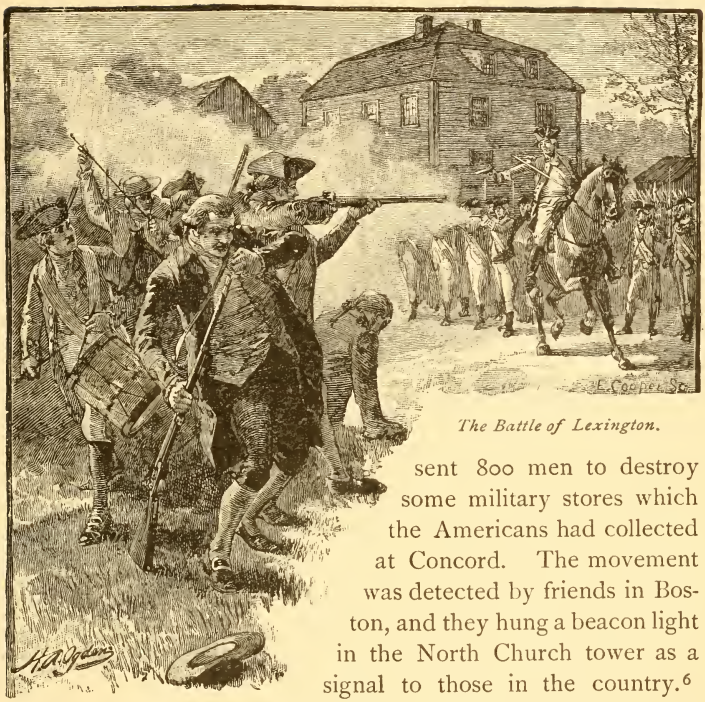
fast on the day when the "Boston Port Bill" was to go into effect. The governor then dissolved the assembly, but its members met in another building, and voted that the attack upon Massachusetts threatened ruin to all the colonies alike, and advised united resistance. In England Mr. Pitt, now the Earl of Chatham, urged Parliament not to oppress three millions of people for the acts of thirty or forty.

230. **First Continental Congress.**—The "Sons of Liberty," who had organized themselves in each of the colonies, now resolved to unite. In September, 1774, the First Continental Congress met at Philadelphia. Fifty-three of the best and ablest men in the country were there; men deeply learned in English law, and who knew well that king and Parliament were breaking the laws which they had sworn to execute. Awed by a feeling of the tremendous results which depended upon their conduct, a long and deep silence fell on all the members of the Assembly. It was broken by *Patrick Henry*,[4] of Virginia,—the greatest orator of his day,—who spoke of the wrongs of the colonies with fiery eloquence, and yet with strict truth.

Patrick Henry.

231. **A petition** to the king, and separate addresses to the people of Great Britain and of Canada, were voted. While declaring their affection for the king, Congress protested against the keeping of armies in America without the consent of the people, and resolved to stop all trade with England until a different plan should be adopted. Companies of "*minute-men*"[5] were now formed and drilled in all the towns. In the midst of their preparations came a rumor that the British fleet was cannonading Boston. In two days 30,000 volunteers were on the march for that city.

232. **The Battle of Lexington.**—On the evening of April 18, 1775, General Gage, commanding the British forces at Boston,



The Battle of Lexington.

sent 800 men to destroy some military stores which the Americans had collected at Concord. The movement was detected by friends in Boston, and they hung a beacon light in the North Church tower as a signal to those in the country.[6] All night long the farmers were mustering in arms. At dawn the British, arriving at Lexington, found a company of minute-men drawn up to receive them, and here the first blood was shed in the War of American Independence.[7]

233. The British pressed on and destroyed the stores at Concord; but by this time the whole country was under arms, and on their return they were so hard pressed by the colonists that their retreat became a flight, and all would, perhaps, have been killed or captured had not fresh troops with cannon come out from Boston to aid and protect them. The news spread far and wide through the colonies. Israel Putnam[8] was plowing

on his farm, in Connecticut, sixty-eight miles away, when a mounted messenger drew rein beside his field, and shouted to him that war was begun. Leaving his plow in the furrow, and his oxen free, the farmer sprang to horse and never stopped until he reached the camp in Cambridge, the same day. Other recruits were moved by the same spirit, and before long General Gage was besieged in Boston by 20,000 men.[9]

For Questions, see page 146.

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map No. IV., Narragansett Bay. Providence. Boston. Salem. Concord. Lexington. Cambridge.

Read Wirt's *Life of Patrick Henry.* Parton's *Life of Jefferson.* Jesse's *Life of George III.* Greene's *Historical View of the American Revolution.* Lossing's *Field-Book of the American Revolution.*

NOTES.

1. WILLIAM PITT (1708–1778), first Earl of Chatham, was America's warmest champion in England during the troubles that led to the Revolution. On January 20, 1775, he said in the House of Lords: "The Americans will never be in a temper or state to be reconciled—they ought not to be—till the troops are withdrawn. The way must be immediately opened for reconciliation. It will soon be too late. . . . . What foundation have we for our claims over America? What is our right to persist in such cruel and vindictive measures against that loyal, respectable people? They say you have no right to tax them without their consent. They say truly. . . . . For genuine sagacity, for singular moderation, for solid wisdom, manly spirit, sublime sentiments, and simplicity of language, for everything respectable and honorable, the Congress at Philadelphia stands unrivaled. This wise people speak out. They do not hold the language of slaves; they tell you what they mean. They do not ask you to repeal your laws as a favor: they claim it as a right,—they demand it. They tell you they will not submit to them; and I tell you the acts must be repealed,—they will be repealed,—you can not enforce them."

2. The most prominent among these settlers was JAMES ROBERTSON, who two years before this time had settled in Tennessee.

3. FANEUIL HALL was built in 1740, and was a gift to the town of Boston from Peter Faneuil. The latter was a Boston merchant, born at New Rochelle, New York, of a French Huguenot family. The lower floor of the hall was a market-house; above that was a town-hall, with other rooms attached. This hall was a great meeting-place at the outbreak of the Revolution, and came to be known as "The Cradle of Liberty."

4. PATRICK HENRY (1736–1799), was a man of limited education, and in early years gave few indications of his future greatness. He entered the profession of law after only six weeks' study of the subject, but his wonderful gift of oratory stood him in good stead, and after the first trial in which he appeared, at the age of twenty-seven, he never lacked for business. Henry was a man of high moral courage, and the champion of the wronged and the oppressed. His speech before the Virginia House of Burgesses (§ 221) thrilled the country, and gained him the reputation, at the age of twenty-nine, of being "the greatest orator and political thinker of a land abounding with public speakers and statesmen." From this time forth he was prominent in the conventions and congresses of the colonies, and, in 1776, he was elected the first republican governor of the State of Virginia.

5. The minute-men were so called because they were to serve whenever called upon, and at a moment's notice.

6. This was the occasion of "Paul Revere's Ride," made celebrated by Longfellow's poem. As soon as Warren, an American patriot in Boston, discovered Gage's plan, he dispatched William Dawes through Roxbury, and Revere by way of Charlestown, to spread the alarm. Revere had the beacon-lights hung in the North Church tower, and then with muffled oars rowed over to Charlestown only five minutes before the sentinels received orders to allow no one to pass. At Charlestown Neck he was stopped by two British officers, but escaped them through the speed of his horse, and proceeded on his way to Lexington and Concord, rousing each household as he passed.

7. Fights between the colonists and the British had occurred in the streets of New York and Boston, in Westminster, Vt., and in North Carolina. But these had a local character, while the armed resistance to a regular British army at Lexington was distinctly a battle for American independence.

8. ISRAEL PUTNAM was born at Salem, Mass., in 1718. Like many other heroes of the Revolution, he won his first laurels in the wars between the French and English colonies which so severely tried the spirit of American volunteers. He was the first to receive the rank of major-general in the Revolutionary army, and had part in several important battles, notably those of Bunker Hill and Long Island. Putnam's impulsive and reckless bravery fitted him better for bold and startling movements than for the careful combinations of a great campaign. Still he was one of the great leaders in the War for Independence. His tombstone, at Brooklyn, Ct., bears the appropriate words, "He dared to lead where any dared to follow."

9. GENERAL GAGE was not only commandant at Boston, but governor of Massachusetts. His arrogance and presumption far surpassed his abilities, and "he inspired neither confidence nor fear." It is mpossible to say how different might have been the result to the colonies if the king had been better served. America has reason to be thankful that her courage and resources were underrated at this critical time, when even her own best men little understood the gravity of the conflict that was beginning.

CHAPTER XV.

OPENING SCENES OF THE REVOLUTION.

234. Second Continental Congress.—In May, 1775, the Second Continental Congress met at Philadelphia. Never had a body of men such vast duties with so little power to do them. There was no public treasury, and no authority to make one; war was already begun, while there was not a soldier nor an officer enlisted in the name of the whole country. Worst of all, Congress could not bind the people to any act; but could only advise the thirteen colonial governments what it seemed best for them to do.

235. No wonder that their first steps were hesitating and weak. In setting a day of fasting and prayer for the "restoration of the invaded rights of America," they desired the people to recognize "King George the Third as their rightful sovereign." They took measures, however, for organizing a "continental army" for seven months, and appointed George Washington, of Virginia, to be its commander-in-chief; while they sincerely "labored for the restoration of harmony between the colonies and the parent state." Great Britain had the whole responsibility of the war. Americans only desired peace with justice, and Washington wrote at this very time that he "abhorred the idea of independence."

236. The Earl of Chatham remarked to Franklin that the success of the American cause was the last hope of liberty for England. The debates in Parliament proved to the colonists that their contest was with the king and ministry, not with the English people. Several Englishmen of rank resigned their

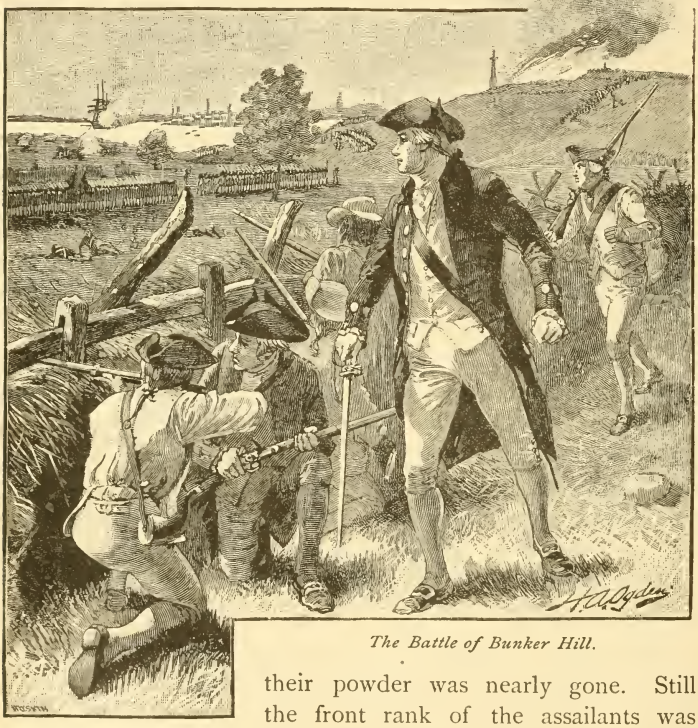
places in the army and government rather than fight against America. One of them, Lord Effingham, received the public thanks of the citizens of London for having acted "as a true Englishman." It was fortunate, however, that Lord Chatham's plan for peace failed. If it had succeeded, England might have kept her colonies on the condition of governing them justly. It was better for her, for them, and for the world that she should cease to govern them at all.

237. The road to Canada by way of Lake Champlain was felt to be of great importance. In May, 1775, the forts at Ticonderoga and Crown Point were surprised by Ethan Allen[1] and Seth Warner[2] with a handful of "Green Mountain Boys," and were surrendered without a shot. Ticonderoga had cost England a very large amount of money and many lives (see pages 111, 112). It was taken "in ten minutes by a few undisciplined volunteers, without the loss of life or limb." In it was an immense supply of cannon and other war-material, some of which were used later at Boston.

238. Three British generals[3] soon to become well known in America,— Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne,— now arrived with heavy re-enforcements at Boston. General Ward, in command of the Americans, resolved to push the siege more closely. To this end he ordered Colonel Prescott to fortify Bunker Hill. At the last moment Breed's Hill was chosen instead, as a still more commanding position, but the battle which followed took its name from the former.

239. Battle of Bunker Hill.—During the night following June 16, an earth-work was thrown up. As soon as the morning light showed it to the British, a cannonade was opened from their fleet and the opposite shore, and 2,000 men were sent to storm the work. The Americans had only dropped the spade to seize the musket. They waited until they could see the whites of their enemies' eyes, then fired with deadly effect. The attacking column broke and fell back to the foot of the hill.

240. The village of Charlestown was then set on fire. Under cover of its smoke the enemy rallied and ascended the hill, only to be beaten back as before. Fresh troops came from Boston, and a third attack was made. The spirit of the defenders had not flagged, but



The Battle of Bunker Hill.

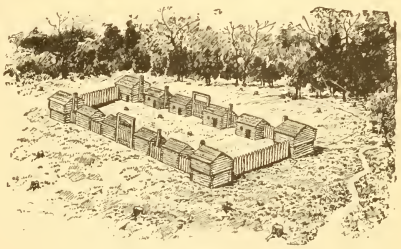
their powder was nearly gone. Still the front rank of the assailants was again mown down; and the Americans fought with the butt ends of their guns, until they retired in good order to Prospect Hill, only a mile in the rear. General Gage wrote home, "The trials we have had prove the rebels are not the despicable rabble too many have supposed them to

be." His command had already been given to General Howe, brother of him who had fallen at Ticonderoga and whom Massachusetts had loved and honored (§ 191, and note).

241. Washington in Command.—On the 3d of July Washington took command of the forces besieging Boston. They could scarcely be called an army: arms, uniform, and drill were lacking; each man had brought his own musket and powder-horn, if he happened to have them, and lived mainly on food which he received from home. Washington's first task was to make an army out of these raw recruits, and happily the inaction of the British gave him a few months for the work.

242. The Mecklenburg Resolutions.—Still very few colonists desired a separation from England. The patriots of Mecklenburg County, in North Carolina, had, however, advanced to that conclusion, in which the whole country afterwards joined them. In May, 1775, they met at Charlotte, and renounced their allegiance to king and Parliament. The "Mecklenburg Resolutions" were the prelude to the "Declaration of Independence."

243. Kentucky Settled.—During the same year the foundations were laid of a new State west of the Alleghanies. Daniel Boone, the famous hunter, Henderson, Kenton, Floyd, Harrod, Logan, McAfee, and others, some with their families, settled the rich open country near the Kentucky River. Free from the first, they never owned the dominion of England; and they were among the earliest in America to declare their independence, on a footing of obedience to local law. Courts, churches, and schools were established, and order and justice were held as dear as freedom. (See § 277.)

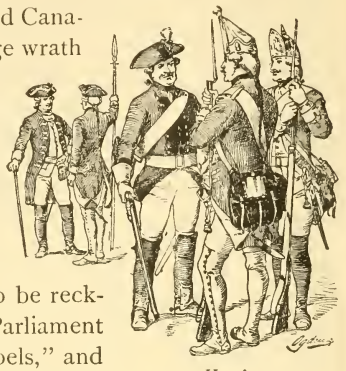


A Kentucky Block-house.

Longitude West from
TERRITORY WITHIN THE CHARTER LIMITS OF MASSACHUSETTS COLONY
TERRITORY WITHIN THE CHARTER LIMITS OF CONNECTICUT COLO
LAKE MICHIGAN
LAKE HURON
LAKE ST. CLAIR
Detroit
Chicago
Sandusky
Green B.
Saginaw B.
Rock Riv.
Fox R.
Kankakee R.
Maumee
Illinois River
Kaskaskia R.
Wabash River
White Riv.
Gt. Miami R.
Scioto River
Licking R.
Ohio River
Ft. Washington
Shawnee Town
Marietta 1788
Louisville
Ft. McClellan
Lexington 1779
Boonesboro 1775
Harrodstown 1774
Kentucky
St. Asaph 1775
Green River
Falls
Cumberland River
Tennessee River
Duck River
Clinch R.
Holston R.
French Br. R.
Cumberland Mountains
Blue Ridge
Cowpe
Salvola
Ninety
Augusta
Ft. Galphin
Ocmulgee R.
Oconee River
Ogeechee R.
Flint River
Chattahoochee R.
Tallapoosa R.
Coosa River
Tuscaloosa Riv.
Tombigby R.
Alabama R.
Yazoo River
Big Black R.
Pearl River
St. Louis 1764
Cahokia 1682
Kaskaskia
Vincennes
Ft. Jefferson 1780
Memphis
FRENCH PROVINCE OF LOUISIANA
VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
GEORGIA
Eclectic U.S. Hist. Map No. 4 Chap. XIV-XIX.

MAP Nº 4.
COLONIES
during the
REVOLUTIONARY WAR.
By Russell Hinman C.E.
0 50 100 150 Miles 200
ARNOLD'S EXPEDITION AGAINST QUEBEC
MAP OF BOSTON & Environs
LAKE ONTARIO
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NEW YORK
NEW JERSEY
PENNSYLVANIA
DELAWARE
MARYLAND
VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
MASS
CONNECTICUT
RHODE ISLAND
NEW HAMPSHIRE
Montreal
Ft. St. John's
Plattsburgh
Burlington
Ft. Frontenac
Ft. Carlton
Crown Point
Ticonderoga
Saco
Dover
Portsmouth
Oswego
Ft. Wm. Henry
Ft. Schuyler
Saratoga
Ft. Edward
Bennis Heights
Ft. Niagara
Schenectady
Cherry Valley
Ft. Orange
Concord
Lexington
Salem
Marblehead
Boston
Cape Cod
Newtown
Kingston
Providence
Plymouth
Presque Isle
Newburgh
West Pt.
Stony Pt.
New London
Nantucket Is.
Wyoming
Morristown
Jersey City
Princeton
Brooklyn
Pittsburgh
Trenton
Monmouth
Valley Forge
Bordentown
Lancaster
Germantown
Philadelphia
Camden
Ft. Mifflin
Cumberland
Wilmington
Ft. Mercer
Newcastle
Baltimore
Annapolis
C. May
C. Henlopen
Alexandria
Mt. Vernon
Charlottesville
Richmond
Manchester
Williamsburg
Yorktown
C. Charles
Petersburg
C. Henry
Norfolk
Portsmouth
Halifax
Guilford C.H.
Hillsboro
Greensboro
Plymouth
Roanoke Is.
Raleigh
Cape Hatteras
New Berne
Cape Lookout
Wilmington
Caps Fear
Cheraw
Camden
Ft. Moultrie
Charleston Harb.
Port Royal
Quebec
R. St. Lawrence
Ft. Levi
Moosehead Lake
Norridgewock
Augusta
Gardiner
Portland
Medford
Mystic
Prospect Hill
Bunker Hill
Breed's Hill
Charlestown
Noddles Island
Cambridge
BOSTON
Bird Is.
Castle Is.
Roxbury
Dorchester Heights
Dorchester
Miles

244. Indians and Hessians.—Meanwhile King George, far from heeding the humble petition he had received from Congress, was sending agents to the Iroquois and Canadian Indians to stir up their savage wrath against the colonies. He was also making bargains with petty German princes, who sold him the services of their subjects at a little less than thirty-five dollars per head. "Every soldier killed was to be paid for at this rate, and three wounded were to be reckoned as one killed." Acts of Parliament forbade any trade with the "rebels," and ordered that American vessels should be taken on the high seas and their crews treated as slaves.

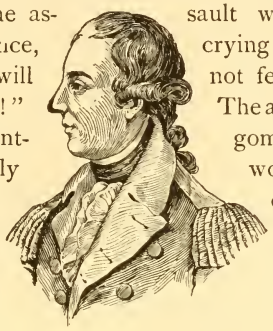


Hessians.

245. Invasion of Canada.—These violent measures went far to destroy the love of Americans for England, and it was seen that independence was the only way to honor and safety. The common people in Canada wished well to the cause of separation, but the rich and ruling class was content with the existing order of things. To sustain the popular feeling, and prevent attacks from the north, a twofold invasion of Canada was planned for the autumn of 1775.

246. Siege of Quebec.—General Montgomery,[4] of New York, descending Lake Champlain, captured St. John's and Montreal. General Arnold, ascending the Kennebec, made a toilsome march through the woods and marshes of northern Maine, and, though deprived by hunger and disease of nearly half his men, undertook the siege of Quebec, the mightiest fortress in America. Climbing by Wolfe's path (§ 193) to the Plains of Abraham, he summoned the city to surrender; but its commander had learned wisdom from Montcalm's disaster, and remained within his fort.

247. Montgomery soon arrived and took command. The garrison numbered twice as many as the combined army of assailants, and had strong walls and two hundred cannon to oppose to the musketry and few small siege-guns from Montreal. The colonists intrenched themselves behind ramparts of ice, since the frozen ground defied their pickaxes. On the last morning of 1775 the assault was made. Montgomery led the advance, crying out, "Men of New York! you will not fear to follow where your general leads!" The attack was brave and spirited; but Montgomery fell dead, Arnold was dangerously wounded, and the effort failed. Still determined, the Americans turned the siege into a blockade, and held out until May, when they reluctantly retreated, wasted by disease and starvation. The British governor, pitying their sufferings and admiring their courage, offered to shelter and care for their sick until they were able to march, but the invitation was declined. (See § 306.) A great British force arriving in the St. Lawrence, Montreal and St. John's were abandoned.



Richard Montgomery.

248. Deliverance of Boston. — Washington had persevered through the winter in drilling and strengthening his army; and early in March he was ready for a decisive stroke. In a single night works were erected on Dorchester Heights, which forced General Howe to leave Boston. Taking on board the fleet not only his army, but eleven hundred Americans who chose to remain subjects of the king, he sailed away to Halifax, to the great joy of the Bostonians. Washington knew that the breathing-time would be short. New York was of the greatest importance to both parties from its central position, its easy communication with Canada, and the strong Tory[5] feeling among its people. Thither Washington soon marched in order to be there before the British.

249. Siege of Charleston.— Early in June a British fleet from Halifax sailed into Charleston harbor bearing an army commanded by General Clinton. Major-general Lee,[6] second only to Washington among American officers, had been placed in charge of the army in the south. But he cared more for himself than for the success of the cause, and did more harm than good to the American service. He said Charleston could not be held, and was only anxious to secure the retreat of the garrison. Colonel Moultrie[7] was of a different mind. From his fort of palmetto logs on Sullivan's Island, he kept up so steady a cannonade that the fleet, after ten hours' engagement, withdrew shattered and disabled, unfit even to convey the army to New York.[8] The fort has ever since borne the name of its brave defender.

Sergeant Jasper at Fort Moultrie.

June, 1776.

Questions.—How and why was the Treaty of Paris a misfortune to England? What were the immediate causes of the Revolution? How were the tax laws resisted in the different colonies? Who was King of England at this time? When and where did the first Continental Congress meet? What did it do? What were the people doing in the meantime? When and where was the first battle of the Revolution fought? Give the immediate cause.———When and where did the second Continental Congress meet? Why were its duties particularly difficult? Were the colonies struggling for independence at this time? Why was the success of the American cause "the last hope of liberty for England"? (§ 236.) Why was Ticonderoga an important point? De-

scribe the battle of Bunker Hill. When and where did Washington take command of the Continental forces? In what condition did he find them? When and where was the first public movement in favor of the independence of the colonies? Where did King George find soldiers? Describe the invasion of Canada. Why did Washington march to New York? Describe the siege of Charleston.

Map Exercise.—Trace, on Map No. IV., the two routes by which the Americans invaded Canada. On Map No. III., the retreat of Howe's fleet.

Points for Essays.—A story of the Boston Massacre,—of the burning of the Gaspée,—of the Boston Tea Party,—of the battle of Lexington; all supposed to be written by boys or girls living in Boston or Providence at the time.

Read for the whole Revolutionary period Irving's *Life of Washington*, Volumes II.–IV. The *Lives* of Generals Greene, Putnam, Arnold. Lossing's *Field-Book of the Revolution.* Botta's *History of the American Revolution.*

NOTES.

1. ETHAN ALLEN (1737–1789), was born in Connecticut, but removed to Vermont when about twenty-four years of age. Before the Revolution New York and New Hampshire both claimed the territory which now forms Vermont, and the New York officers tried to enforce their authority, which the settlers resisted. The latter formed an organization known as the "Green Mountain Boys," of which Allen was the colonel. They succeeded in holding their farms, and Allen became so obnoxious that Governor Tryon of New York offered £150 reward for his arrest. Just before the attack on Ticonderoga, Benedict Arnold (§ 292) appeared, and claimed command of the forces through a commission received from Massachusetts. Allen would not give way, however, and the two officers walked at the head of the column side by side.

2. SETH WARNER (1743–1789), was also a leader in the struggle between New York and Vermont, and like Allen he was outlawed. In the expeditions against Ticonderoga and Crown Point he was second in command, and conducted the attack on the latter place.

3. "As they entered the harbor, they hailed a tender bound to Newport, and asked the news. When told that Boston was surrounded by ten thousand men in arms, they asked how large was the English force, and were told it was five thousand men. 'Ten thousand peasants keep five thousand king's troops shut up! Let us get in, and we 'll soon find elbow-room.' The story was circulated

everywhere, and the nickname 'Elbow-room' was applied to Burgoyne all through the war, never with more sting, of course, than at the period of his own reverses."—*Bryant.*

4. RICHARD MONTGOMERY (1736–1775), was born near Raphoe, Ireland, and entered the British army at the age of fifteen. He distinguished himself in America during the "French and Indian War," but, disappointed at not receiving a promotion, he sold his commission, and in 1772 emigrated to New York. Here he married a daughter of Robert R. Livingston, and in 1773 settled on a farm at Rhinebeck, hoping to lead a quiet, domestic life. At the breaking out of the Revolution he was appointed brigadier-general. The expedition against Canada fell to his command, owing to the illness of Major-general Schuyler, who was to have conducted the operations. Montgomery soon won the love and esteem of his soldiers, and distinction in the eyes of the country, by his energy and daring. He was made a major-general a few days before his death. Congress honored him with a monument, beneath which his remains now lie, in front of St. Paul's Church, New York.

5. TORIES in America were those who still considered themselves subjects of George III. Those who maintained the rights of the people were called *Whigs* (§ 145). It is supposed that twenty-five thousand American Tories were enlisted in the British armies during the Revolution.

6. CHARLES LEE (1731–1782), is said to have held a commission in the British army when but eleven years of age. His first actual experience in warfare, however, was at Braddock's defeat (§ 185). At Ticonderoga, in 1758, he was severely wounded, but continued in service in America until 1760, when he returned to England. He distinguished himself in Spain, but failed in securing further promotion. In disgust he left England, and became a "soldier of fortune," serving in Germany, Poland, and Russia. He twice returned to England, and tried in vain to secure advancement and active service. At the breaking out of the Revolution he took the American side. The Continental Congress gave him a high place under Washington, much to Lee's disappointment, who had worked hard for the position of commander-in-chief. His jealousy carried him to the verge of treason (§ 257). At the battle of Monmouth (§ 272) he behaved so badly that Washington ordered him to the rear; a court-martial followed, which found him "guilty of disobedience, misbehavior before the enemy, and disrespect to the commander-in-chief." He was accordingly suspended from all command for twelve months. Finally Congress, provoked by an impertinent letter, dismissed him from the service.

7. WILLIAM MOULTRIE (1731–1805), was a South Carolinian by birth, and when thirty years old was made captain in a militia regiment which fought in the war with the Cherokees. He served in the beginning of the Revolution as colonel, and built the fort on Sullivan's Island. Having become brigadier-general, he was captured by the British at the surrender of Charleston in 1780. While a prisoner he was offered money, and command of a British regiment at Jamaica if he would desert. His reply was: "Not the fee-simple of all Jamaica

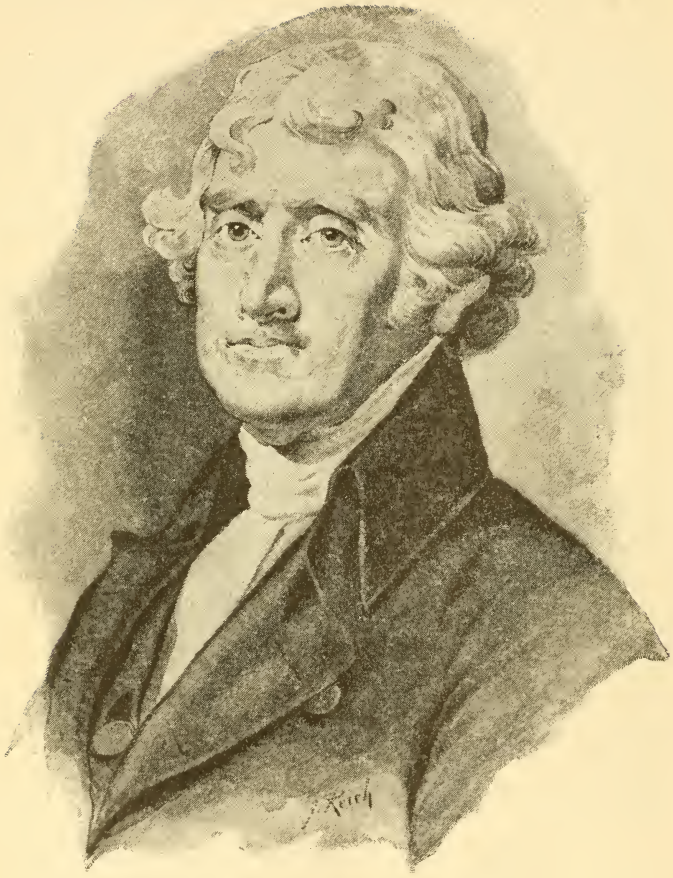
could induce me to part with my integrity." He was exchanged for Burgoyne after two years' imprisonment; rose to the rank of major-general; and after the war was twice elected governor of South Carolina.

8. The fort was built of two rows of palmetto logs, filled in with sand. Only eleven men were killed and twenty-six wounded out of a garrison of four hundred and thirty-five; while in the ten vessels of the British squadron the loss in killed and wounded was two hundred and five. The British flag-ship was so badly shattered that "but for the stillness of the sea she must have gone down"; another vessel, that had run aground, was set on fire and abandoned.

"In the fort, William Jasper, a sergeant, perceived that the flag had been cut down by a ball from the enemy, and had fallen over the ramparts. 'Colonel,' said he to Moultrie, 'don't let us fight without a flag.'

"'What can you do?' asked Moultrie; 'the staff is broken off.'

"'Then,' said Jasper, 'I'll fix it to a halberd, and place it on the merlon of the bastion next the enemy;' and leaping through an embrasure, and braving the thickest fire from the ships, he took up the flag, returned with it safely, and planted it as he had promised on the summit of the merlon."—*Bancroft.*


Th. Jefferson

CHAPTER XVI.

EVENTS OF 1776.

Independence Hall, Philadelphia.

250. Separation from Great Britain could no longer be delayed. In April, 1776, Congress abolished the "colonial system" by opening the American ports to free trade with all the world excepting the British dominions. On the 7th of June Richard Henry Lee[1] offered a resolution in Congress, "that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states." After due debate the resolution was adopted,

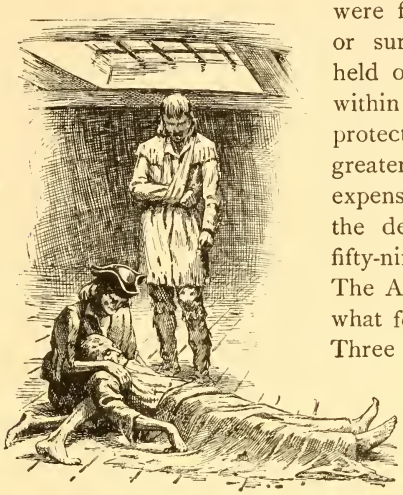
and a Declaration, written by Thomas Jefferson, was published to the world on the 4th of July.[2] It recited, in firm and manly terms, the acts of George III. which had made the separation necessary, and declared the *United States of America* "absolved from all allegiance to the British crown."

251. **The Declaration of Independence** was received with joy all over the land. It was read to every brigade of Washington's army at New York; and the soldiers, without leave, pulled down the leaden statue of George III. which adorned the Battery, and melted it into bullets for resisting that king's armies. All the colonies now organized themselves into states. Many of them seized this time to get rid of abuses which had been wrought into their governments. Virginia put an end to the importation of slaves; to all penalties for religious dissent; and to the law of entail, which had accumulated great estates in the hands of eldest sons. She also adopted a plan for universal education; but the means for its execution had to be long waited for, in the poverty caused by war.

252. On the 12th of July **Lord Howe**[3] arrived in New York Bay with a powerful English fleet. His brother, the General, was already encamped on Staten Island with 30,000 British and German troops, all thoroughly armed and well trained; while Washington's recent recruits were scantily supplied with clothing, with weapons, and even with food. The Howes sincerely desired to restore peace without bloodshed; and they issued a proclamation offering "pardon to all rebels who would return to their allegiance." Congress ordered this paper to be printed and distributed among the American people.

253. **Battle of Long Island.**—On the 26th of August the English general Clinton crossed the Narrows and marched northward to the neighborhood of Brooklyn. Two of three roads through the hills were occupied by the American generals Sullivan[4] and Stirling with about 8,000 men. Unhappily the Jamaica road had been left unguarded, and that was

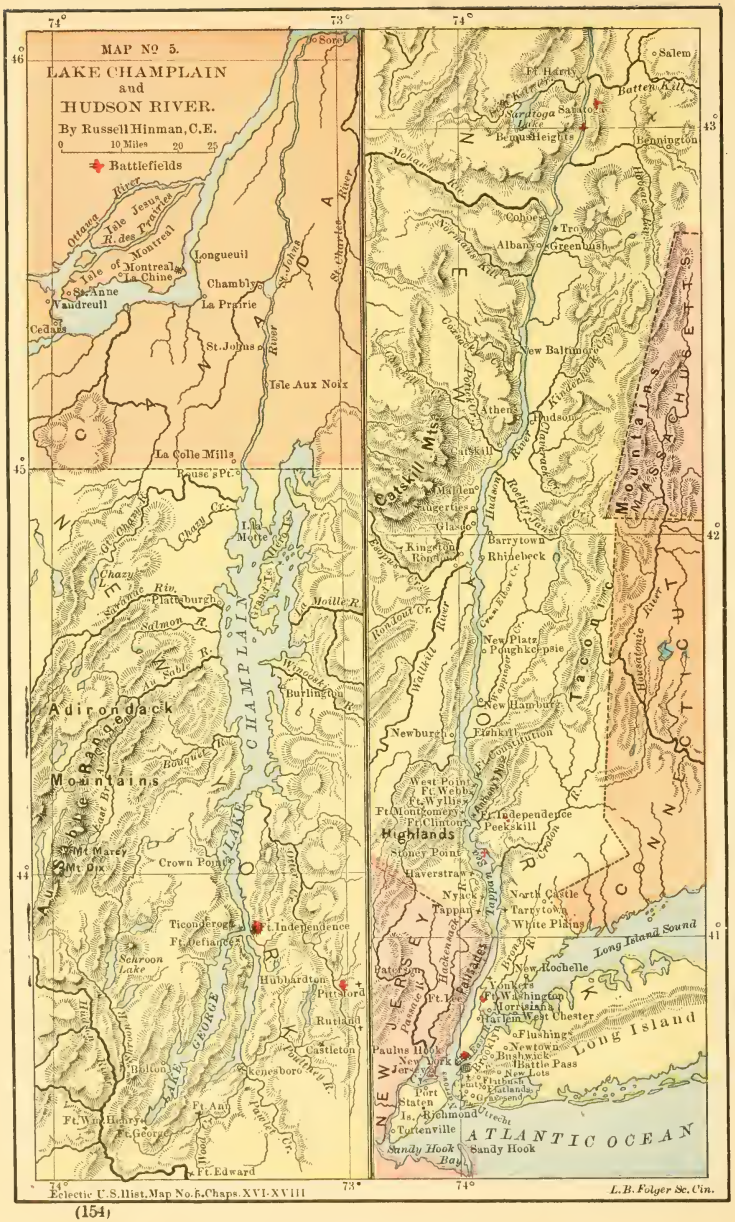
promptly seized by the enemy. There was brave fighting at "Battle Pass"; but, surrounded on all sides, the Americans were forced at length to retreat or surrender. General Stirling held out longer on ground now within Greenwood Cemetery, and protected the retreat of the greater part of his force at the expense of his own capture and the death of two hundred and fifty-nine brave Marylanders. The Americans lost in all somewhat fewer than a thousand men. Three fourths of these were captives, doomed to the "prison-ships," where, during the war, eleven thousand perished of fever and starvation.



In a British "Prison-ship."

254. Washington's Retreat.—Two days after the battle Washington drew off his forces under cover of a heavy fog, and crossed East River in safety. It was now impossible to hold New York, and during September he intrenched himself on Harlem Heights. His army was disheartened, and nearly dissolved by desertion; terms of enlistment were short, and the work of drilling fresh recruits had to be resumed continually.

255. Howe took possession of New York, September 15. His entrance was followed by a fire in which five hundred houses were burnt. As Washington greatly desired news of the enemy's plans, Captain Nathan Hale, a Yale student who had quitted his college for the colonial service, volunteered to enter the British lines on Long Island and obtain information. He was recognized by one of his own kinsmen, who, being a Tory, betrayed him to the enemy. By Howe's order he was tried


MAP Nº 5.
LAKE CHAMPLAIN
and
HUDSON RIVER.
By Russell Hinman, C.E.
0 10 Miles 20 25
Battlefields
74°
73°
46°
45°
44°
43°
42°
41°
St Sorel
Ottawa River
Lake Jesus
R. des Prairies
Isle of Montreal
La Chine
Longueuil
St Anne
Vaudreuil
Chambly
La Prairie
Cedars
St Johns
Isle Aux Noix
St Lawrence River
La Colle Mills
Rouse's Pt.
Chazy
Isle Morte
Chazy R.
Plattsburgh
Saranac R.
Salmon R.
Saranac Lakes
Au Sable R.
Burlington
Winooski R.
Adirondack
Mountains
Lake Champlain
Boquet R.
Mt Marcy
Mt Dix
Crown Point
Ticonderoga
Ft. Independence
Ft. Defiance
Schroon Lake
Hudson R.
Hubbardton
Pittsford
Rutland
Castleton
Otter Creek
Skenesboro
Lake George
Ft. Ann
Ft. Wm Henry
Ft. George
Ft. Edward
Hoosic R.
Hoosic Cr.
Troy
Albany
Greenbush
Saratoga
Saratoga Lake
Ft. Hardy
Batten Kill
Bennington
Mohawk R.
Cohoes
Schenectady
New Balmore
Athens
Hudson
Catskill
Catskill Mts.
Kaaterskill Cr.
Kinderhook Cr.
Claverack Cr.
Mauldin
Saugerties
Glasco
Kingston
Rondout
Barrytown
Rhinebeck
Wallkill River
Roeliff Jansen's Kill
Fishkill Cr.
Wappinger's Cr.
Fishkill Landing
Fishkill
Newburgh
New Platz
Poughkeepsie
New Hamburgh
Housatonic River
Taconic Mts.
Massachusetts
Connecticut
West Point
Ft. Webb
Ft. Wyllis
Ft. Montgomery
Ft. Clinton
Ft. Independence
Peekskill
Highlands
Stoney Point
Haverstraw
Tappan Zee
Hudson River
Nyack
Tappan
North Castle
Tarrytown
White Plains
Long Island Sound
New Rochelle
Palisades
Yonkers
Ft. Washington
Ft. L.
Morrisania
Harlem
West Chester
Flushing
Long Island
Newtown
Bushwick
Paulus Hook
New York
Jersey
Battle Pass
New Lots
Flatbush
Gowanus
Port Richmond
Staten Is.
Tottenville
Sandy Hook Bay
Sandy Hook
ATLANTIC OCEAN
NEW JERSEY
CONNECTICUT
Eclectic U.S.Hist. Map No.5. Chaps. XVI-XVIII
L.B. Folger Sc. Cin.

and condemned to death as a spy. Even the common offices of religion were denied him, and his farewell letters were destroyed. His last words were, "I only regret that I have but one life to give to my country." Unable to dislodge Washington from Harlem Heights, Howe resolved to reach his rear by landing in Westchester. Washington met him at White Plains, October 27, and suffered a partial defeat, but was able to withdraw in good order to North Castle.

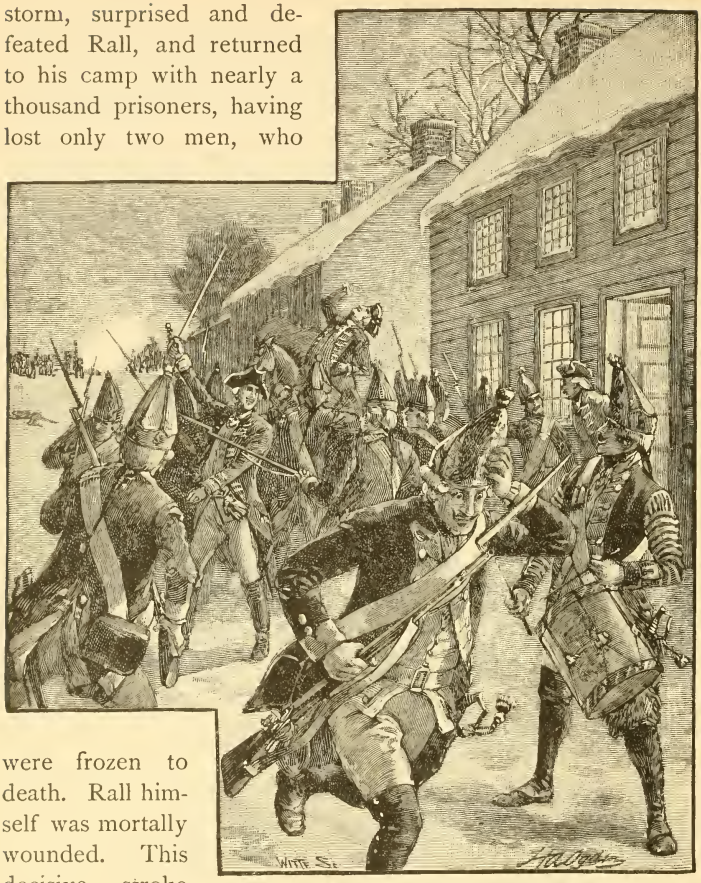
256. **To protect Philadelphia** Washington now removed his army to New Jersey. Contrary to his judgment, Fort Washington was still held. It was captured by the British and Hessians, November 16, after a brave defense, and 2,600 of our much needed men went to crowd the prison-ships at Brooklyn. Fort Lee, on the opposite bank of the Hudson, was soon afterward taken, but its garrison was brought away in safety.

257. **General Lee,** (§ 249 and note 5), who commanded the rear division, disobeyed Washington's orders to rejoin the main army, hoping by some brilliant stroke to raise himself to the chief command. Instead, he was taken prisoner, and tried to gain favor with his captors by advising them of the best means to conquer America. But Howe never trusted him, and gladly exchanged him a few months later for the British general Prescott, who was captured in Rhode Island.

258. **Lord Cornwallis,**[5] with a large army, was in rapid pursuit of Washington. His German troops robbed and insulted the people; and many, believing the hope of freedom lost, accepted the royal "pardon" for the sake of security. Washington retreated across the Delaware, and seized all the boats, so that the enemy could not follow him.

259. **Battle of Trenton.**—Colonel Rall and his Hessians were keeping Christmas at Trenton, when the American chief suddenly recrossed the river, amid blocks of ice, in a furious

storm, surprised and defeated Rall, and returned to his camp with nearly a thousand prisoners, having lost only two men, who were frozen to death. Rall himself was mortally wounded. This decisive stroke revived hope and courage in all true hearts. The enemy abandoned Burlington and Bordentown, and the people tore down from their doors the "red rags" by which they had claimed British protection.



The Battle of Trenton.

260. Washington Dictator.—Congress, finding that their general was not slow and cautious except by necessity, conferred

on him extraordinary powers for six months to raise and maintain a larger army. Washington returned to Trenton, where he was soon hard pressed by Cornwallis, with greatly superior forces. Leaving his camp-fires burning, he eluded his enemy, moved swiftly by night to Princeton and defeated three British regiments there, then hastened to the rugged heights of Morristown, where he was safe from pursuit. Jan. 3, 1777.

261. Foreign Aid.—These brilliant movements commanded admiration in Europe, and secret or open help began to reach the Americans. The young Marquis de La Fayette[6] fitted out a ship at his own expense, and came from France to serve as a volunteer in the American ranks. He was made a major-general, and became the intimate friend of Washington. Kosciusko[7] and Pulaski,[8] Poles of high birth, who fought in vain for the freedom of their own land, now offered themselves as "soldiers of liberty," and rendered good service to our cause. Nevertheless, some of the darkest days were yet to be passed through.

La Fayette.

Questions.—State, in review, the causes which led American colonists to break their connection with England. The successive acts which established their independence. Name and describe three battles in the early part of the Revolution. Describe Washington's first campaign in New Jersey. What foreigners fought for American independence?

Map Exercise.—Trace, on Map No. V., the movements on Long Island (§ 253). Point out Harlem. White Plains. North Castle. Forts Washington and Lee. On Map No. IV., Burlington. Bordentown. Trenton. Princeton. Morristown.

Points for Essays.—Letter from a Congressman in Philadelphia, June, 1776, to his young son at home. From a prisoner in the British camp, describing the battle of Long Island. Journal of a farmer's daughter in New Jersey, autumn of 1776.

Read *Lives* of Kosciusko, Pulaski, and La Fayette in Sparks's *American Biographies.*

NOTES.

1. RICHARD HENRY LEE (1732–1794), was one of the foremost statesmen of American Revolutionary times. He was a native Virginian, a brilliant scholar, a wise politician, an accomplished speaker, a tried patriot. One of his greatest addresses was that to the people of Great Britain in 1775, wherein, after stating the wrongs the colonies had endured, he wrote: "And shall the descendants of Britons tamely submit to this? No, sirs! we never will while we revere the memory of our gallant and virtuous ancestors. . . . Of this, at least, we are assured, that our struggle will be glorious, our success certain; since even in death we shall find that freedom which in life you forbid us to enjoy."

2. "It was two o'clock in the afternoon when the decision was announced by secretary Thomson to Congress in Independence Hall. Thousands of anxious citizens had gathered in the streets of Philadelphia, for it was known that the decision was to be made on that day. From the hour when Congress convened in the morning, the old bellman had been in the steeple. He had placed a boy at the door below, to give him notice when the announcement should be made. As hour succeeded hour, the gray-beard shook his head, and said, 'They will never do it! they will never do it!' Suddenly a loud shout came up from below, and there stood the blue-eyed boy, clapping his hands and shouting, 'Ring! ring!' Grasping the iron tongue of the old bell, backward and forward he hurled it a hundred times, its loud voice proclaiming 'Liberty throughout all the land, unto all the inhabitants thereof.' The excited multitude in the streets responded with loud acclamations, and with cannon-peals, bonfires, and illuminations, the patriots held a glorious carnival that night in the quiet city of Penn."—*Lossing*. It is a curious fact that this bell, now known as the "Liberty Bell," which was cast twenty-three years before the Declaration of Independence, had around its crown the quotation from Scripture, "Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof."

3. LORD RICHARD HOWE (1725–1799), was a noted British admiral. He entered the navy at fourteen years of age, and took part in many important sea-fights. His operations on the American coast continued for about two years.

4. GENERAL JOHN SULLIVAN was born at Berwick, Maine, in 1740, and was a successful lawyer both before and after the Revolution. At the battle of Long Island he was given command of the forces of General Greene, who was sick. Sullivan fought with valor, but was captured by the Hessians. He was not held long as a prisoner, and, returning to duty, did good service throughout the war. Afterwards he was a member of Congress and a United States judge. He died at Durham, N. H., 1795.

5. LORD CORNWALLIS (1738–1805), was a prominent British commander in the Revolution from first to last. He opposed the action of the ministry which led to the war in America, but when the conflict opened he took the field with

his regiment, and was soon a major-general. After his career in America, Lord Cornwallis filled several public offices with distinction. He was made a Marquis, had a seat in the Privy Council and the Cabinet, became Viceroy of Ireland, and was twice Governor-general of India.

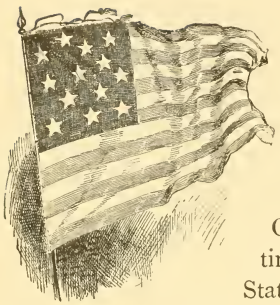
6. The MARQUIS DE LA FAYETTE, born in 1757, came of a noble French family, and to the close of his eventful life displayed a nobility of character rarely surpassed. He was an orphan from early childhood, and during his school-days in Paris and Versailles no studies interested him so much as the histories of the world's great struggles for freedom. Thus was kindled in his breast the military ardor which afterwards marked his career. When he heard that the American colonies had declared their independence, he fitted out a vessel at his own expense, and, notwithstanding the strong opposition of his friends, and the repeated efforts of the government to cause his arrest, he embarked from a port in Spain early in the year 1777. In April he landed on the South Carolina coast, proceeded at once to Philadelphia, and tendered his services to Congress. From the first meeting he and Washington became warm friends, and their attachment lasted through life. Although young and inexperienced, General La Fayette showed soldierly qualities of the highest order. His influence at the French court secured the aid of many thousand troops for the patriots' cause. After the Revolutionary War he revisited the United States in 1784, and again in 1824, receiving a warm welcome wherever he went (§ 405). La Fayette was a prominent figure in France during the French Revolution. He fearlessly denounced the wrongs practiced upon the people, and became their boldest champion. He was made commander of the National Guard, and suggested the national emblem of the tri-color. In 1792, during the war with Austria, he was captured, and confined for five years in a dreary dungeon at Olmutz. He was released upon the demand of Napoleon, but never was a partisan of the emperor. His death occurred in Paris, 1834.

7. KOSCIUSKO (1746–1817), left his native land in 1775 and came to America to join the patriot army. He fought valiantly in many battles, and returned to Poland at the close of the war. From 1791 to 1794 he was the leader and hero of the Polish forces in their efforts to regain independence, but fell severely wounded at the battle of Maciejowice. He was captured and imprisoned for two years by the Russians, revisited the United States soon after his release, and lived the rest of his days in France and Switzerland.

8. COUNT CASIMIR PULASKI was born in Lithuania, 1747, and received a mortal wound in the attack on Savannah, 1779. (§ 285). His father and brothers lost their lives in the wars for Polish independence, and he himself was outlawed. In France he met Benjamin Franklin, and through him offered his services to the American army.

CHAPTER XVII.

EVENTS OF 1777 AND 1778.



American Flag.

262. For the campaign[1] of 1777 two great movements were planned by the British. Howe was to seize Philadelphia, while Burgoyne, descending from Canada, was to meet Clinton ascending from New York, and secure the whole line of Lake Champlain and the Hudson, thus cutting off New England from the other States.

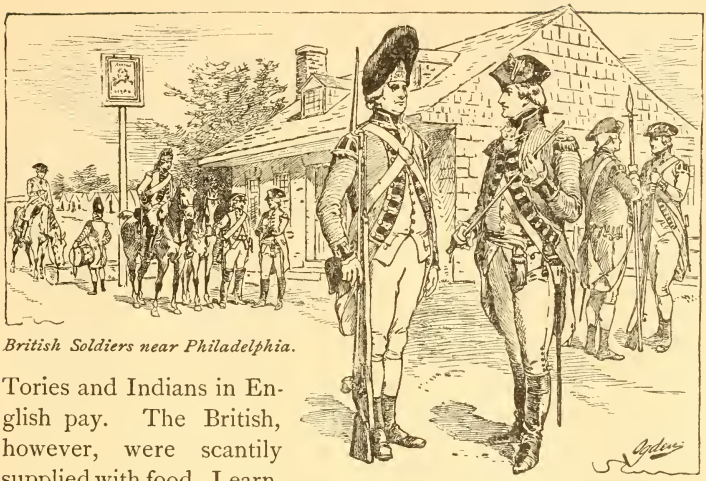
263. **Battles of Brandywine and Germantown.**—Washington, who had the care of the whole defense, detained Howe all summer in New Jersey, and prevented any march of British detachments to the north, while he sent Arnold, Lincoln, and Morgan, with troops he could ill spare, to aid Schuyler in opposing Burgoyne. He was himself defeated at Brandywine; Congress hastily removed to Lancaster, and Howe entered Philadelphia, September 26.

A. D. 1777.

A bold attack, a few days later, upon the British at Germantown, raised the spirits of the Americans, though it did not regain the city.

264. **Battle of Bennington.**—In the north Fort Ticonderoga was surrendered to Burgoyne, with all its cannon and stores; Fort Edward was abandoned, and it seemed as if the whole State of New York lay at the mercy of the invaders. The Mohawk Valley was ravaged by a force of

July, 1777.



British Soldiers near Philadelphia.

Tories and Indians in English pay. The British, however, were scantily supplied with food. Learning that the Americans had stores at Bennington, Burgoyne sent Lieutenant-Colonel Baum with a force to capture them. But General Stark, with his New Hampshire militia, and Colonel Warner, with his "Green Mountain Boys," fought with such spirit that Baum and his entire command were either killed or captured.

Aug. 16, 1777.

265. First Battle of Saratoga.—At this point General Gates[2] took command of the army in the north; the New England farmers, gaining new hope from the victory at Bennington, flocked to his camp at Bemus's Heights near Stillwater. Burgoyne came up, and a battle was fought September 19, of which both sides claimed the victory. While the two armies lay facing each other for a fortnight, militia-bands hovered about the British, cutting off their supplies, now and then capturing a picket-guard, and in many ways troubling them.

266. Surrender of Burgoyne.—A second battle,[3] October 7, was more disastrous to the British, and hunger soon finished what the American arms had begun. On the 17th of October

Burgoyne surrendered his whole army, numbering nearly 6,000 men, with all their cannon, muskets, and war-material. The soldiers were to have sailed from Boston for Europe; but, some delay occurring, they were kept as prisoners of war in Virginia. The Hessian general, Riedesel, distributed a thousand dollars' worth of seeds among his men, and pretty gardens soon surrounded their barracks. Some of them liked the country so well that they remained willingly after the war was over, and became citizens of the United States.

A.D. 1777.

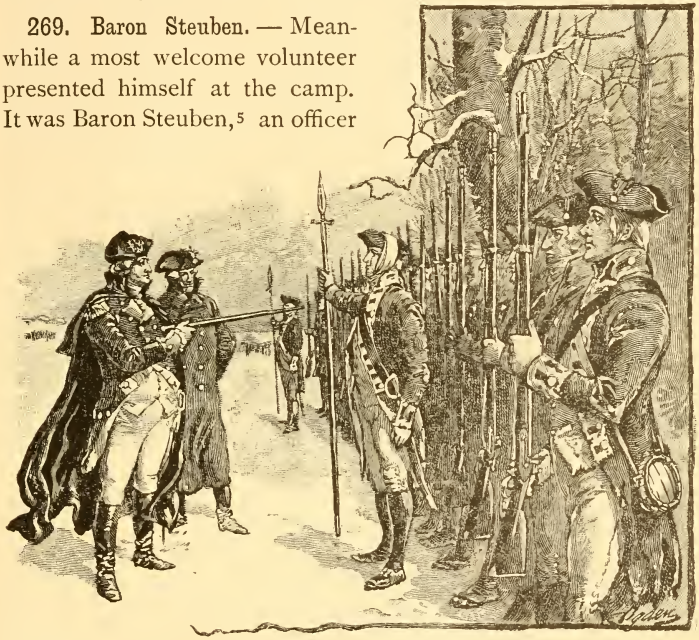
The Surrender of Burgoyne.

267. **Winter at Valley Forge.** — After remaining in the field until shelter became necessary for the preservation of his army, Washington went into winter quarters at Valley Forge, twenty miles from Philadelphia. Scantily supplied with food and clothing, and without even straw to sleep upon, 2,000 men were soon disabled by illness. Secret agents from General Howe offered them good pay and every comfort if they would desert to the British; but though many of them had been born in Great Britain, scarcely a man accepted the bribe.

268. The winter at Valley Forge was the severest agony of the war. Washington had to contend not only with cold and starvation, but with envious plots[4] against himself, quarrels among his officers, and weary indifference in the people. While his poor men were starving, farmers sold all their produce to the British, or even burnt it to keep it from being taken by his commissaries. Even the clothing and shoes which

belonged to the army, failed to reach it through the disgraceful negligence of the quartermaster-general. Washington was too great to notice injuries which only concerned himself, and some of his secret enemies afterwards bitterly regretted the plots they had made against him.

269. Baron Steuben. — Meanwhile a most welcome volunteer presented himself at the camp. It was Baron Steuben,[5] an officer



Baron Steuben at Valley Forge.

of Frederic the Great,[6] who came prepared to introduce the perfect drill of the Prussian army, and prepare the Americans for future successes.

270. The good effects of the victory at Saratoga were yet to be felt. From the beginning France had wished well to the Americans, chiefly through hatred of England, who had deprived her of so large a part of this continent (§ 194); and now that

the tide seemed to have turned in their favor, she was ready to take their part. Benjamin Franklin and Arthur Lee[7] were sent as commissioners to Paris. The good sense, plain dress, and simple manners of the former struck the fancy of the queen and the court, while his wise and brilliant conversation won the admiration of wits and philosophers. He knew how to turn all his success to the account of his country, and soon money, powder, and arms reached America from France.

Feb 6, 1778.

During the winter after the surrender of Burgoyne, the French government made a treaty of friendship with the *United States of America*, being the first to recognize that new nation among the powers of the world.

271. **Great Change in England.**—The same events produced a great change in England. Burke, Fox, and many others in Parliament demanded that the Americans should be declared free at once. The king adjourned Parliament to prevent the spread of these sentiments, but sent commissioners to treat for peace, promising pardon for all offenses upon the return of the "colonies" to their allegiance. Congress resolved to hold no conference with the envoys unless the British fleets and armies should be withdrawn, or the independence of the United States distinctly acknowledged; and the war went on.

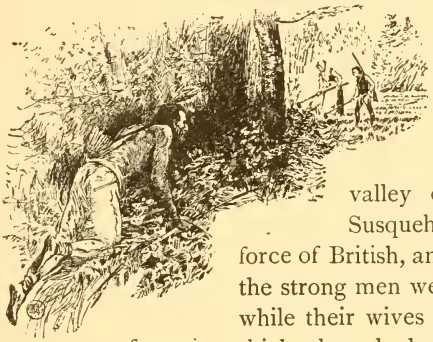
272. **Philadelphia Regained.**—General Howe resigned his command, and Clinton, who succeeded him, was ordered to quit Philadelphia and make his headquarters in New York. Washington pursued his retreating army, and, but for the failure of General Lee, might have won a great victory. As it was, he rallied Lee's flying brigades and gained the battle of Monmouth; but the British escaped to New York, leaving several hundreds of dead or wounded on the field.

June, 1778.

273. **Attack on Newport.**—Great preparations were made for a combined attack of the French and American forces upon Newport, Rhode Island, which was held by the British. Count

D'Estaing arrived from France with a strong fleet, and learning soon after that Admiral Howe was awaiting him on the open sea, he sailed out of Narragansett Bay for a fight. A terrible storm arose, however, and both fleets, shattered by the tempest, had to withdraw and put into port for repairs. The American forces, unsupported by the fleet, were now compelled to retire from the island, and during the retreat were attacked by the British. The latter, however, were repulsed, and the Americans withdrew in safety.

Aug., 1778.



Wyoming, Pa.

274. Massacre at Wyoming. — This summer was signalized by a terrible massacre of old men, women, and children in the valley of Wyoming, on the Susquehanna, by a combined force of British, and Seneca Indians. All the strong men were absent in the army, while their wives tilled the fields. The forts in which they had found refuge on the enemy's approach, were taken and burnt. Three hundred old men and boys fought valiantly until they were surrounded and slain. The British leaders could not, if they would, restrain their savage allies; every dwelling was burnt, and the beautiful valley became a solitude.

275. Savages in New York.—The same dreadful scenes were repeated at Cherry Valley, in New York, by British and Mohawks in November, 1778. The Six Nations (§ 26 and note) had been friendly with the colonists until the year before, when the influence of the Johnson family[8] had made them allies of the British. For his victory at Lake George (§186), Sir William Johnson had received an immense estate on the Mohawk, and reigned like a king over his tenants and the neighboring Indians. It is said that the old man died of apoplexy, occasioned by the

struggle between loyalty to his king and love of his country. His sons were not troubled by the latter feeling, but let loose all the horrors of savage war against their countrymen.

276. In the summer of 1779 a stern vengeance was inflicted for these outrages. The towns and villages, orchards and cornfields of the Six Nations were ravaged, and their chiefs, Red Jacket, Brandt, and Cornplanter,[9] were signally defeated. Finding that Great Britain was unable to protect them, they ceased from their ravages and remained neutral during the remainder of the war.

277. **Colonel Clark in the Northwest.**—Virginia was now the most extensive and powerful of the colonies. All the land north of the Ohio, south of the Great Lakes, and east of the Mississippi was within her chartered limits. Late in 1776 she had organized her settlements south of the Ohio River (see §243) as the "County of Kentucky." In 1778 Colonel George Rogers Clark led an expedition from Virginia to capture the British posts north of the Ohio River. Hamilton, the British governor at Detroit, was sending out parties of savages through all that region, offering a reward for every white scalp; and his cruel allies spared neither women nor babes.

George Rogers Clark.

278. **The County of Illinois.**—Clark surprised Kaskaskia and Cahokia, whose inhabitants gladly declared themselves loyal to the United States. So did the people of Vincennes, who were mostly French; but the fort, newly re-enforced by Hamilton, offered resistance. After a spirited fight it was taken, Hamilton himself and all his garrison becoming prisoners of war. A wagon-train of supplies from Detroit was also taken with forty prisoners. Virginia publicly thanked Colonel Clark and his brave officers and men for having gained possession for the

State of all the important posts on the Illinois and Wabash, and established republican government in place of the British dominion. Every soldier in the expedition was presented with two hundred acres of land. The whole territory north of the Ohio was organized as the "County of Illinois."

279. Fort Jefferson was built on the Mississippi, five miles below the mouth of the Ohio. Natchez and other British settlements on the lower Mississippi were gained by the United States during the summer of 1778, and the great central valley was now held only by Spain and the new Republic, in more or less declared rivalry with the Shawnees, Miamis, and other savages.

Questions.—Describe the British plans for 1777. How were they opposed? Tell the whole story of Burgoyne's campaign. What difficulties had Washington to meet? What part did France take in the War of Independence? What was done by Indians? Describe Colonel Clark's campaign.

Map Exercise.—Trace, on Map No. IV., the main points in Burgoyne's campaign. The scenes of the Indian massacres. The western campaign of Colonel Clark.

NOTES.

1. It was during this campaign that the stars and stripes first appeared as the Federal flag. In August, 1777, when Fort Stanwix (now Rome, N. Y.) was besieged, "St. Leger still continued the siege of the fort, where now floated for the first time the American flag, just adopted by Congress, made of alternate stripes of a white shirt and a red petticoat, the field being cut out of an old blue overcoat."—*Critical History of America.*

2. GENERAL HORATIO GATES had been in command before General Schuyler. Schuyler's loss of forts Ticonderoga and Edward was the cause of Gates being replaced in command. Both were brave soldiers, and had served with honor in the "French and Indian War." See also Note 4.

3. This is variously called the FIRST BATTLE OF SARATOGA, battle of Bemus's Heights, Stillwater, and Freeman's Farm. It was a hard fight, lasting from noon until dark. The British lost 650 men, the Americans 325. The losses in the SECOND BATTLE (October 7) on the same field were 150 in General Gates's army and 400 in General Burgoyne's. The death of General Fraser on

that day was a severe blow to the British. Arnold was promoted to the rank of major-general for his bravery in this fight. The surrender of Burgoyne's army was to the Americans the most brilliant victory of the war. Sir E. Creasy, in *Fifteen Decisive Battles of the World*, Chapter xiii., says: "Nor can any military event be said to have exercised more important influence on the future fortunes of mankind than the complete defeat of Burgoyne's expedition in 1777; a defeat which rescued the revolted colonies from certain subjection, and which, by inducing the courts of France and Spain to attack England in their behalf, insured the independence of the United States."

4. The most serious plot against Washington, at this time, is known as the "Conway Cabal." Conway was an Irishman by birth, but had come to America with the French allies, and gained rapid promotion. He led a movement to remove Washington from the chief command and to appoint General Gates in his stead. When the plot became known, the people condemned it loudly, and ever afterwards were suspicious of all who had been connected with it.

5. BARON STEUBEN was born in a Prussian fortress, A. D. 1730, passed his childhood in the camps, and entered the army at the age of fourteen. He received wounds at Prague and Kunersdorf, was taken prisoner in Poland, and was the hero of many European battle-fields. He displaced Conway as inspector-general of the American army, and by his superior ability soon turned the raw recruits into well drilled soldiers. Steuben served to the close of the Revolution, received a pension and tracts of land from the government, settled in Oneida County, N. Y. in 1789, and died there in 1794.

6. KING FREDERIC II. OF PRUSSIA, called "The Great," was the greatest general of his age. He well knew what it was to fight under tremendous difficulties, for at one time all Europe was combined against him. He said of Washington's movements in New Jersey, at the end of 1776, that they were the most brilliant in the annals of war. Of the American soldiers he said, "I like those brave fellows, and can not help secretly hoping for their success." "The British Parliament," said Frederic, "have acted like an infuriated fool in the American business."

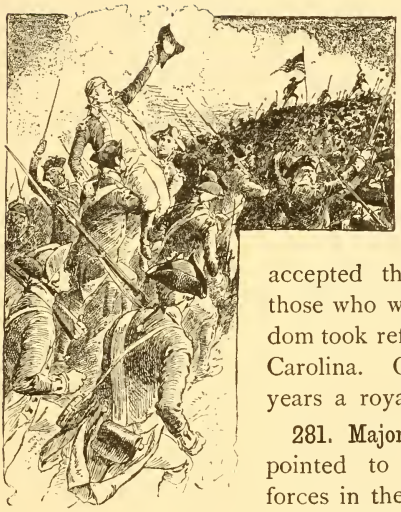
7. ARTHUR LEE (1740–1792), rendered important service to his country not only at the court of France, but also in those of Spain, Prussia, and Holland. He was the agent of the Massachusetts colony at London for a time; and afterwards of his native State, Virginia, at Paris, for making loans and obtaining arms.

8. The JOHNSONS were leading Tories in the region where they lived. The secret of their influence over the Indians was that a sister of Joseph Brant, the most powerful chief of the Six Nations, was the Indian wife of Sir William Johnson.

9. RED JACKET and CORNPLANTER were chiefs of the Seneca tribe.

CHAPTER XVIII.

EVENTS OF 1779–1781.



Stony Point.

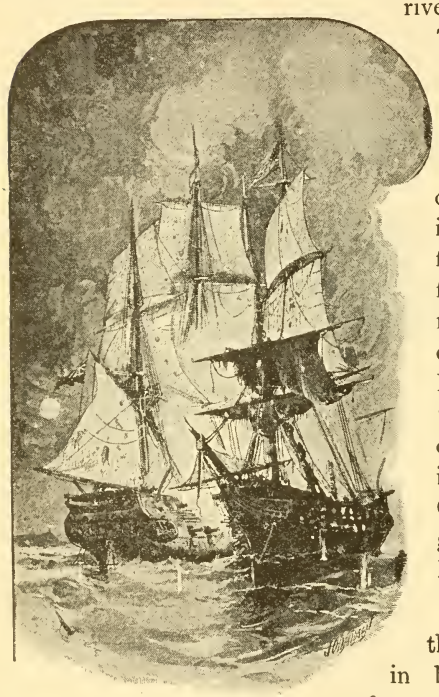
280. War in the South.— The main action was now in the South. Savannah, with all its cannon and stores, was taken by a British force, December, 1778, after a brave resistance. Many people accepted the British protection, but those who were true to American freedom took refuge in the highlands and in Carolina. Georgia became for three years a royal province.

281. Major-general Lincoln[1] was appointed to command the American forces in the South. Port Royal having been taken by the British, was gallantly retaken by Colonel Moultrie. Charleston was threatened, but not then taken, for upon the approach of Lincoln the enemy hastily retreated. Thenceforth the British general contented himself with ravage and robbery, which only spurred the patriots on to sterner efforts, while they ruined the royal cause in the esteem of all right-minded people.

Feb.-May, 1779.

282. Recapture of Stony Point. — The enemy now held the forts on the lower Hudson which guarded the communication between New York and New Jersey. In July, 1779, General

Wayne[2] — "Mad Anthony" he was called — was sent by Washington to retake Stony Point. With a small number of chosen men he surprised the guard at the foot of the hill, climbed the rugged height surrounded on three sides by the river, and seized the fort. Though wounded in the attack, he was carried at the head of the storming party. Six hundred British were either killed or captured. As Washington could not spare a force sufficient to hold the fort, the stores were all removed and the works destroyed. At Paulus Hook, Major Lee,[3] called "Light-Horse Harry," captured what is now Jersey City, almost under the guns of the British in New York. Aug., 1779



Richard and Serapis.

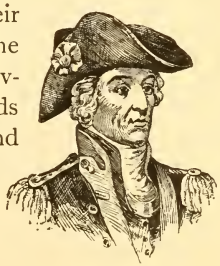
283. The infant **Navy of the United States** made up in boldness and swiftness of movement what it lacked in size, even entering the British harbors in the West Indies, burning ships at the wharves, and carrying off powder and other stores. A swarm of privateers, commissioned by Congress, captured in three years five hundred English vessels. Captain Paul Jones,[4] on the *Bon Homme Richard*, is said to have taken sixteen prizes in six weeks. One of his most famous sea-fights took place at night with the British frigate *Serapis*. The two vessels were hooked to-

gether, and both were on fire many times during their two-hours' combat. So desperate was the fight that the *Serapis* surrendered just as the *Richard* was about to sink. Next morning Jones had barely time to remove his men to the captured vessel, which he sailed into a Dutch port.

284. Winter at Morristown.—The winter of 1779–80 was the coldest in the eighteenth century, and Washington's army at Morristown suffered, if possible, more than it had two years before at Valley Forge. The longer the war lasted, the more bare of all supplies the country became. Bands of British and Tories ravaged all the coasts, entering the James, Potomac, Hudson, and Connecticut rivers, and burning houses, barns, and boats.

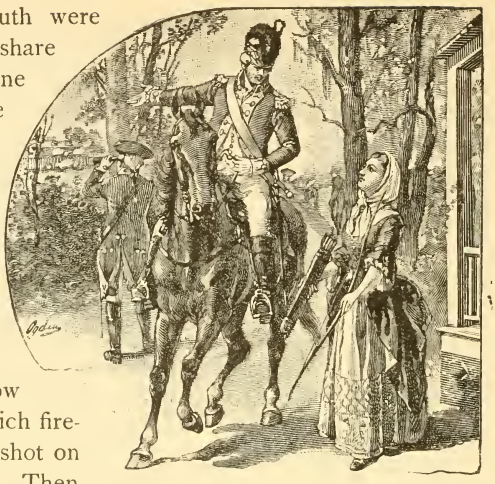
285. Fall of Charleston.—During the autumn the French fleet of D'Estaing had joined with the land forces under General Lincoln in attempting to retake Savannah, but without success. In this siege Pulaski charged with his "legion" upon the fortifications, and fell mortally wounded. A thousand brave men lost their lives, among them Sergeant Jasper, who died clasping to his heart the colors presented to his regiment at Fort Moultrie. (See note, page 149.) In March, 1780, Clinton appeared before Charleston with a fleet and army. On the 12th of May the city was forced to surrender. The whole of South Carolina was overrun by plunderers; all men were ordered into the king's army, and many who refused were murdered in the presence of their wives and children.

286. Sumter, Marion,[5] and Pickens, with their spirited and devoted followers, gave the British little peace in their regained province. Knowing all the paths through woods and marshes, shrinking from no hardship and delighting in danger, they sprang upon the invaders at unexpected moments, and often captured numbers greatly superior to their own. Meanwhile the



General Marion.

women of the South were equally firm in their share of the defense. One lady, whose house had been seized and garrisoned by a British force, suggested to the American officers the plan of setting it on fire, and brought with her own hands the bow and arrows with which firebrands were to be shot on the wooden roof. Then she stood watching the flames that were burning her home until the enemy were forced to surrender themselves as prisoners.

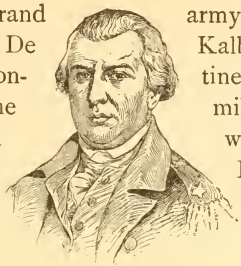


A Brave Southern Woman.

287. **Marion as a Host.**—It is said that a British officer, sent to arrange some matters of business with Marion, was invited by him to dinner Already charmed by the grace and dignity of his host, he gladly accepted the invitation, but was amazed to find that the meal consisted only of baked potatoes served on bark. No apology was made, but the guest could not help saying, "Surely, General, this is not your ordinary fare?" "Indeed it is," replied Marion, "but having to-day the honor of your company, we are so happy as to have more than our usual allowance." The officer returned to Charleston and resigned his commission, saying that America would never be conquered while served by such men.

288. **Gates and Greene.**—Gates was this year appointed to command in the South, and came with much bluster about "Burgoyning Cornwallis," who was now the British chief. Gates was terribly defeated, however, at Camden, (August,

1780,) and his "grand army" was scattered. The brave Baron De Kalb, whose firmness had enabled the Continental troops to stand fast even after the militia gave way, fell at last, covered with wounds. He had been a comrade of La Fayette, and his death was bitterly lamented. A victory gained at King's Mountain,[6] October 7, revived the hopes of the patriots, but General Greene,[7] who was soon afterwards appointed to succeed Gates, found only a ragged and demoralized troop of 2,000 men at his disposal.



General Greene.

289. In the **battle of the Cowpens** the American militia at first gave way, and the Continentals fell back to a better position. The British, supposing that they had gained an uncommonly easy victory, rushed forward, when they were surprised by the sudden facing-about of the Continentals, who poured upon them so deadly a fire that they had to run in their turn. They were pursued twenty miles by Colonel Washington,[8] and lost eight hundred men, with all their arms and cannon, while the Americans lost only twelve killed and sixty wounded. This "most extraordinary victory of the war" was due to the spirit and ability of General Morgan,[9] who was bravely supported by his officers and men. Jan., 1781.

290. A Chase by Cornwallis.—When Cornwallis heard of it he burned his baggage and pursued Morgan, who was now joined by Greene and the main army. The Americans had just crossed the Catawba when the British came in sight, but night and a heavy rain checked the pursuers. Next morning the river was too deep to ford, and Cornwallis was delayed three days. Greene pushed on to the Yadkin and secured all its boats. Cornwallis followed and again came in sight of the Americans just as they had crossed the stream. Again sudden and violent rains came to their rescue and his defeat. Two

days later a similar race was begun for the fords of the Dan, and a third time America was saved by the aid of Providence. In spite of poverty, suffering, and the frightful odds that were yet to be met, the brave people took heart again, and believed that their country was destined to be free.

291. Southern States Recovered.—Greene's army having rested, and being re-enforced by troops from Virginia and North Carolina, turned and gave battle near *Guilford Court-house*. It was defeated, but Cornwallis was so much weakened by his losses in the battle, and in the previous pursuit, that he abandoned Carolina and withdrew into Virginia. General Greene, though suffering several defeats, managed to keep all his positions, and at *Eutaw Springs* he gained a brilliant victory. In pursuing the British after this battle great losses were sustained; but in nine months Georgia and the two Carolinas had been recovered, with the exception of the three cities of Savannah, Charleston, and Wilmington.

March 15.

Sept. 8.

Questions.—Describe the main incidents of the campaign in the South. How was the lower Hudson regained by the Americans? Tell the story of Paul Jones (see note 4). What was the state of our country during the winter of 1779–80?

Map Exercise.—Where was Stony Point? Paulus Hook (now Jersey City)? On Map No. IV., point out Savannah. Charleston. Camden. Battle-field of the Cowpens. Guilford Court-house. Eutaw Springs. Trace Cornwallis's pursuit of Morgan and Greene.

Points for Essays.—Letter from a soldier in winter quarters at Morristown to his mother at home. From an Englishman in Cornwallis's army, describing Marion's mode of warfare, to his friends in England. Look up incidents in the lives of Colonel Washington, Sumter, Marion, Paul Jones, Morgan, Greene, Cornwallis, and make sketches of their characters.

Read Simms's *Life of Marion.* Moultrie's *Memoirs of the Revolution.* Henry Lee's *Memoirs of the War in the Southern States.* Cooper's *History of the American Navy.* Mackenzie's *Life of Paul Jones. Up the Ashley and Cooper,* article in *Harper's Magazine,* December, 1875.

NOTES.

1. MAJOR-GENERAL BENJAMIN LINCOLN (1733–1810), was born and died in Hingham, Mass. He was a sturdy farmer,—member of the legislature and of the provincial Congress. Early in the war he showed military ability, and gained rapid promotion. After his capture at Charleston (§ 285) he was allowed to go home on parole, and was not exchanged for nearly a year. He then hastened to the front, and held important commands until the close of the war (§ 304).

2. GENERAL ANTHONY WAYNE, by reason of his many brilliant feats at arms, became the popular hero of the Revolution. He was born in Chester County, Pennsylvania, 1745, and died at Presque Isle (now Erie, Pa.), 1796, on his return from a successful expedition against the western Indians.

3. MAJOR LEE—afterwards General Henry Lee—was one of the leading spirits in the southern department. He was a brave soldier and a skillful officer. He died in 1816. General Robert E. Lee (§ 523) was his son.

4. JOHN PAUL JONES was born in the south of Scotland, 1747. For a time he was mate of a slave-ship, but soon recoiled from the horrors of the business and came to America to live. In 1775 he was appointed lieutenant in the navy. The capture of the Serapis was his last sea fight for the Americans, but his successes during the previous three years had been numerous and brilliant. The name of Jones's ship is an odd memorial of the circumstances in which he obtained it. While waiting at Boulogne, wearied with the delay of the French officials to give him a ship as they had engaged to do, he happened to open *Poor Richard's Almanac* (§ 204) at the sentence, "If you would have your business done, *go;* if not, *send.*" He took the hint, hastened to Paris, got his ship assigned him, and asked leave to call it *Bon Homme Richard;* i. e., *Goodman Richard,* in gratitude to the author of his success. His uniform good fortune as a commander was, perhaps, another fruit of his obedience to Franklin's advice.

5. GENERAL FRANCIS MARION belonged to the Huguenot colony of the Santee, north of Charleston (§§ 139, 140). Having been a captain under Moultrie, he rose to a colonelcy before the fall of Charleston. After that disaster he collected the fragments of his regiment together in the recesses of the swamps, and became a dread to the whole British army in the South. "Marion made war in his own way: now here, now there, now seen, now gone, he was like a meteor in the night; and the successes gained by his swiftness and daring seemed marvelous alike to friend and foe. He selected young men for his band, generally from his own neighbors of French descent; he lived in the swamps; he swam rivers on horseback; his favorite encampment was a canebrake. Scouts were kept out constantly, and when word was brought in of a small party of the enemy anywhere, then went forth Marion's men like lightning after them.

Marion's favorite time for starting was sunset, and then the march lasted all night. It is said that Cornwallis had an especial fear of Marion, and never sat down in any strange house in the neighborhood of Charleston, but always on the piazza or under a tree, that with his own eyes he could watch for the swift darting foe."—*Harper's*, December, 1875.

6. KING'S MOUNTAIN is a mile and a half south of the line which divides the two Carolinas. The American forces consisted of three regiments of settlers west of the Alleghanies, and three of North Carolinians. Many of the latter had been driven from their homes by Cornwallis, choosing exile and poverty rather than submission to the king. When mustered at the Cowpens, on Broad River, the patriot forces numbered more than 1,700 men; but for the swift movement that was planned, only 900 of the best horsemen were chosen. Riding all night and half the following day, they reached the foot of the mountain, and dismounting, advanced in four columns up the steep ascent. The British, numbering 1,125, were posted on the craggy summit, approachable only by most difficult climbing. The conflict that ensued was sharp and brief. Ferguson, the British commander, was killed, and Depeyster, his second in command, surrendered, his retreat being cut off, and a large part of his forces dead or severely wounded. Bancroft says: "The victory at King's Mountain changed the aspect of the war. . . . It fired the patriots of the two Carolinas with fresh zeal. . . . The appearance on the frontiers of a numerous enemy from settlements beyond the mountains, whose very names had been unknown to the British, took Cornwallis by surprise, and their success was fatal to his intended expedition. . . . He had now no choice but to retreat."

7. MAJOR-GENERAL NATHANIEL GREENE was born of Quaker parentage, in Warwick, Rhode Island, 1742, and died near Savannah, 1786. He led a division at Trenton, at Princeton, and at Brandywine; and commanded a wing of the army at Germantown and at Monmouth. He is commonly considered the ablest of the officers of the Revolution, excepting Washington.

8. COLONEL WILLIAM AUGUSTINE WASHINGTON had proved his bravery in several previous battles—Long Island, Trenton, Princeton. He was taken prisoner at Eutaw Springs (§ 291), and was held by the British until the war closed. He was born in Virginia, 1752, and after the war settled in Charleston, S. C., where he died, 1810.

9. GENERAL DANIEL MORGAN was a native of New Jersey, but soon became identified with Virginia, and died there in 1802. In Braddock's campaign of 1755 he was severely wounded, and was taken prisoner at Quebec the next year. He had fought well in the New Jersey campaigns of 1776 and 1777; but his most valuable service was at "the Cowpens."

CHAPTER XIX.

END OF THE WAR.

West Point.

292. Arnold's Treason.—The summer of 1780 was marked in the north by a strange and disgraceful event. Benedict Arnold had borne his full share in the hardships of the war,

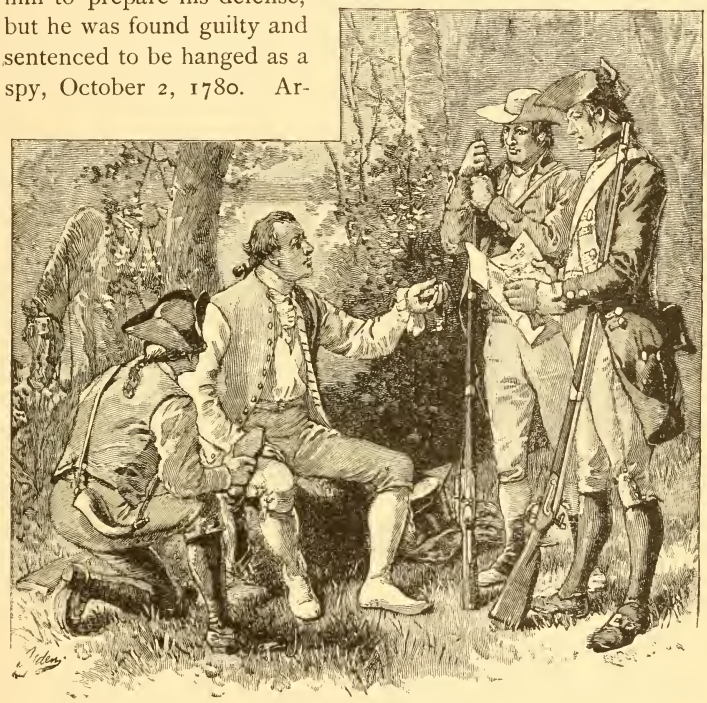
and at Quebec and Saratoga had won the admiration of all by his headlong bravery (§§ 246, 247, 263). But his honesty was not equal to his valor. He had made money by trading in the stores provided for the starving army, and lost it by gambling and luxurious living. He complained that other officers had been promoted to his disadvantage, and that his sacrifices to his country had not been recognized by Congress.

293. After the retreat of Clinton he was placed in command at Philadelphia. Here he was tried by court-martial for dishonesty, and was sentenced to be publicly reprimanded by the commander-in-chief. Washington performed the painful duty with perfect gentleness, giving to Arnold full credit for his great services, and sparing his feelings as much as possible. Nevertheless, Arnold—to mend his ruined fortunes and avenge his injured dignity—made known to Clinton his wish to enter the British service. He obtained from Washington the command of West Point, then the most important post in the country, as controlling the whole line of the Hudson. Soon afterwards he agreed with the British general to surrender it into his hands. For fourteen months the shameful bargaining had gone on, Arnold trying to secure the highest price for his treason before he took the last fatal step. At length a meeting took place at midnight among the bushes at the foot of the "Long Clove Mountain," below Haverstraw. Clinton was represented by his adjutant-general, Major André, a brilliant young officer. It was agreed that the British should attack West Point in force, and Arnold promised so to man the defenses that they must fall without a blow.

294. **Capture of André.**—The wicked plot was foiled by three honest countrymen, Paulding, Williams, and Van Wart,[1] who, in spite of Arnold's pass, arrested André[2] at Tarrytown, on his return to New York. They found in his stockings plans of the works at West Point, notes of the garrison, cannon, and stores, and an engineer's report concerning the attack and defense of

the place. Refusing Major André's offers of immense rewards for his release, they led him to the nearest American post.

295. André's Death and Arnold's Reward.—André was tried by a court-martial of fourteen general officers, including La Fayette and Steuben. Time and opportunity were afforded him to prepare his defense, but he was found guilty and sentenced to be hanged as a spy, October 2, 1780. Arnold escaped, and received his promised reward from the British, together with their open contempt. The next year he appeared with a marauding force of British and Tories in the Chesapeake, burnt Richmond, and ravaged the Virginian coasts. His native State of Connecticut suffered the same

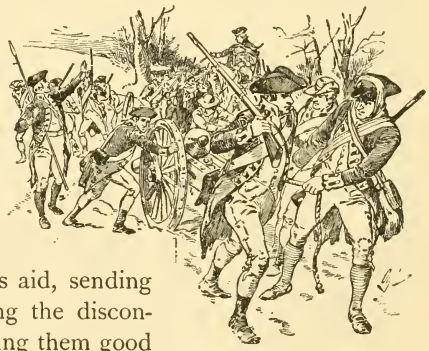


Capture of André.

treatment when New London was plundered and burnt. But Englishmen of honor were unwilling to serve with a traitor. Arnold soon went to England, where he died, twenty years after, in poverty and disgrace.

296. **The greatest peril** now arose from the want of a central government strong enough to provide for the common defense. The paper money issued by Congress had become so nearly worthless that a dollar was worth scarcely more than two cents in coin. Brave as they were, the soldiers of Washington could not live without food, nor escape disease and death while they must sleep in winter upon the frozen ground without straw or blankets.

297. **Mutiny in the Army.**—In January, 1781, the Pennsylvania troops at Morristown rebelled and marched to Princeton, dragging with them six small cannon. They had had no pay for a year, and had been kept in service after their time, as they understood it, had expired. Hearing of the mutiny, General Clinton hastened with British troops to its aid, sending his agents secretly among the discontented soldiers, and offering them good pay and comforts if they would enter his army. Angry at being regarded as traitors and deserters, the troops at Princeton gave up the agents to their officers to be hanged as spies. The State of Pennsylvania then came to the rescue of its suffering men, and provided pay and clothing for all who would continue in the service.



Mutiny in the Army.

298. **Articles of a closer confederation** had already been signed by twelve States. Maryland refused to join them excepting on

the condition that the lands northwest of the Ohio River should become the common property of all. But these lands were included in the chartered limits of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, and Virginia, and had lately been conquered from the British by Virginian troops (§ 278). New York, moreover, had bought from the Six Nations all the lands between the Cumberland Mountains and Lake Erie. Not only did these claims conflict, but union was impossible while the smaller States were at such odds compared with their rich and powerful neighbors. Maryland, especially, saw that all her present and possible settlers would be drawn to Virginia by the cheap lands and light taxes which that great commonwealth could afford.

299. To promote union, New York set the example of ceding all her western territory to Congress for the general good. Maryland then signed the articles of union. The other three States soon afterwards yielded up their claims to the government of the western territory, but Connecticut reserved the ownership of certain lands in Ohio (§ 134) partly to repay her citizens who had suffered losses by Tory raids during the Revolution (§§ 284, 295), and partly to create a school-fund, which still forms a large share of her provision for public education. Georgia and the Carolinas followed the example of their northern sister-states by ceding their lands beyond the mountains to the general government.

March 1, 1781.

300. **The new confederation** was far from being a strong government, but it was a step toward a better union, and it inspired greater confidence in foreign nations than Congress alone had been able to command. Spain had already declared war against Great Britain, but she bitterly opposed the independence of the United States, lest their example should prove too tempting to her own colonies in America. (See § 404.)

301. **The States of Holland** had sympathized from the first with the new Republic, whose struggle for freedom recalled their

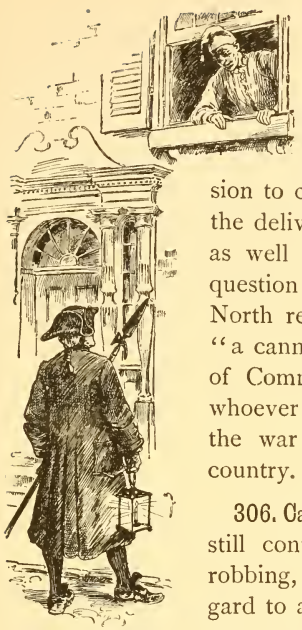
own; but their chief magistrate was so controlled by England that they could never venture upon an American alliance. Their governor at St. Eustatius, one of the West India islands, was the first foreign power to salute the flag of the United States. England demanded an apology, and the governor was recalled.

302. The end of the war was now near. After a series of plundering raids through Virginia, Cornwallis intrenched himself at Yorktown, on the peninsula which separates the York from the James River. Here he was soon surrounded by the combined French and American armies under Washington and Rochambeau, and a French fleet commanded by Count de Grasse.[3] The latter did such damage to the English fleet which came to the rescue, that it sailed away to New York.

303. Siege of Yorktown.—To the last moment before marching southward, Washington had made Clinton believe that he was about to attack New York, and had thus prevented his sending any aid to Cornwallis. Night and day the fleet and army kept up the bombardment of Yorktown. Washington sustained and encouraged his men by his example, and French as well as Americans were proud to serve under such a leader.

Lord Cornwallis.

304. Surrender of Cornwallis.—On the 19th of October, 1781, Cornwallis found himself forced to surrender his 8,000 men, with all his artillery and stores. The scene was one to be remembered. On one side of the road the French forces stretched for more than a mile in a brilliant line; on the other were Washington and his Continentals. Between these lines marched the British and Hessians, with slow and sullen step. Cornwallis did not appear, but sent his sword by one of his officers. Washington appointed General Lincoln to receive it, consoling him thus for having had to surrender his own sword at Charleston (§ 285).



"Cornwallis is Taken!"

305. Effect of the News. — Philadelphians first learned the good news from their watchman's cry, "Past two o'clock, and Cornwallis is taken!" Early in the morning Congress went in solemn procession to church, to render thanks to God for the deliverance of the nation. In England as well as in America it was felt that the question of independence was decided. Lord North received the news as if it had been "a cannon-ball in his breast." The House of Commons voted, March 4, 1782, that whoever should advise a continuance of the war was an enemy to the king and country.

306. Carleton in New York.—Bands of Tories still continued their ravages in the south, robbing, burning, and shooting without regard to any authority. In New York, Clinton was superseded by Sir Guy Carleton. This humane officer, when governor of Canada, had refused to execute the king's designs by setting his savage allies upon the defenseless farms and dwellings of the "rebels," and had offered to receive the sick soldiers of Montgomery and Arnold into his hospitals with free permission to depart as soon as they were well (§ 247). He now provided, at the king's expense, for the return of refugees who had been sent to the West Indies in violation of the terms of the surrender of Charleston, and tried by many kindnesses to make them forget the unjust treatment which they had suffered.

307. Preliminaries of Peace.—On the 11th of July, 1782, the British departed from Savannah, and, during the following December, from Charleston. Preliminaries of peace were

signed at Versailles, near Paris, on the 30th of November. The independence of the United States was acknowledged, and their boundaries were settled. (See § 309.) On the eighth anniversary of the battle of Lexington, April 19, 1783, Washington disbanded his army, and the war-worn patriots were at length free to return to their homes.

308. Departure of the British.—The final treaty of peace was signed September 3, 1783, and on the 25th of November all the British troops in America,—now collected in New York,—embarked from the Battery, while General Knox[4] entered the city on the north. On the 4th of December Washington took leave of his comrades[5] in so many perils and sufferings. A few days later he resigned his commission to Congress. Then he retired to well-earned repose upon his farm at Mount Vernon.

Questions.—What train of events led to the execution of André? What evils resulted from the weakness of Congress? How did the States secure a stronger central government? What was the last decisive event of the war? Describe the closing scene.

Read Sargent's *Life of André.* Sparks's *Life of Arnold.* Raymond's *Women of the South.* Sabine's *Loyalists of the American Revolution.* Washington's Farewell Address to Congress.

NOTES.

1. Each of these patriots was pensioned for life by Congress, and awarded a medal of honor, for his refusal of the bribes offered.

2. MAJOR JOHN ANDRÉ, born in London, 1751, was adjutant-general of the British forces in America, a brave soldier, and an accomplished gentleman. His conduct under trial was manly, and he frankly acknowledged the greatness of his offense.

3. COUNT DE GRASSE, at the early age of eleven years, served with the Knights of Malta against the Moors and Turks. He entered the French navy in 1749. His aid in the siege of Yorktown greatly hastened the surrender of Cornwallis. Afterwards he sailed with his fleet to the West Indies, and gained some important victories over the British.

4. MAJOR-GENERAL HENRY KNOX (born in Boston, 1750, and died in Thomaston, Maine, 1806), was the most noted artillerist of the Revolution. He

was aid to General Ward in the battle of Bunker Hill, where his bravery was conspicuous. At Princeton, Brandywine, Germantown, Monmouth, and many other of the hottest battles of the war, Knox directed the American artillery with wonderful effect. He was in the heaviest cannonading to the last at Yorktown. In 1785 he was appointed Secretary of War and of the Navy. He was chosen by President Washington as his first Secretary of War (§ 321), and remained in his Cabinet for six years, when he retired from public life to the quiet of a farm in Maine.

5. WASHINGTON'S WORDS on this occasion were few, but full of feeling. He said to his fellow-officers: "With a heart full of love and gratitude I now take leave of you. I most devoutly wish that your latter days may be as prosperous and happy as your former ones have been glorious and honorable. I can not come to each of you to take my leave, but shall be obliged to you if each will come and take me by the hand." Before separating, the officers formed themselves into a friendly society called the *Cincinnati*, in memory of the noble Roman, Cincinnatus, who quitted his plow to serve his country in war, and returned to his peaceful pursuits as soon as the victory was won.

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW.—PART III.

		Section
1.	Name some of the causes of the American Revolution.	215–224
2.	What resistance was made to the Navigation Laws?	225, 226
3.	Describe the causes and effects of the Boston Tea Party.	227–229
4.	Name the several steps of the colonies toward union.	102, 145, 151, 230, 298
5.	What was done by the First Continental Congress?	230, 231
6.	What, by the Second?	234, 235
7.	Describe the first battle of the Revolution.	232, 233
8.	What did Englishmen think of the war?	236
9.	Describe the battle of Bunker Hill.	238–240
10.	Describe Washington's army.	241
11.	What were the "Mecklenburg Resolutions"?	242
12.	How was Kentucky founded?	243
13.	How did King George III. prepare for war?	244
14.	What was done by Americans to prevent Canadian attacks?	237, 245–247
15.	How was Boston relieved and Charleston defended?	248, 249

		Section
16.	By what acts were the colonies separated from England?	250
17.	What changes were made in the several colonies?	251
18.	What occurred near and in New York?	252–257
19.	What in the Jerseys?	258–260
20.	What foreigners enlisted under Washington?	261, 269
21.	Describe Burgoyne's campaign in 1777.	262–266
22.	Describe Washington's winter at Valley Forge.	267, 268
23.	What led to the French alliance?	270
24.	How long was Philadelphia held by the British?	263, 272
25.	Describe the attack on Newport.	273
26.	Describe the Indian massacres of 1778, and their punishment.	274–276
27.	Describe Clark's campaign in the West.	277–279
28.	What was done in Carolina and Georgia?	280, 281
29.	What posts on the Hudson were retaken in 1779?	282
30.	Tell something of Captain Paul Jones.	283
31.	Describe the campaign of 1780 in the South.	285–291
32.	Tell the story of Arnold's treason.	292–295
33.	What induced the colonies to make a closer union?	296–299
34.	What part did European nations take toward England?	300, 301
35.	Describe the last campaign of Cornwallis in America.	302–305
36.	What can you say of Carleton?	306
37.	Describe the end of the war.	307, 308
38.	Name, in review, the principal battles of the Revolution.	232, 239, 249, 253, 259, 263, 265, 266, 272, 278, 282, 285, 288, 289, 291, 303.
39.	What British generals were successively in chief command?	232, 240, 272, 288, 306.
40.	Who were the principal American commanders?	241, 257, 265, 281, 282, 286, 288.
41.	What representatives were sent by the United States to France?	270
42.	What can you say of the naval actions of the Revolution?	273, 283, 302
43.	What States had claims to western lands, and what disposal was made of those claims?	298, 299

PART IV.—GROWTH OF THE UNITED STATES.

CHAPTER XX.

ADOPTION OF THE CONSTITUTION.

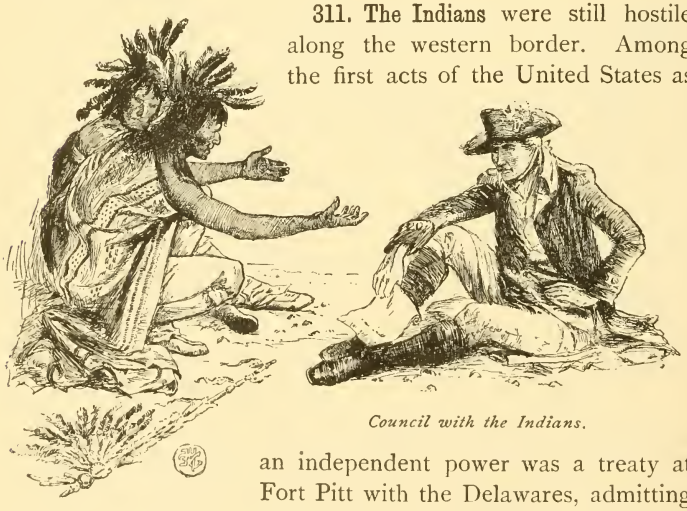
The United States in 1783.

309. **By the terms of the Treaty of Versailles** the United States reached from the Atlantic to the Mississippi, being separated from the British dominions on the north and northeast by the Great Lakes, a few miles of the St. Lawrence, and the St. Croix River. Florida and the mouth of the Mississippi still belonged to Spain. The difficulties and dangers which followed the return of peace were almost as great as those of the war. The nation, as such, was penniless and loaded with debt; its armies were unpaid for the services to which it owed its very existence; and though there was immense wealth in the soil and mines, years of industry were needed to bring it to light.

310. **There was no general government,** for the Articles of Confederation (§ 298) had proved too weak for the purpose for

which they were framed. The several States had adopted republican constitutions; but whether the thirteen republics were to exist as so many separate nations, or were to be united under a monarchy or in a federal league, no man knew. In the summer of 1782 the unpaid soldiers had listened to the proposal of some ambitious officers that they should set up Washington as their king. The great general crushed the plot as soon as it came to his knowledge, and proved his hold upon the love of his men by keeping them in order and obedience during the trying year, while he was urging upon Congress their just demands. Instead of the half-pay for life, to which officers were entitled, he secured to them a sum equal to five years' full pay,—a necessary provision for those whose private fortunes had been ruined by the war.

311. The Indians were still hostile along the western border. Among the first acts of the United States as



Council with the Indians.

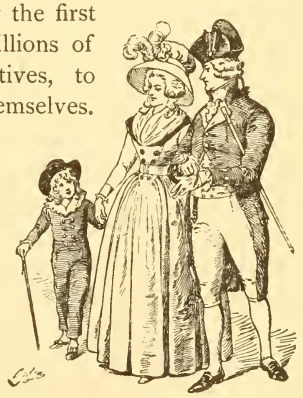
an independent power was a treaty at Fort Pitt with the Delawares, admitting their just claim to their lands until they chose to sell them. In 1784 peace was made with the Iroquois by a grand council at Fort Stanwix, now Rome, New York, and within six years similar treaties were made with all the tribes to

the southward. Mutual forgiveness of injuries was promised, and peace was restored.

312. The "treaty rights" thus yielded by the United States have been the basis of all official dealings with the natives of the far west. Unhappily, Indian agents have sometimes cared more for their own gains than for the honor of their government, and some private citizens have acted toward the barbarians with reckless cruelty and fraud.

313. **Movements toward Union.**—The jealousies already existing among the States grew deeper and more violent with every year of their independence. At length the legislature of Virginia invited all the other States to join her in a convention to agree upon a much-needed system of commercial intercourse. Only five States accepted the invitation, but their delegates at Annapolis, in 1786, advised Congress to call a general assembly to revise the Articles of Confederation.

314. **The Constitutional Convention.**—This body met in Philadelphia, May 25, 1787, and in it were found delegates from all the States excepting Rhode Island. Other nations have had their forms of government gradually shaped by circumstances through a course of centuries:—for the first time in the world's history four millions of people were, by their representatives, to choose a form of government for themselves.



Costumes in 1790.

315. **Washington was President of the Convention,** and with him sat some of the wisest and best statesmen that America or the world has known. There was Franklin, now more than eighty years old, who had done priceless service to his country in England and France, and whose practical wisdom made him one of the ablest framers of

the Constitution; there was Robert Morris,[1] who had raised money by his own credit to carry on the war; there were Hamilton, and Livingston, and Madison, who by their study of English law, had learned to apply broad principles of truth and justice to the needs of a free people.

316. **Differences of Opinion.**—It was soon found that there were many parties in the convention. One desired only to "mend the weak places" in the Confederation; another, to make a new and strong government. The representatives of Virginia and the larger States would have national officers elected by a majority of the people; those of New Jersey and the rest insisted that each State, whether great or small, should have an equal part in the general government. The former was called the National, the latter the Federal, plan. Some were in favor of three Presidents, each of whom would be a check upon the others, lest any one should gain supreme power. On the other hand, Hamilton declared that "no good executive can be established on republican principles"; but since a king could not be had, he desired that the new constitution should be "toned up" to the nearest possible likeness to a monarchy. Connecticut took the part of peacemaker between the opposing parties. Her three delegates,[2] Roger Sherman, William Samuel Johnson, and Oliver Ellsworth were eminent for their experience in governing. It was decided that all the States should have an equal vote in the Senate, while their importance in the lower House would depend upon the number of their people. The smaller States then became willing to grant full powers to the general government.

317. **The Constitution of the United States,** as reported after four months of earnest discussion, left to each State the charge of its own affairs, but gave to the Federal government the care of all matters which affected the nation as a whole. Such are coinage, postal service, the maintenance of army and navy, forts, arsenals, and magazines for the common defense, and the

making of war, peace, or alliances with foreign powers. (See Appendix, pages xiv., xv.)

The *law making power* is vested in a Congress, consisting of a Senate and a House of Representatives. Every State is entitled to two senators chosen by its own legislature: the number of representatives from each State, chosen directly by the voters, depends upon its population.

The *executive power* is intrusted to a President, chosen by electors in all the States, for a term of four years. He nominates, and with the consent of the Senate, appoints, embassadors, consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and the members of his own Cabinet, and gives commissions to officers in the army and navy.

The *judicial power* is vested in a Supreme Court and such lower courts as Congress may establish.

318. Opinions of the Constitution.—A great English statesman of our own time (Mr. Gladstone) has pronounced the Constitution of the United States to be "the most wonderful work ever struck off at a given time by the brain and purpose of man." Washington wrote of it: "It appears to me little short of a miracle that the delegates from so many States, different from each other in their manners, circumstances, and prejudices, should unite in forming a system of national government so little liable to well-founded objections. . . . . It is provided with more checks and barriers against the introduction of tyranny than any government hitherto instituted among mortals." Should it "be found less perfect than it can be made, a constitutional door is left open for its amelioration."

319. Adopted by the States.—The constitution thus framed was submitted to the people, who, in each State, chose delegates to consider and pronounce upon it. After severe discussion, in which Hamilton, Madison, Jay,[3] and Patrick Henry[4] took a leading part, it was accepted at last by all the States. On the first Wednesday in January, 1789, the first general election was

held under the constitution. A month later the electors met, and *George Washington*[5] was chosen to be the first President of the United States without one dissenting voice. *John Adams*, of Massachusetts, was declared Vice-President.

Washington's Journey to New York.

320. Washington's Inauguration. — Washington's journey to New York, then the seat of government, was like a triumphal progress. Crowds attended him; young girls, clothed in white, scattered flowers along his way. The oath of office was administered by Chancellor Livingston,[6] of New York, on the balcony of the senate-house, in the presence of throngs of people, who filled the street, the windows, and the roofs of surrounding buildings. And when Washington's voice was heard pledging himself to "preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States," every one felt that the new Republic was safe.

Questions.—In what condition were the States after the War of Independence? By what steps was union attained? What are the main points in the Constitution? Describe the first inauguration.

Map Exercise.—Point out all the boundaries of the United States in 1784.

Point for Essay.—Letter of a New England girl, present in New York at the inauguration of Washington.

Read *The Century*, April, 1889, for full accounts of Washington's inauguration, and of his home-life at Mt. Vernon.

NOTES.

1. ROBERT MORRIS (1734–1806), "the patriot financier," was an Englishman by birth. He came to Philadelphia when thirteen years old, and there commenced a wonderfully successful business career. He was a man of immense fortune at the breaking out of the Revolution, and his credit was better than that of Congress. In 1781 he was made superintendent of finance, and during that year he supplied all the wants of the army in the expedition against Cornwallis. To do this, Morris was compelled to give his own notes, which were all paid, to the amount of $1,400,000. He superintended the affairs of the navy, and sent out many privateers on his own account. In 1781 he established the "Bank of North America," which greatly helped the government. During the hard winter at Valley Forge, he sent as a gift to the army a ship-load of clothing and provisions. When an old man Morris lost all his fortune in a speculation, and was a prisoner for debt from 1798 to 1802.

2. ROGER SHERMAN was now sixty-six years of age. In his youth he had been a shoemaker, but after careful study he became a lawyer at the age of thirty-three, and took a leading part in the events that led to the Revolution. His fellow-citizens "gave him every possible sign of their confidence. The church made him its deacon; Yale College its treasurer; New Haven its representative, and, when it became a city, its first mayor, re-electing him as long as he lived. For nineteen years he was annually chosen one of the fourteen assistants, or upper house of the legislature, and for twenty-three years a judge of the court of common pleas or the superior court. A plurality of offices being then allowed, Sherman was sent to the first congress in 1774, and to every other congress to the last hour of his life, except when excluded by the law of rotation. In congress he served on most of the important committees, the board of war, the board of marine, the board of finance. He . . . was of the committee to write, and a signer of, the Declaration of Independence, was of the committee to frame the Articles of Confederation, and a signer of that instrument." § 298.

WILLIAM SAMUEL JOHNSON was now sixty, and had recently been chosen president of Columbia College. He had been educated at Yale and Harvard, and had been the "able and faithful agent of his State in England, where Oxford made him a Doctor of Civil Law."

OLIVER ELLSWORTH had been the attorney of his own State, a member of its assembly, one of its delegates in congress, a colleague of Sherman in its superior court, and now, rich in experience, he becomes one of the chief workmen in framing the federal constitution. "He was afterward," says John Adams, "the firmest pillar of Washington's administration." He became Chief-justice of the United States in 1796.

3. JOHN JAY (1745–1829), was one of the greatest statesmen of his time. He was of French descent, and was born in New York. In 1764 he graduated

at King's (Columbia) College, and then studied law. In the provincial congress of New York, and in both continental congresses, he was a member of the most important committees. The constitution of the State of New York is mainly his work. In 1778 he was president of the national congress, and the following year he was sent as minister to Spain. At the close of the Revolution he was one of five commissioners appointed to negotiate the treaty with Great Britain, but the entire work fell upon Jay and Franklin. After his return to America he was Secretary of Foreign Affairs. Washington made him Chief-justice of the United States, being the first to hold the position. Although Jay's treaty of 1794 (§ 331) with England created such excitement in this country, time proved the wisdom of its conditions. On his return from negotiating this treaty he was for six years governor of New York. He then retired to his estate in Westchester County, where he quietly passed the remaining twenty-eight years of his life.

4. PATRICK HENRY (§ 230 and note), objected mainly to the first three words, "We, the People," insisting that the convention was called only to form an alliance of *states*. Virginia ratified the constitution, however, with the full understanding that it united the people of all the States under one government.

5. GEORGE WASHINGTON (born February 22, 1732; died December 14, 1799). His father died when George was eleven years old, so that his education devolved upon his mother, a woman of noble character, who commanded the deep love and respect of her son. His attendance at school was from necessity limited; however, he thoroughly fitted himself to be a surveyor, and while engaged in this work, shut off from civilization and compelled to undergo numerous hardships, the young man learned many lessons that afterwards proved useful to him. When Governor Dinwiddie arrived in Virginia he appointed Washington, with the rank of major, over one of the four military districts into which he divided the colony. It was at this time, and when only twenty-one years of age, that Washington was sent on his mission to Fort Le Bœuf (§ 181). The soundness of his judgment was shown on that occasion, and Braddock's expedition was afterwards ruined by disregard of his advice. When called upon to take command of the army of the United States, he accepted the post with his usual modesty, but declined to receive any pay. He had married Mrs. Martha Custis, a wealthy young widow, in 1759, and, being heir himself to large estates at Mount Vernon, on the Potomac, he had devoted himself to agriculture and the improvement of his property. At the close of the war Washington looked eagerly for a renewal of his home-life, but again sacrificed his private desires for his country's good in accepting the presidency. In appearance Washington was of commanding presence. His face was calm and dignified, and his manner was formal. In private he was gracious and genial, especially with the young.

6. ROBERT R. LIVINGSTON (1746–1813), was a cousin of William Livingston mentioned in § 315. He held many important political offices, and was the first chancellor of the State of New York. See § 355. He did much for the improvement of agriculture in New York, and aided Fulton in his early experiments in steam navigation (§ 362).

CHAPTER XXI.

FIRST AND SECOND TERMS, A. D. 1789–1797.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President.* JOHN ADAMS, *Vice-President.*

Continental Currency.

321. Washington's Cabinet consisted of Thomas Jefferson, Secretary of State; Alexander Hamilton,[1] Secretary of the Treasury; Henry Knox, Secretary of War; and Edmund Randolph,[2] Attorney-general. John Jay was appointed Chief-justice of the United States.

322. Hamilton's great financial ability soon brought confidence and prosperity into our commercial affairs. The general government took upon itself the war debts of the several States, and made arrangements to redeem all the certificates of debt issued by Congress. This was a severe test of public honor, for the greater part of this paper was in the hands of speculators, who had bought it for almost nothing from the starving soldiers of the Revolution and from other needy creditors of the nation. Many thought the government should divide its payments between the first and the present holders of the pledges, but this was impossible, and the new nation was not to begin its existence by breaking its promises.

323. The Bank of the United States was established at Philadelphia, and there, also, the national mint was set up. Taxes were laid on imports of foreign goods, and on the distilling of liquors.

In 1790 the seat of government was placed for ten years at Philadelphia, and a tract of land ten miles square on either side of the Potomac, which was given to the United States by Maryland and Virginia, was adopted by Congress as the site of the future capital. Washington himself chose the site for the city which was to bear his name, and laid the corner-stone of the Capitol in 1793.

324. The Northwestern Territory.—The most important act of the last Continental Congress had been the organizing of a settled government for the territory north of the Ohio River. It was, in fact, "the most notable law ever enacted by representatives of the American people." To insure its perpetual enforcement, it was not left as a mere act of Congress, which could be repealed at a later session; but its six main provisions were made articles of a solemn agreement between the inhabitants of the territory, present and to come, and the people of the thirteen States. No man was to be deprived of his liberty excepting as a punishment for crime; life, property, and religious freedom were protected by just and equal laws. A clause, which several western States have copied in their constitutions, declared that, "Religion, morality, and knowledge being necessary to good government, schools and the means of education shall forever be encouraged." For this purpose one square mile in every township (thirty-six square miles) was set apart for the support of common schools, and two entire townships for the establishment of a university. Ohio University, at Athens, arose from this foundation, and was the first college west of the Alleghanies.

July, 1787.

325. The Ohio Company.—In consequence of this liberal constitution, which was partly suggested by himself, Doctor Cutler,[3] of Massachusetts, as agent of the new "Ohio Company," bought of Congress a million and a half acres of land on the Ohio and Scioto rivers. For other persons Doctor Cutler bought four millions of acres more. The whole vast Territory

was then known as "The Wilderness," and contained no white inhabitants excepting a few French settlers on its western and northern borders. The few and scattered Indians offered little resistance to immigration. Attracted by the fertile soil and the assurance of good government, industrious settlers soon thronged to the new country. The five States[4] formed from

Settlers on the Way to the Ohio.

the Northwestern Territory now contain one fourth of all the population of the United States. General St. Clair[5] became the first governor of the Territory, and took up his residence at *Marietta*, the first town on the Ohio.

326. **The Indians on the Miami and Wabash rivers** made frequent attacks upon the white settlements. They were supplied with powder and guns from forts which the British still wrongfully held in the heart of the country. Several expeditions against these tribes were repulsed with great slaughter; even the one led in person by Governor St. Clair ended in surprise and disgrace. General Wayne,—the "Mad Anthony" of the

General St. Clair.

Revolution,—had better success. Having defeated the savages on the Maumee, he so laid waste their country that they were glad to buy peace by removing west of the Wabash.

327. **Whisky Rebellion.**—The whisky tax caused great discontent in western Pennsylvania, where whisky was largely made. The spirit of revolt was increased by artful men who wished to overthrow all laws. The rebellion made such headway that the President called out 15,000 militia to put it down, and himself led the citizen-army as far as Fort Cumberland. There he gave the command to General Lee,—formerly "Light Horse Harry," now governor of Virginia,—who marched into the western counties of Pennsylvania. But no fighting was needed; frightened by this spirited action, the rioters laid down their arms and asked pardon from the government.

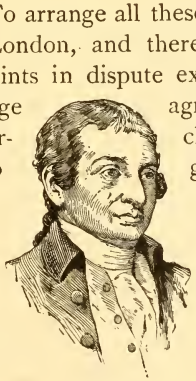
328. During the **French Revolution,** which was now in progress, Washington and his advisers had a difficult part to play. La Fayette, one of the first and warmest friends of American freedom, was for a time a leader of the popular movement in France. Our people were strongly inclined to sympathize with the French in their resistance to a worse despotism than we had ever suffered; and when Great Britain took up arms to force the restoration of kings in France, some ardent spirits in America were eager to plunge into war and pay our debt of gratitude by helping to gain for our comrades in arms the same blessings which we were enjoying.

329. But when the **Reign of Terror** in France had destroyed freedom instead of securing it, and shed torrents of innocent blood, wiser people were alarmed, and thought even tyranny was better than such mad violence. Besides, we had England

on our north and east, Spain on our south and west, stirring up the Indians to fierce warfare, while our eastern ports were at the mercy of English ships. In addition to this, the pirate states of the Mediterranean were preying upon all the commerce of Christendom, and hundreds of American citizens were toiling as slaves under the burning sun of Algiers and Morocco.

330. **Great Britain** still held Mackinaw, Detroit, Niagara, Oswego, and several other forts on our frontier, and gave still greater offense during her war with France by seizing American ships and forcing their sailors to serve on board her own vessels. On the other hand, English merchants complained that they could not collect debts due them in America. In some cases many years' interest was claimed on money due before the Revolution, while Congress insisted that the British government, having made payment impossible, was itself responsible for the delay.

331. **Jay's Treaty.**—To arrange all these matters John Jay was sent as minister to London, and there made a treaty which settled most of the points in dispute excepting the "right of search." King George agreed to pay for the losses of American merchant-ships caused by his privateers, and to give up the western forts (§ 326) which, with or without authority from him, had kept alive Indian hostilities against our pioneers in the new territory. On the other hand, Congress provided for the payment of our English debts. The treaty was violently opposed by those Americans who still bitterly hated England, and wished success to the French Revolution, which she was fighting to put down. Washington was greatly abused by these people, and was even accused of overdrawing his salary[6] as President, and threatened with impeachment! He perse-



John Jay.

vered, however, in what seemed to him the course of duty, and with a majority of the Senate ratified Mr. Jay's treaty.

332. **Citizen Genet.**—Counting upon the gratitude and affection of our countrymen toward France, her envoy, "Citizen Genet," who had landed at Charleston, raised troops and fitted out privateers in the southern States before presenting himself at the seat of government. A large party of American citizens upheld him, and demanded a declaration of war against Great Britain. Washington firmly resisted this wild policy, and soon Genet was recalled. He chose, however, to remain in this country, and became a citizen of the United States.

333. **Two political parties** now became clearly divided. The Federalists, with Washington at their head, stood by the treaty with England, and desired a strong central government for the sake of commanding respect abroad and security at home. The *Republicans*,—or Democrats, as they were called later, the two names having nearly the same meaning,—were friends to France, and to the independent sovereignty of our States, while they violently opposed Jay's treaty, the United States Bank, and the payment of State debts by the general government. They were in constant dread that the government was drifting toward "monarchy" when any new power was exerted by Congress or the President; and perhaps some of them really feared that Washington might become "King of America," though this apprehension was certainly not felt by the leaders, nor by the more intelligent members of the party. Alexander Hamilton and John Adams were leading Federalists; Jefferson, Madison, and Monroe were the chief Democrats.

334. **A treaty with Spain,** in 1795, settled the boundaries between the United States on one side, and Florida and Louisiana on the other. The navigation of the Mississippi was secured to American citizens, and they were permitted to use New Orleans for ten years as a place of deposit. This treaty removed a great danger; for the growing products of the West needed this

natural outlet, and some bold men had even plotted to seize New Orleans by force,—a movement which must certainly have brought on war. On the other hand, the Spanish authorities in that city were said to be sending spies through the southwestern

Algerine Pirates.

country, hoping to separate that rich territory from the Union and make it subject to Spain.

335. **Treaty with Algiers.**—During the same year a treaty was made with the pirate government of Algiers, on terms which were humiliating but necessary, as we had no navy. $800,000

were paid to the Dey for the release of American seamen whom he held as slaves, and an annual tribute of $23,000 was promised in return for his engagement to leave our merchant-ships unharmed. During Washington's two terms of office *Vermont*, *Kentucky*, and *Tennessee* were organized as States and admitted into the Federal Union (§§ 223, 243, and note 1, Chapter XV).

336. As his second term of office drew near its close, Washington declined a re-election, in an address to his fellow-citizens, which he caused to be published in a Philadelphia paper. In his last speech to Congress he recommended an increase of the navy, and the establishment of a military academy, a national university, and an institution for the improvement of agriculture. His eight years of chief magistracy had been, if possible, a yet greater service to his country than his eight-years' command of her armies. No man was probably ever more free from selfish aims; none could have held together so many discordant interests until they had time to become harmonious.

337. **Washington's plea for union** may be given in his own words: "The *North* . . . finds in the productions of the South great additional resources of maritime and commercial enterprise, and precious materials of manufacturing industry. The *South*, in the same intercourse, benefiting by the agency of the North, sees its agriculture grow and its commerce expand. . . . The *East*, in a like intercourse with the West, already finds,—and in the progressive improvement of interior communications by land and water, will more and more find,—a valuable vent for the commodities which it brings from abroad or manufactures at home. The *West* derives from the East supplies requisite to its growth and comfort, and . . . must owe the secure enjoyment of indispensable outlets for its own productions to the weight, influence, and future maritime strength of the Atlantic side of the Union."

Washington's Coach of State.

338. The Republican Court.—Washington had maintained the dignity of the Republic by his grave and stately manners, and the style of his appearance in public. His own tastes were very simple; but some of his advisers doubted whether the people would respect and obey a government which was without the pomps and ceremonies that made an essential part of Old World customs. There were others who made sport of Washington's coach of state, drawn by six white horses; and regarded his formal receptions as "aping the manners of royalty." We shall see that later Presidents found it possible to adopt simpler manners, but we may be sure that Washington did nothing from vanity.

339. Results of the First Administration.—Under his faithful care, an era of prosperity had begun. The honor of the government had been sustained by a secure provision for the payment of its debts, confidence and order were established, commerce flourished, and the products of the soil had become a source of wealth. In spite of the complaints of restless politicians, the people loved their government, for they found it well fitted to secure their peace and happiness.

Questions.—What was done by Washington's Secretary of the Treasury? How was the Northwestern Territory organized? How settled? How was the peace of the country broken? How were matters arranged with England? What differences of opinion between parties in Washington's time? What was his parting advice to the nation? What good had he done?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map IV., the boundaries of the Northwestern Territory and its first settlement. On Map VI., three successive seats of the Federal government.

Read Volume V. of Irving's *Life of Washington.* Life of Hamilton. Griswold's *Court of Washington.* Goodrich's *Republican Court. Omitted Chapters of History*, by M. D. Conway.

NOTES.

1. ALEXANDER HAMILTON (1757–1804), born in the West Indies, was one of the most remarkable men of the Revolution. His mother died when he was a child, and his father being poor, Hamilton was left in the care of his mother's relatives. They placed him in a commercial house when twelve years of age, and although he did not like the life, he did his duties faithfully. He wrote a newspaper article when but fifteen years old that gave proof of so much ability that his friends determined to educate him, and he was sent to King's (Columbia) College, where he graduated. He became much interested in politics, and his speeches and political pamphlets soon gave him a high position in the community. When nineteen years old he was commissioned as captain of artillery, and attracted the attention of Washington, to whom he finally became aid-de-camp. He conducted Washington's most delicate correspondence with the British commanders and others. After the war he studied law, in which profession he at once rose to eminence, but much of his time was given to politics. He was a member of the Constitutional Convention (§ 314), and wrote the majority of a series of papers called *The Federalist*, in defense of the Constitution, which were widely read. Hamilton's great ability and untiring energy won him many strong friends among the Federalists, and many bitter enemies in the opposite party. As Washington's first Secretary of the Treasury, Hamilton's career was brilliant and successful. A split occurring in the Federalist party, Hamilton, by his opposition, gave deep offense to Aaron Burr, who finally challenged him to a duel and shot him. Hamilton is described as being under the medium height and slight in figure. His complexion was fair and delicate, and his manners were most engaging.

2. EDMUND RANDOLPH (1753–1813), was the son of John Randolph of Williamsburg, a steadfast Royalist and last Attorney-general of the Colony of Virginia. Upon his enlisting in the cause of the colonies against the mother-

country, the son was disowned by his father, but adopted by his uncle, Peyton Randolph, who was the first president of the American Congress. Edmund Randolph served on Washington's staff during the Revolution. In 1786 he was elected governor of Virginia, and the next year was a member of the convention which prepared the Constitution of the United States. Though dissatisfied with some articles of the Constitution, and refusing it his signature, he yielded to the judgment of the majority and used his influence for its adoption by the Virginia Convention. In 1789 he was appointed Attorney-general, and tried to hold a neutral position in the rising dissensions in the cabinet between the Federalists and Republicans. Personally attached to Washington, he was politically allied with Jefferson, whom, in 1794, he succeeded as Secretary of State. He resigned, however, the following year, owing to charges which there is every reason to believe false and malicious, but which circumstances then deprived him of the means of refuting. His vindication, published afterwards, was believed by all excepting his personal enemies. The last eighteen years of his life were occupied with the practice of law.

3. MANASSAH CUTLER was born at Killingly, Conn., 1742, and graduated at Yale College, 1765. Senator Hoar, in his centennial address at Marietta, April, 1888, named as the two founders of the State of Ohio, General Rufus Putnam and Dr. Cutler. "Putnam was the great leader, the man of action; but Cutler's portion of the work was the more important in its results. . . . Manassah Cutler was probably the fittest man on the continent, except Franklin, for a mission of delicate diplomacy. He was a man of consummate prudence in speech and conduct; of courtly manners; a favorite in the drawing-room and in the camp, with a wide circle of friends and correspondents, among the most famous men of his time. It now fell to his lot to conduct a negotiation second only in importance, in the history of his country, to that which Franklin conducted with France in 1778." The Ohio Company was composed of officers in the Revolutionary armies, who exchanged for these western lands the certificates of the arrears of pay due them from the United States. Dr. Cutler built the first emigrant wagon that penetrated the forests of Ohio; and his son, Jarvis, cut down the first tree in the clearing made at Marietta.

4. The five States formed out of the Northwest Territory are Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin.

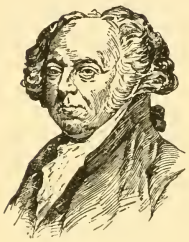
5. GENERAL ARTHUR ST. CLAIR (1734–1818), was of Scotch birth. He had served faithfully in the French and Indian War, and also under Washington during the Revolution. Having been appointed commander-in-chief of the armies sent against the Miamis, he keenly felt the failure of the expedition, and, on Washington's refusal of the investigation which he demanded, immediately resigned his commission. Later, Congress ordered the investigation, and General St. Clair was acquitted of all blame.

6. It was answered by the Secretary of the Treasury that Washington never even touched the sum allowed him by the government, which was drawn and disbursed by the gentleman who had charge of the expenses of his household.

CHAPTER XXII.

THIRD TERM, A. D. 1797–1801.

JOHN ADAMS, *President.* THOMAS JEFFERSON, *Vice-President.*



John Adams.

340. The Second President.—*John Adams*,[1] of Massachusetts, was the second President of the United States, and Thomas Jefferson, of Virginia, having received only three votes fewer from the electoral college,[2] became Vice-President. These two great men were leaders of opposite parties, and during their four years of office the country was disturbed by a violent conflict of opinions. The inconvenience of such a difference of sentiments in the administration led, a few years later, to a change in the mode of election,—a distinct ballot being held for the Vice-President, who has ever since been of the same party with his chief.

A. D. 1804.

341. Abuse of Privileges.—It had been found that the welcome which the United States offered to refugees of all nations was greatly abused. Men who had been expelled, sometimes for crime, from their native land, found homes and prosperity in America, and used their freedom in misrepresenting and embarrassing the government which protected them. The true interest of our nation was peace and friendship with all others, but this was endangered by the rival partisans of France and England.

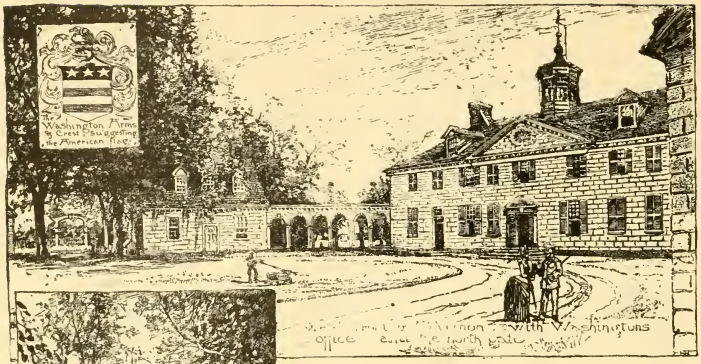
342. Alien and Sedition Laws.—In these circumstances Congress passed an *Alien Law*, empowering the President to send

out of the country, at short notice, any foreigner whom he might consider dangerous, and lengthening the time requisite for becoming a citizen of the United States to fourteen years. It was followed by a *Sedition Law*, which limited the freedom of the press to criticise the government. Under this act it was a crime to "write, print, utter, or publish any false, scandalous, or malicious statement" against either Congress or the President. These laws were violently opposed,—as indeed they were contrary to the spirit of our Constitution,—and in the next administration they were repealed. The great Republic accepted the dangers with the blessings of perfect freedom, and rested her hope of security on the virtue and good sense of a majority of her people.

343. Difficulties with France grew very serious. French men-of-war seized American merchant vessels on the high seas, and demanded "enrollment papers" describing the nationality of every sailor. When, as usual, these were not found,—no American law requiring them,—the ship was sold for the benefit of her captors.

344. Our minister to the French Republic was insultingly dismissed. When three special envoys were sent to re-open communications between the governments, they were not recognized in their public character, but were privately informed that a large loan to France, and liberal gifts to high French officials, would probably open the doors. "Millions for defense, not a cent for tribute," was the reply, and the sister-republics seemed to be drifting into war. A. D. 1797.

345. War Measures.—Trade with France was stopped; our army and navy were increased and re-organized, and Washington was called again to the head of the army. Though war had not been declared, six new frigates put to sea and captured several French prizes in the West Indies. But in 1799 Napoleon Bonaparte came to the head of A. D. 1798.



The Tomb of Washington.

the French government, and one of his first acts was a friendly settlement with the United States.

346. Death of Washington.—Scarcely had Washington retired to his home, in good hope of a peaceful old age, when a sudden illness of two days ended his grand and useful life. The whole country mourned him as a father, and those who had been his opponents were most sincere in doing him honor. The British fleet lowered all its flags at receiving news of his death, and Bonaparte, in announcing the event to the French armies, ordered that tokens of mourning should drape all the standards in the public service for ten days.

Dec., 1799.

347. The City of Washington.—The next summer, 1800, the government was removed to its "palace in the wilderness," on the banks of the Potomac. There was little yet to indicate that a beautiful and stately city was to occupy the site chosen by Washington. Mrs. Adams,[3] the President's wife, on her journey from Baltimore to her new home, was actually lost in the woods, and, with her escort, "wandered two hours without

finding a guide or path." She adds, "But woods are all you see from Baltimore until you reach this city, which is so only in name."

Mrs. Adams Lost in the Woods.

348. The rich resources of the country were scarcely yet dreamed of. Anthracite coal had been discovered in Pennsylvania, but its value was so little understood that it was used for mending roads. Cotton had been introduced into Georgia in 1786, and the southeastern States were found to contain the finest cotton lands in the world; but the separation of a single pound of cotton from its seeds required a whole day, and the woven fabric was more costly than linen. In 1793 *Eli Whitney*, of Massachusetts, while visiting in Georgia, invented a cotton-gin which could do the work of hundreds of men in clearing the fiber from the seed. *Arkwright*, in England, had already perfected his machine for spinning cotton, and *James Watt* his steam-engine. These three inventions revolutionized the manufactures of England and America. With the wonderful power of steam, England was now able to weave clothing for the world, and America was prepared to furnish all the raw material that English looms required. Cotton became one of the most important products of the United States, and a source of enormous wealth to the South. The first American cotton mill was set up in Rhode Island by *Slater*, a pupil of Arkwright.

Questions.—What change has been made since Adams's day in the mode of elections, and why? What led Congress to pass the *Alien* and *Sedition Laws?* How was our peace with France disturbed? What changes in cotton?

Point for Essay.—The story of Washington's life and death at Mount Vernon.

Read *Life and Works of John Adams. Familiar Letters of John Adams and his Wife.* Hildreth's *History of the United States, after Adoption of Federal Constitution*, Vol. I.

NOTES.

1. JOHN ADAMS was born at Braintree, Mass., in October, 1735. He was a graduate of Harvard College in the class of 1755, and was admitted to the bar three years later. He was an active member of both the first and second continental congresses, and by his energy and eloquence did more, perhaps, than any other man to lead the American sentiment in favor of independence. As commissioner to France, Holland, and Great Britain, the diplomacy and practical wisdom of John Adams accomplished great results. He secured large loans, and persuaded leading European powers to make treaties of amity and commerce with the new American republic. With Jay and Franklin he framed the preliminary treaty of Versailles. After the declaration of peace, Adams was appointed minister to the English court, which position he filled until 1788. Congress passed a resolution thanking him for the "patriotism, perseverance, integrity, and diligence" displayed during his career abroad. Bancroft says: "His nature was robust and manly, his convictions were clear, his will fixed. . . . He was humane and frank, generous and clement. . . . His courage was unflinching everywhere; he never knew what fear was." One of John Adams's grandsons writes of him: "Ambitious in one sense he certainly was, but it was not the mere aspiration for place or power. It was a desire to excel in the minds of men by the development of high qualities,—the love, in short, of an honorable fame, that stirred him to exult in the rewards of popular favor." Many of the acts of President Adams were violently denounced at the time, but the sober judgment of later years has approved most of his public measures. He and Jefferson became widely alienated, but before their death (§ 413) a happy reconciliation had taken place.

2. The second clause of Section I., Article II., of the United States Constitution begins thus: "Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of *Electors* equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress." These Electors meet in their respective States at a specified time after a presidential election, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President. These bodies of Electors, taken together, are known as the Electoral College.

3. ABIGAIL ADAMS was a woman of strong character, sterling good sense, and marked intellectual ability. She shared her husband's tastes for books, sympathized with his high aims, made his home bright and happy, and won the esteem of all with whom she was associated. She died in 1818.

CHAPTER XXIII.

FOURTH AND FIFTH TERMS, A. D. 1801–1809.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, *President.* — AARON BURR, GEORGE CLINTON, } *Vice-Presidents.*

349. The Third President. — In the Presidential election of 1800, the Federalist party was defeated. *Thomas Jefferson*[1] and *Aaron Burr*[2] received an equal number of votes in the electoral college; the choice between these two then fell upon the House of Representatives. After a close ballot Jefferson was declared President-elect, and Burr Vice-President.

350. Jefferson may be considered as the founder of the *Democratic Party.* This party, from the beginning, claimed for the several States all powers which were not expressly given to the general government; aimed at the greatest possible simplicity and economy in public affairs; and insisted that all public works, such as canals and the clearing of harbors and river-beds, should be at the expense of the district to which they belonged.

351. Jefferson was deeply learned in English law, while as the writer of the Declaration of Independence he was, perhaps, of all men then living, most familiar with the principles on which the Republic had been founded. Seven years' residence in France had filled him with hatred of absolute governments, and with zeal for the universal rights of man.

352. In his style and demeanor as President he cultivated the extreme of republican simplicity, even receiving the British embassador in dressing-gown and slippers. On the occasion of

Jefferson receiving the British Embassador.

his entering upon the highest office, he was escorted to the capitol by a throng of citizens and militia waving flags and beating drums. His inaugural address was a strong appeal for harmony and peace. Jefferson called about him a cabinet distinguished for high talents and education. James Madison was Secretary of State, and Albert Gallatin,[3] a Swiss by birth, was in charge of the treasury.

353. The Treasury.—Distrusting the Federalists, and especially Alexander Hamilton, their leader, Jefferson asked his new Secretary of the Treasury to look sharply into the records of his office, thinking that occasion might be found for charges against its late chief. Gallatin was no less keenly opposed to his predecessor on political grounds, but after a severe examina-

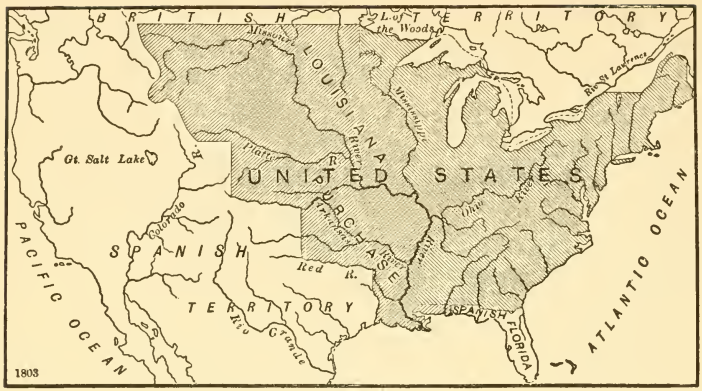
tion he reported to the President that no improvement was possible in the management of the treasury, for that Hamilton had "made no blunders and committed no frauds."

354. Indian Policy.—The difficult question of a method of treating the Indians was settled during this administration nearly as it has always remained. The leading points were to purchase their lands, excepting what they would themselves cultivate, to lead them to agriculture instead of war and hunting, and to remove them west of the Mississippi as soon as it could be peacefully done.

355. The greatest event of Jefferson's term of office was the purchase of the vast territory west of the Mississippi, lately ceded by Spain to France. Robert Livingston and James Monroe were the agents of the United States. Great anxiety was felt about the ownership of this territory, for France and England were again on the eve of war. England was the stronger on the sea, and might easily have taken from France all her remaining possessions in America. In that case the United States with British territory on the west and north, could scarcely have kept their dearly bought independence. A. D. 1800.

Napoleon Signing Cession of Louisiana.

356. For the Territory of Louisiana the commissioners agreed to pay fifteen millions of dollars. One fourth of this sum was due from the French government to American citizens for injuries to their commerce (§ 343). These claims were assumed by Congress and paid from the purchase-money. Upon signing the treaty, Bonaparte remarked: "This accession of territory strengthens A. D. 1803.



The United States in 1803.

forever the power of the United States, and I have given to England a maritime rival that will humble her pride." Livingston said: "We have lived long, but this is the noblest work of our whole lives. This treaty will change vast solitudes into flourishing districts, . . . and will prepare ages of happiness for innumerable generations of human creatures."

357. Lewis and Clark's Expedition.—Captains Lewis and Clark[4] were sent to explore the northern part of the new territory, which extended from the Mississippi westward to Texas and the Rocky Mountains. Ascending the Missouri to its sources, they plunged into a wilderness inhabited chiefly by wolves and bears. Crossing a portage of only thirty-six miles to the headwaters of the Columbia River, they descended to its mouth. The story of their travel during two years and three months is full of wild adventure.

358. The Territory of Orleans was organized within the present limits of the State of Louisiana; the remainder of the new possession was known for some years as *Louisiana Territory*.

A D 1804.

359. The humiliating treaty[5] **with Algiers** (§ 335) had not stopped the attacks upon American ships by pirates from Tripoli, another of the Barbary states. In the sea-ports of New England it was no uncommon thing on a Sunday to hear a letter read in church from some honored citizen, now a slave on the northern coast of Africa, begging his old neighbors to advance money for his ransom. In 1801 the Pasha of Tripoli declared war against the United States, and Commodores Preble[6] and Morris were sent to bombard his capital and bring him to terms. During the blockade the frigate *Philadelphia* was captured by the enemy and taken into port. Lieutenant Decatur sailed into the harbor by night, with seventy-six men in a small vessel, surprised and recaptured the frigate, and burned her to the water's edge under the guns of the Pasha's palace. In 1805 that ruler was glad to obtain peace by promises of better behavior.

360. Alexander Hamilton was killed in a duel with Vice-President Burr in 1804. The shock felt by the whole nation at this horrible event went far to put an end to the murderous custom of dueling. Hamilton disapproved the practice, but when challenged by Burr on account of some political offense, he imagined that honor compelled him to accept. He purposely fired into the air, and at the same moment received a mortal wound.

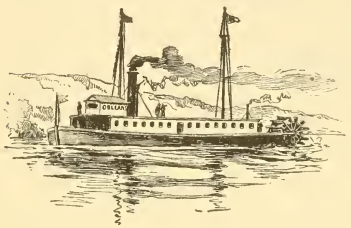
Alexander Hamilton.

361. Jefferson was re-elected the following autumn to the head of the government, but with George Clinton,[7] of New York, as Vice-President. Burr's reckless spirit drove him into the wilderness, where he plotted the formation of a new and rival state from the southwestern territory of the Union. He succeeded in ruining one[8] at least of his accomplices, but he was betrayed by another,[9] and his scheme came to naught. He was tried for treason at Richmond, Va. This crime was not proved, and he was released; but the

A. D. 1807.

career which his brilliant talents might have made honorable and useful, was wrecked, and his old age was dismally unhappy.

362. **Steam Navigation.**—The year 1807 is memorable for the earliest success of steam navigation. Several ingenious men[10] had been trying to apply steam to modes of travel; but to Robert Fulton,[11] a native of Pennsylvania, is due the credit of being the first who was practically successful. He was liberally aided by Chancellor Livingston of New York. His first boat, the "Clermont," ascended the Hudson from New York to Albany in 1807. Four years later he built at Pittsburgh the first Mississippi steamer, which, descending the Ohio and Mississippi rivers, reached New Orleans in December, 1812.



The First Steamboat on the Ohio.

363. **The infant commerce of the United States** was nearly destroyed by the furious war now raging between France and England. Each nation desired to prevent supplies reaching its rival; neutral vessels were forbidden to enter any European port; and thus the American carrying trade was cut off at a blow. Equally vexatious was the pretended "right of search." In June, 1807, the British ship "Leopard" fired into the American frigate "Chesapeake," near Fortress Monroe, killed three men, wounded eighteen, and carried off four under the pretense that they were British subjects. The king's government expressed "regrets," but re-affirmed the right of search.

364. Congress retaliated by an **Embargo Act**, prohibiting the sailing of all vessels for any foreign port. This was injurious to British commerce, but it occasioned yet greater suffering in America. In New England, which was more dependent upon trade than the rest of the

Dec. 22, 1807.

country, it met with determined opposition. Jefferson always believed that if the Embargo Act had been faithfully observed by the whole people, the war of five years later might have been prevented. But the opposing interests were too strong, and after fourteen months the act was repealed.

365. In February, 1803, *Ohio*, the first of five States formed from the Northwest Territory, was admitted to the Union. Both French and English had held trading-posts on the rivers first visited by La Salle and the Jesuits (§§ 160–163), but the earliest permanent settlement in Ohio was at Marietta, where the governor of the whole territory resided (§ 325). Fort Washington, near the junction of the Licking and the Ohio, was the beginning of the city of *Cincinnati*, which took its name from the military society formed by Revolutionary officers. (Note 5, page 185.)

Questions.—What were the political principles of Jefferson and his party? Name the chief events of his administration. What Territory was organized, and what State admitted into the Union? What occasioned the Embargo Act?

Map Exercise.—Compare Maps IV. and VI., and point out the two oldest towns in Ohio. On Map IX., show the boundaries of the land purchased from France.

Point for Essay.—Write a story of the exploration by Captains Lewis and Clark.

Read Tucker's *Life of Jefferson*, and Lord Brougham's review of it in *Edinburgh Review*, 1837. Lewis and Clark's *Journal*. Jefferson's *Autobiography*. An illustrated article entitled *And who was Blennerhasset?* in *Harper's Magazine*, February, 1877.

NOTES.

1. THOMAS JEFFERSON was born at Shadwell, Va., 1743, and died at Monticello, 1826. "No man of his century had more trust in the collective reason and conscience of his fellow-men, or better knew how to take their counsel. Born to an independent fortune, he had from his youth been an indefatigable student. Of a hopeful temperament, and a tranquil, philosophic cast of mind,

always temperate in his mode of life and decorous in his manners, he was a perfect master of his passions. . . . The range of his studies was very wide; he was not unfamiliar with the literature of Greece and Rome; had an aptitude for mathematics and mechanics, and loved especially the natural sciences. . . . Jefferson was a hater of superstition and bigotry and intolerance; he was an idealist in his habits of thought and life. . . . In his profession, the law, he was methodical, painstaking, and successful. Whatever he had to do, it was his custom to prepare himself for it carefully; and in public life, when others were at fault, they often found that he had already hewed out the way; so that in council men willingly gave him the lead, which he never appeared to claim, and was always able to undertake. . . . The nursling of his country, the offspring of his time, he set about the work of a practical statesman, and his measures grew so naturally out of previous law and the facts of the past, that they struck deep root and have endured."—*Bancroft.*

2. AARON BURR was born at Newark, N. J., 1756, and died on Staten Island, 1836. His father and his grandfather, the distinguished Jonathan Edwards (§ 202), were both presidents of Princeton College, of which institution Burr was a graduate. Joining Arnold's expedition to Quebec (§ 246), he bravely led a forlorn hope in the assault on that citadel (§ 247). He left the army in 1779, and began the practice of law at Albany in 1782. As a lawyer Aaron Burr ranked among the foremost of his day: it is said that he never lost a case. His political life began in the New York legislature in 1784. Alexander Hamilton believed Burr to be a dangerous man to place in office, and it was his repeated utterances to this effect which provoked the fatal challenge. After the duel Burr was deprived of his citizenship in the State of New York, and lost social standing and political influence. He plunged into the wild scheme of conquering Mexico and uniting it to a portion of the southwestern States, over which he was to rule supreme, and at his death his idolized daughter, Theodosia, was to become queen! His plots were pronounced treasonable, and in 1806 President Jefferson authorized his arrest. After his trial at Richmond he went to Europe and wandered aimlessly from city to city, under constant watch, and at times in the depths of poverty. He returned to New York in 1812, and resumed the practice of law with success; but his old friends and admirers, except a very few, shunned him. When seventy-eight he married Madam Jumel, a wealthy widow, to obtain a home during the few years he had yet to live; but they soon quarreled and separated, and Burr's last illness was in humble lodgings provided by one of his life-long friends. He was buried at Princeton by the side of his father and grandfather.

3. ALBERT GALLATIN was born in Geneva, Switzerland, in 1761, and died at Astoria, N. Y., 1849. In 1779 he graduated with honors from the University of Geneva, and the next summer left home and friends and brilliant prospects to try his fortunes in America. From 1801 he was for twelve years Secretary of the Treasury, and his able administration stamped him as one of the foremost financiers of his time. Owing to his wise statesmanship he was frequently

chosen to make important treaties with foreign powers. He was United States minister to France from 1816 to 1823, and to England in 1826–27. "His eminent and manifold services to his adopted country, his great abilities and upright character, assure him of a high position in the history of the United States."

4. MERIWETHER LEWIS and WILLIAM CLARK were of Virginia birth, and both had abundant experience in Indian warfare, so that the perils of their long expedition merely added zest to the enterprise. Their return to St. Louis, September, 1806, was nearly two and a half years after their departure from that point. Lewis was made governor of Missouri Territory, and died near Nashville in 1809. Clark afterwards became governor of Missouri Territory; and, later, Superintendent of Indian Affairs. He died at St. Louis in 1838. He was a younger brother of George Rogers Clark (§§ 277, 278). Many of the Indians met with on this journey were as much surprised at seeing white men as were the savages who greeted the landing of Columbus more than three hundred years before. In the history of their expedition they say: "The appearance of [our] men, their arms, their clothing, the canoes, the strange looks of the negro, and the sagacity of our dog,—all in turn shared their admiration, which was raised to astonishment by a shot from the air-gun: this operation was instantly considered as a great 'medicine,' by which they, as well as the other Indians, mean something emanating directly from the Great Spirit, or produced by his agency."

5. When Commodore Bainbridge presented himself on one occasion with the yearly tribute at Algiers, he was commanded by the Dey to proceed on some business of his to Constantinople. Upon his replying that such were not his orders, the Dey remarked: "You are under *my* orders; your people are my subjects, else why do they pay me tribute?" "Bainbridge sailed out of the harbor an obedient slave, but once on the broad sea he pulled down the evidence of the insult to his country, and put the American flag in its place. Arriving at Constantinople, he wrote to the Secretary of the Navy: 'I hope I shall never again be sent to Algiers with tribute unless I am authorized to deliver it from the mouth of our cannon.' But his mission to the Sultan was not without good results. That ruler and his great officers of state were astonished by the presence of the American ship and her commander. They had never even heard of the United States. When the Sultan was informed concerning our country, Bainbridge and his officers were treated with marked courtesy. . . . On his departure the Turkish admiral gave him a *firman* (imperial decree) to protect him from the Dey. When he reached Algiers, the Dey requested him to return to Constantinople on another errand. Bainbridge haughtily refused. The astonished Dey flew into a rage and threatened the captain with personal chastisement and his country with war. Bainbridge quietly produced the *firman*, when the fierce governor became lamblike, and obsequiously offered his 'slaves' his friendship and service. Bainbridge assumed the air of a dictator, and demanded the release of the French Consul and fifty or sixty of his countrymen who had lately been made prisoners. It was immediately done. When he departed he carried away all the French in Algiers without paying any ransom."—*Lossing.*

6. COMMODORE EDWARD PREBLE (1761–1807), was born in Maine. He did gallant service as an officer in the provincial navy during the Revolution, although then so young. In 1799 he was commissioned a lieutenant in the United States navy, and rose rapidly to the rank of commodore. For his services in the war with Tripoli Commodore Preble received a gold medal and the thanks of Congress.

7. "GEORGE CLINTON (1739–1812), was the undisputed leader of the popular party. He had been governor of New York since 1777, and was re-elected every other year to that office for eighteen years. . . . Able, tough, wary, a self-willed man, wielding with unusual tact the entire patronage of the State, and dear to the affections of the great mass of the people, he is an imposing figure in the politics of the time, and must ever be regarded as the chief man of the State of New York during the earlier years of its independent existence."—*James Parton.*

8. This refers to HARMAN BLENNERHASSET, an Irishman of good birth and education, who brought to America considerable wealth, and built an elegant home on an island in the Ohio River below Marietta. On his way west Burr stopped at Blennerhasset's house, and by his glowing representations and pleasant promises won the Irish gentleman's support in his wicked schemes. When Burr became emperor of the southwest, Blennerhasset was to be made a duke and given the principal foreign ministry! His money and all his estates were lost in the fatal enterprise, and he died a broken-hearted old man, on the island of Guernsey, 1831.

9. GENERAL JAMES WILKINSON, then governor of Louisiana, is the person alluded to. He was believed by many to have been at first a sharer with Aaron Burr in his treasonable designs, but was acquitted of such complicity in a trial held in 1811. After Jefferson's proclamation, General Wilkinson used every means to arrest Burr and to defeat his plans.

10. Among the most nearly successful of these were John Fitch of Connecticut, John and Robert Stevens of New York, and James Ramsay of Virginia. The latter obtained in 1784 an exclusive right to navigate the rivers of the State with "boats that could move up stream"; and before 1790 one or more steamboats were actually carrying passengers up Virginian rivers. But this navigation was slow and costly; the principle was proved, but many years of experiment were needed before practical success was attained.

11. ROBERT FULTON (1765–1815), was in his earlier years more of an artist than a mechanic, and he went to London to perfect himself in portrait-painting under the famous Benjamin West. While there he met Earl Stanhope, James Watt, and others engaged in finding practical uses for the recently invented steam-engine, and his mind was directed to the solution of the same problem. His first application of steam-power for moving boats was on the Seine, in 1803, but the experiment was not very successful. After the success of the "Clermont," Fulton built many river steamboats, and constructed the first United States steam war-vessel—named "Fulton the First."

CHAPTER XXIV.

SIXTH TERM, A. D. 1809–1813.

JAMES MADISON, *President.* GEORGE CLINTON, *Vice-President.*

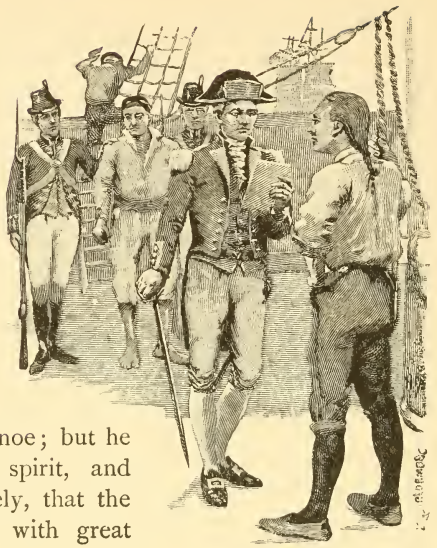
366. The Fourth President.—Jefferson, having declined a third term of office, was succeeded by *James Madison*,[1] of Virginia, who was inaugurated March 4, 1809. *George Clinton*, of New York, was re-elected as Vice-President. The same principles continued to control the government, and the same harmony was visible in the cabinet.

James Madison.

367. The difficulties with England grew worse. Our harbors were blockaded by British vessels, which stopped every American ship entering or leaving, and forced seamen, who were claimed as British subjects, into their own service. Their saying was that a man born a subject must always obey his king, while the United States held then, as now, that a foreigner can, if he will, throw off his allegiance to his sovereign and become a citizen of the Republic.

368. At least six thousand of our seamen had been thus forced into the British navy, and nine hundred American vessels had been searched within eight years. President Madison made every effort to preserve peace between the two countries, but in vain. War was declared by the United States in June, **1812.** The Indians of the Northwest were now united in a

strong confederacy under the Shawnee chief, Tecumseh,[2] and their ravages upon our frontier settlements for a year past were supposed to have been incited by the British. General Harrison, having been sent to subdue them during the autumn of the preceding year, had been surprised by a night attack near the Tippecanoe; but he received it with such spirit, and his men fought so bravely, that the assailants were routed with great slaughter.



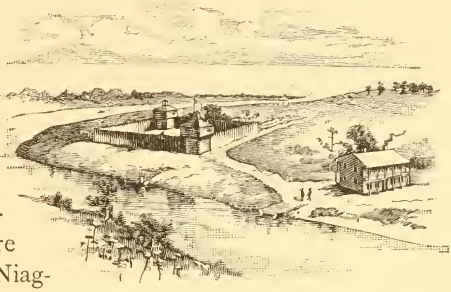
Impressment of Seamen.

369. **The first movement against the British** was attended by the greatest disgrace that has ever befallen American arms. Marching from Dayton, Ohio, General Hull and 2,000 men toiled for a month through dense forests to Lake Erie, and thence to Detroit. An invasion of Canada was the object, and after a brief pause for refreshment Hull crossed the river. But learning that Mackinaw had been taken, and that a force of British and Indians was approaching, he hastily retreated.

370. **Hull's Surrender.**—He was soon followed by General Brock, governor of Canada, and by Tecumseh, with their two forces. The Americans were eager for a fight, but to their amazement and grief Hull raised a white flag over the fort without firing a single cannon. Not only Detroit, but all Michigan Territory was surrendered to the British. Fort Dearborn, on the present site of Chicago, was

Aug. 16, 1812.

taken by Indians about the same time, and its garrison were either murdered or made prisoners. General Hull was tried by court-martial and sentenced to be shot as a coward, but the President spared his life.



Fort Dearborn.

371. The invasion of Canada by General Van Rensselear's command was less humiliating, but scarcely more successful. Crossing Niagara River, his men drove the enemy from their position on Queenstown Heights, and might have held the post if he had been re-enforced; but the commander of the New York militia refused to leave that State, and though Colonel Scott[3] and his men fought bravely, they were forced to surrender themselves as prisoners of war. General Brock fell in the first action.

October 13.

372. Naval Victories.—These losses on land were compensated by brilliant victories on the sea. The American navy had for years been so neglected that it could hardly be said to exist. But what was wanting in material was made up by spirit and energy. Three days after the surrender of Detroit, Captain Isaac Hull, a nephew of the disgraced general, attacked the British frigate *Guerrière*, and in an action of two hours so crippled her that she could not be taken into port. Her crew and stores were removed to Hull's ship, the *Constitution*, better known by her nickname as "Old Ironsides."

Aug., 1812.

373. Soon afterwards the American sloop-of-war *Wasp* captured the British *Frolic*, which was guarding a fleet of merchantmen. So fierce was the forty-five minutes' battle that the crew of the *Frolic* was almost com-

October 13.

pletely disabled. Before the *Wasp* could be put into a condition to make sail, both she and her shattered prize were taken by a seventy-four-gun ship of the enemy. These are only two of many brilliant actions. The President gave letters of marque to a host of privateersmen, which scoured every ocean and captured in seven months three hundred British merchant vessels with 3,000 prisoners. These successes gave the more surprise because it had been supposed that Englishmen could not be conquered on the sea.

374. **The campaign of 1813** was arranged on nearly the same plan as that of the preceding year, but with different officers. General Dearborn, commander-in-chief of all the forces, was with the army of the center on *Niagara River;* General Harrison in the *Northwest*, and General Hampton on *Lake Champlain.* As before, the only successes of any consequence were on water; the actions of the eastern and central divisions of the army were so indecisive that they need not be recorded.

375. In the west **General Harrison** undertook to recover the ground which Hull had lost. A part of his forces captured Frenchtown, on Raisin River, but were defeated a few days later by the British and Indians. The latter treated their prisoners with the usual savage brutalities. General Proctor, who had pledged his word for the safety of the surrendered, so far from checking the Indians, drew off his white troops, leaving his allies maddened by liquor and excited to butchery by the bounty which he had offered for every scalp. A few Kentuckians were dragged as prisoners to Detroit and offered for sale from door to door. Tecumseh himself reproached Proctor as unfit to be a general, and used his own influence for the protection of the captives.

376. General Harrison was twice besieged in Fort Meigs, on the Maumee, by Proctor and Tecumseh. The enemy, twice repulsed, turned to attack Fort Stephenson, on the lower Sandusky, commanded by Major Croghan, with only one hundred

and fifty men; but here they were still more summarily defeated, and retired into Canada.

377. What the World thought of Americans. — During the first busy years when our new Republic was recovering from its war of independence, the taunting remark was often heard that Americans cared only for money-making, and had lost the spirit which had won their freedom. The gallantry with which the national honor was now maintained upon the sea caused both surprise and admiration; and among the heroes who regained for America the world's respect, none was braver than James Lawrence.

378. In command of the *Hornet*, he beat the British brig *Peacock* in a fifteen-minutes' fight off Guiana. Returning home he was transferred to the *Chesapeake*, then being repaired in Boston Harbor. Here he was challenged by the British flag-ship *Shannon* to come out and fight. The *Chesapeake* was only partly manned, and was unready for action, but boldly put to sea. Lawrence was mortally wounded early in the action, but as he was carried below he cried with dying breath, "Don't give up the ship!" That order could not be obeyed, but the spirit of it inspired many a future victory.

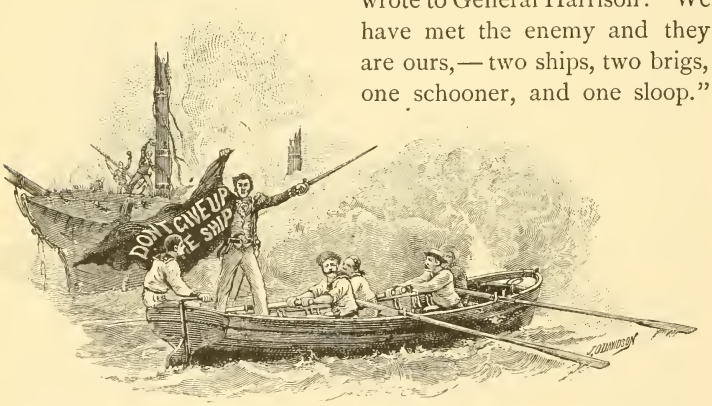
James Lawrence.

379. The United States brig *Argus*, after taking twenty merchantmen, was herself captured by the *Pelican* in August, 1813. Captain David Porter, of the *Essex*, passing around Cape Horn into the Pacific Ocean, made prizes of twelve English ships and several hundreds of sailors, many of whom were glad to take service as Americans. A little fleet was thus formed which protected the American whaling ships in the Pacific. The *Essex* was finally taken when in a friendly harbor, and Captain Porter wrote home, "We are unfortunate, but not disgraced."

380. **The Great Lakes** were still controlled by the British, who held Michigan and threatened Ohio. Captain Oliver H. Perry [5] was sent to drive them from the lakes. He had first to create a fleet from the forests on Lake Erie, while sailors were brought overland in stage-coaches. Scarcely were his nine ships ready for action when the British fleet bore down upon him near Put-in Bay. Perry's flag-ship, the *Lawrence*, bore at her mast-head a pennon inscribed, "Don't give up the ship!"

381. **Battle of Lake Erie.** — The battle was severe, and the *Lawrence*, having fought two of the British squadron at once, was riddled and shattered. Perry, seizing his flag, sprang into a boat and was rowed to the *Niagara*, whence he ordered a fresh onset upon the enemy's line. He won a complete victory, and went back to the sinking *Lawrence* to receive the surrender upon her deck. Then he wrote to General Harrison: "We have met the enemy and they are ours, — two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop."

Sept. 10, 1813.



Battle of Lake Erie.

382. It was the first time that a whole British squadron had surrendered, and the news was received with pride and joy throughout the country. This victory really ended the war, for it led to the breaking up of the Indian confederacy and the recovery of all the land lost by Hull's surrender.

383. Harrison crossed into Canada and hotly pursued the British, whom he overtook near the river Thames. The Kentuckians rushed into the battle crying, "Remember the Raisin!" Proctor fled. His men laid down their arms, and were spared. Tecumseh spurred on his warriors with his war-whoop, resounding above the roar of musketry; but suddenly it ceased. Then the savages knew that their leader was dead, and they sought refuge in the Canadian forests. In 1812 the Territory of Orleans (§ 358) was organized into the State of *Louisiana*, and was admitted into the American Union.

Questions.—What foreign meddling had the fourth President to deal with? Describe the chief land campaigns of the War of 1812. What was done upon the sea? What, on Lake Erie?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map VI., General Hull's route in 1812. The points in General Harrison's campaign in 1813. The scene of Perry's victory at Put-in Bay.

Point for Essay.—Write the story of a Kentucky prisoner sold for service in Detroit.

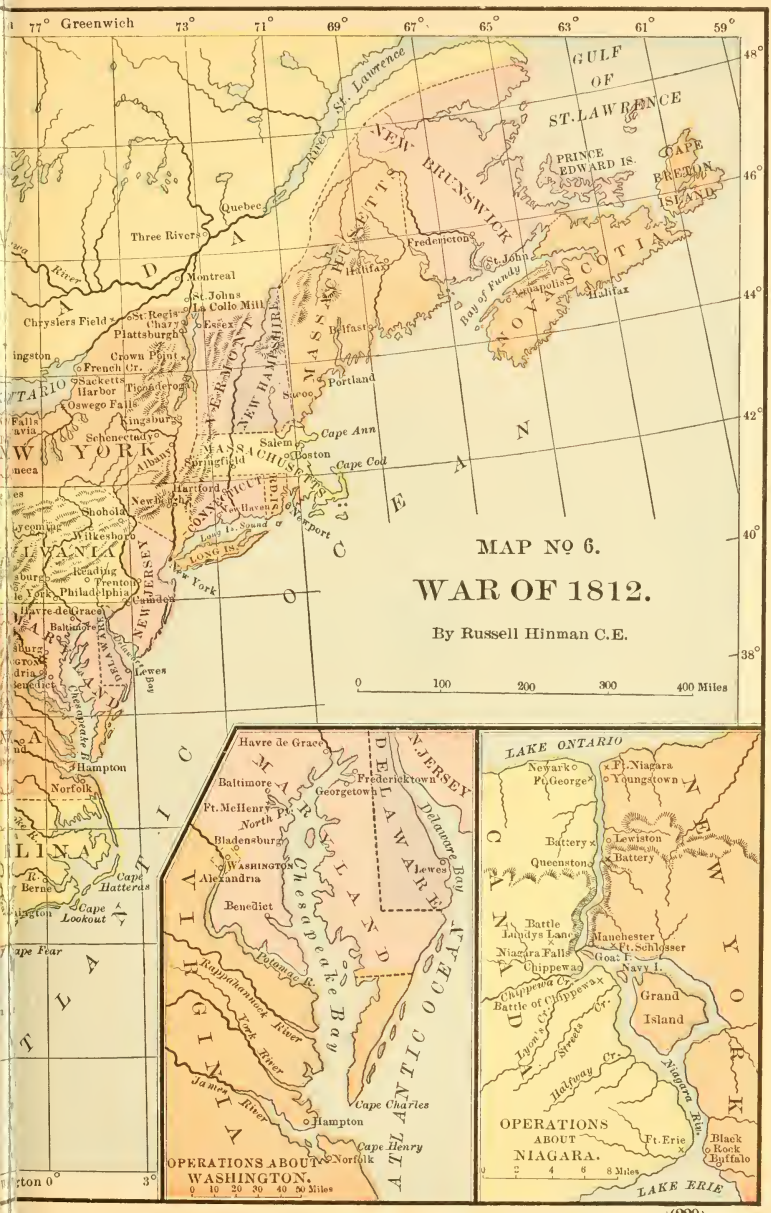
NOTES.

1. JAMES MADISON (1751–1836), was born at King George, Va., of English descent. After graduating at Princeton, when twenty years of age, he pursued an extensive course of study, embracing law, theology, philosophy, and general literature. At the time of the Constituent Convention he was an ardent Federalist, but later changed his views, and was before long recognized as the leader of the Democratic party. When Jefferson was elected President, Madison became Secretary of State, and held the office eight years. Madison's contributions to the *Federalist*, and his state papers generally, are considered among the most able productions of American statesmen. His writings were purchased and have been published by the general government.

2. TECUMSEH was born near the present town of Springfield, Ohio, about 1768. He and his brother, who assumed to be a prophet, endeavored, in 1805, to unite all the western tribes into one nation against the whites. They had partially succeeded, when the defeat of the Prophet at Tippecanoe, in 1811, prevented further steps in that direction.

3. This was Winfield Scott, who afterwards became a celebrated general. See note 4, page 272.

Eclectic U.S. History Map No. 6. Chaps XXIV–XXV


77° Greenwich
73°
71°
69°
67°
65°
63°
61°
59°
48°
46°
44°
42°
40°
38°
GULF OF ST. LAWRENCE
St. Lawrence River
NEW BRUNSWICK
PRINCE EDWARD IS.
CAPE BRETON ISLAND
NOVA SCOTIA
Fredericton
St. John
Halifax
Bay of Fundy
Annapolis
Halifax
Quebec
Three Rivers
Montreal
St. Johns
La Colle Mill
Chrysler's Field
St. Regis
Chazy
Plattsburgh
Essex
Belfast
Crown Point
French Cr.
Sackett's Harbor
Ticonderoga
Oswego Falls
Portland
Saco
Kingsbury
Schenectady
Albany
Cape Ann
Salem
Boston
Springfield
Cape Cod
Hartford
New Haven
Newport
Shoholo
Wilkesboro
Reading
Trenton
Philadelphia
Camden
Havre de Grace
Baltimore
Lewes
York
Hampton
Norfolk
Cape Hatteras
Cape Lookout
Cape Fear
Bermuda
MAP Nº 6.
WAR OF 1812.
By Russell Hinman C.E.
0 100 200 300 400 Miles
Havre de Grace
Baltimore
Pt. McHenry
Bladensburg
WASHINGTON
Alexandria
Benedict
Georgetown
Fredericktown
Delaware Bay
N. JERSEY
DELAWARE
MARYLAND
Chesapeake Bay
Potomac R.
Rappahannock R.
York River
James River
Cape Charles
Hampton
Norfolk
Cape Henry
ATLANTIC OCEAN
OPERATIONS ABOUT WASHINGTON.
0 10 20 30 40 50 Miles
LAKE ONTARIO
Newark
Pt. George
Ft. Niagara
Youngstown
Battery
Queenston
Lewiston
Battery
Battle Lundys Lane
Niagara Falls
Chippewa
Manchester
Ft. Schlosser
Goat I.
Navy I.
Chippewa Cr.
Battle of Chippewa
Grand Island
Tyler's Cr.
Streets Cr.
Halfway Cr.
Niagara Riv.
OPERATIONS ABOUT NIAGARA.
Ft. Erie
Black Rock
Buffalo
0 2 4 6 8 Miles
LAKE ERIE
CANADA
NEW YORK

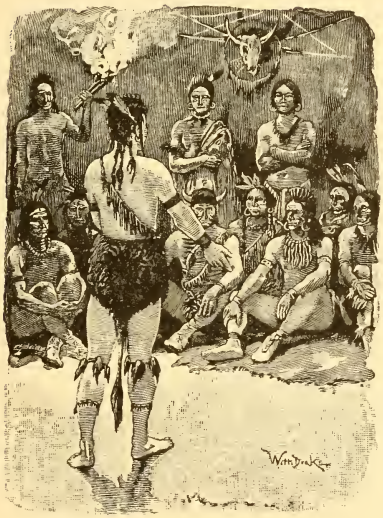
4. James Lawrence (1781–1813), was born in Burlington, N. J., and entered the navy as a midshipman when seventeen years old. In the war with Tripoli he served with distinction, and took part in the destruction of the *Philadelphia* (¿ 359). Congress rewarded him with a gold medal for his capture of the *Peacock*.

5. Oliver Hazard Perry (1785–1819), was born in Newport, R. I., and in 1799 first saw active service in the navy as a midshipman on the frigate *General Greene*, under the command of his father. Of the battle of Lake Erie, Lossing says: "The *Niagara* had lagged behind—the swift, staunch, well-manned *Niagara*. She did not come to the relief of the helpless and severely wounded *Lawrence*, but Perry went to her,—an exploit, at that hour of peril, one of the most gallant on record. So certain did he feel of ultimate triumph, and of having occasion to receive guests, that he exchanged his sailor's suit for the uniform of his rank. Leaving the gallant and thrice wounded Yarnall in charge of the *Lawrence*, the colors of which were yet flying, he entered a boat with his little brother and four stout seamen, and, standing erect with the pennant and battle flag half folded around him, he pushed off for the *Niagara* half a mile distant. The hero, now so conspicuous, was made a general mark for the missiles of his antagonists. Barclay (the British commander) knew that if the man who had fought the *Lawrence* so bravely reached the *Niagara*, the British squadron would be in great danger of defeat. For fifteen minutes, during Perry's fearful voyage in the open boat, the great and little guns of the British, by Barclay's order, were brought to bear upon him, but he received no harm. Oars were splintered, bullets traversed the boat, and his oarsmen were covered with spray caused by the fall of round shot near the boat, but not a person was hurt. Perry sprang on board the *Niagara*, took the command, bore down upon the British, and broke their line. For a while the whole American squadron was engaged in the combat. Eight minutes after Perry dashed through the British line, the colors of the *Detroit* were lowered, and her example was followed at once by all the other British vessels. The battle had lasted three hours. When the smoke cleared away, it was discovered that the vessels of the two squadrons were intermingled. . . . The next movement in the solemn drama was the reception of the British officers—the expected guests of Perry—who delivered to him their swords. Barclay had been severely wounded. All the captains were treated with great courtesy and kindness."

CHAPTER XXV.

SEVENTH TERM, A. D. 1813–1817.

JAMES MADISON, *President.* ELBRIDGE GERRY, *Vice-President.*



Tecumseh Inciting the Creeks.

384. **The southern Indians,** incited during the previous year by Tecumseh (§ 368), acting for the British, this summer surprised Fort Mimms, in Alabama, and murdered men, women, and children to the number of nearly four hundred. The volunteer troops of Georgia, Mississippi, and Tennessee mustered to avenge the massacre, and among them General Jackson gained confidence by his quick, decisive movements. Several victories were won in the autumn of 1813, and in spite of hardships,—the men having sometimes no food but acorns,—Jackson held the country all winter. In March the last battle was fought at Horse-shoe Bend of the Tallapoosa River, where a thousand Creek warriors, with many women and children of their tribe, were slain without pity. The Holy Ground of the

A. D. 1813.

A. D. 1814.

Creeks, which they had thought could never be taken, passed into the possession of their conquerors.

385. Burning of Washington. — During these two years the British visited the coasts of Maryland, Virginia, and the Carolinas, more in the character of pirates and plunderers than of honorable warriors,— burning villages and farm buildings, robbing churches, and even murdering the sick in their beds. Meeting little opposition, General Ross, in 1814, marched to Washington and destroyed most of the buildings and records belonging to the government, together with much private property.[1]

386. Bombardment of Baltimore.—Both fleet and army then advanced upon Baltimore. The city was well defended by the Maryland militia, while Fort McHenry withstood a storm of balls and bombs, which lasted from sunrise until after midnight, without the slightest apparent injury. It was during this bombardment that Francis S. Key, an American prisoner on the British fleet, wrote the patriotic song of the "Star Spangled Banner." Failing of their purpose, the enemy withdrew. It is only fair to say that Admiral Cockburn, the chief marauder, was denounced by some of the best people in his own country as a disgrace to the British navy.

Sept., 1814.

387. The New England States suffered even more than the Southern, for their commerce and fisheries were broken up by a strict blockade. The light-houses were kept in darkness, as they served only as guides to the enemy. Peace being made for a while in Europe, several British brigades were sent to serve in America, and our operations in 1814 were mainly defensive. *Oswego* was attacked in May by a force from Canada, and Colonel Mitchell, unable to defend it, withdrew his garrison. The enemy burned the barracks, dismantled the works, and retired. The spirit of the Americans rose with difficulties. On the third of July they captured Fort Erie, opposite Buffalo, and two days later defeated General Riall at Chippewa, after a hard-fought battle.

Battle of Lundy's Lane.

388. Lundy's Lane.— Three weeks later Generals Brown and Scott gained a brilliant victory at Lundy's Lane, near Niagara Falls, where General Riall was made a prisoner. Seeing that a hill crowned with cannon was the key to the British position, General Brown said to Colonel James Miller,[2] "Colonel, take your regiment, storm that work, and take it." "I'll try, sir," was the reply, and, marching steadily up the hill, he took it. July 25.

389. The British made repeated attempts to regain Fort Erie. Early in August they began a regular siege which lasted more than six weeks; but on the 17th of September a spirited sally was made by the garrison, resulting, after a severe contest, in the capture of all the British works. Quitting the siege in disgust, General Drummond marched away, and the attempt was not renewed. In November the fort was destroyed, and the Americans went into winter quarters at Buffalo and Black Rock.

390. War Unpopular in New England. — From the beginning the war had been unpopular in New England, where the Federalists were most numerous. The English thought it possible to separate the eastern from the southern States, and even to win them back to their old obedience. To this end they planned, in the campaign of 1814, to repeat the movement of Burgoyne (§ 262). An army of 14,000 men and a fleet of gun-boats entered the State of New York by way of Lake Champlain.

391. Battle of Plattsburgh.—They were met near Plattsburgh by Commodore McDonough[3] on the lake and by General Macomb[4] on land. The naval battle lasted only two hours, but the American victory was complete. The British commodore was killed; his larger vessels were captured. The combat on land was equally severe to the invaders, and it ended in success for the Americans. The British forces marched back into Canada.

Sept., 1814.

392. The Hartford Convention.—In New England the opposition to the war had now reached its height. In December some of the leading Federalists held a convention at Hartford. Its doings were secret, and were supposed to be disloyal. In the joy of the success at Plattsburgh, most people had become better affected toward the war, and so the Federalist party lost much ground in consequence of the Hartford Convention.

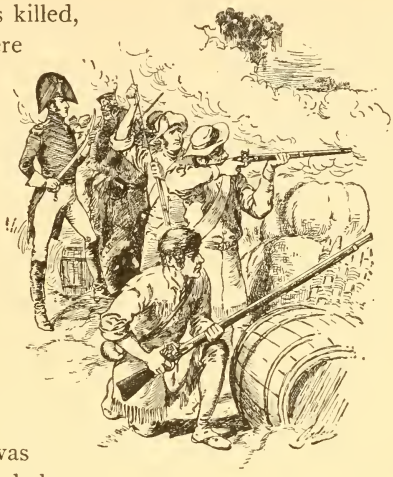
393. Treaty of Ghent.—Before its sessions were ended, peace had been signed at Ghent between the United States and Great Britain. But as ocean steamers and telegraphs were not yet in existence, a needless battle was fought below New Orleans before the news arrived in America.

Dec. 24, 1814.

394. General Andrew Jackson, learning that the British were about to attack the city, marched thither with the same forces that had subdued the Creeks (§ 384). Nine miles below New Orleans he formed a breastwork, chiefly of cotton-bales and sand-bags. Here he was attacked, January 8, by General Pakenham and his veteran army of 12,000 men, most of whom had been trained in the wars with Napoleon. To oppose them Jackson had less than half that number of undisciplined troops, but among these were the hunters from Kentucky and Tennessee.

395. Battle of New Orleans.—The British advanced in splendid order under the fire of the American cannon, but as soon as they came within rifle-range they wavered, and their brilliant columns were strewn upon the plain. They were rallied, but only to break again, and to fall under the deadly aim of the

marksmen. Pakenham was killed, and his two next officers were severely wounded. The British captured one battery, but they could not follow up their success, and the American victory was one of the most complete of the war. After a loss of more than 2,000 men the invaders withdrew to Lake Borgne, and soon afterwards sailed for Jamaica.



Battle of New Orleans.

396. The news of peace was hailed with joy by the whole nation. Bells rang merrily; bonfires blazed; messengers on fleet horses spurred to inland villages, shouting the glad tidings as they rode. The "Second War of American Independence" had commanded the respect of other nations, and, though the "right of search" was not mentioned in the Treaty of Ghent, it was never again asserted by Great Britain.

Stephen Decatur.

397. The Barbary States had taken advantage of the war to renew their attacks upon vessels of the United States. Commodore Decatur[5] was sent with a squadron to mend their behavior. Having captured two of the largest Algerine frigates, he sailed successively into the harbors of Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli. Here he obtained the release of all American prisoners, and payment for some, at least, of the losses caused by the pirates, and put an end forever to claims of tribute from the United States.

398. Great distress followed the war. While cut off from all trade with Europe, Americans had employed their money in manufactures, which for a few years were very prosperous. As soon as the war was over, and the better but cheaper fabrics of France and England began to flood our markets, home manufactures were ruined. To protect our rising industries, and at the same time to meet the interest on a war debt of a hundred millions, duties were imposed on foreign goods entering our ports. This "American System," as it was called, of protection for home industries, found favor with the Federalist party and the manufacturing States, while the agricultural States and the Democratic party have usually favored free trade.

399. In 1816 *Indiana*[6] became the nineteenth State in the Union. *Michigan*[7] had been organized as a separate *Territory* in 1805, and *Illinois*, including Wisconsin, in 1809.

Questions.—What part had the Creeks in the War of 1812? What was done on the Atlantic coast? How was New England affected? What was done on and near Lake Erie? What, on Lake Champlain? What battle was fought after peace had been concluded, and why? What were the results of the war?

Map Exercise.—Point out the places of battles mentioned in this chapter.

Read *Jefferson's Works*, Vol. I. Benton's *Thirty Years in the United States Senate*, Vol. I. Hildreth's *History of the United States*. Cooper's *History of the American Navy*. Lossing's *Field Book of the War of* 1812. Life of Madison in *National Gallery of Distinguished Americans*, Vol. II.

NOTES.

1. The British force numbered 4,000. The news of their approach caused a panic, and the raw, untrained militia, hurriedly gathered to oppose them, fled at the first fire. "Such," says Hildreth, "was the famous battle of Bladensburg, in which very few Americans had the honor to be either killed or wounded."

2. JAMES MILLER was born at Peterborough, New Hampshire, in 1776, and was educated for the profession of law: but entered the United States army in 1808 as major. His exploit at Lundy's Lane won for him the rank of brevet brigadier-general, and a gold medal from Congress bearing the motto, "I 'll try." Miller resigned his commission in 1819 to accept the governorship of Arkansas;

he held this position six years, and was then made collector of the port at Salem, Mass. He died at Temple, N. H., in 1851.

3. Commodore Thomas McDonough (1783–1825), was born in New Castle County, Delaware, and entered the navy when sixteen years of age. He was one of the officers of the *Philadelphia*, and afterwards assisted, under Decatur, in recapturing and burning his old vessel (§ 359). His victory on Lake Champlain was rewarded by Congress with a gold medal. The State of Vermont presented him with a tract of land overlooking the scene of his victory.

4. General Alexander Macomb (1782–1841), a native of Detroit, was an officer of the United States army from his seventeenth year until his death. The battle of Plattsburgh was his greatest achievement, and won him a vote of thanks and a gold medal from Congress, as well as his brevet of major-general.

5. Commodore Stephen Decatur was the son of a naval officer of the Revolution, and was born at Sinnepuxent, Maryland, in 1779. When twenty years old he entered the navy, and a few years later recaptured and burned the *Philadelphia* (§ 359). His greatest victory in the War of 1812 was the capture of the *Macedonian*, an English frigate.

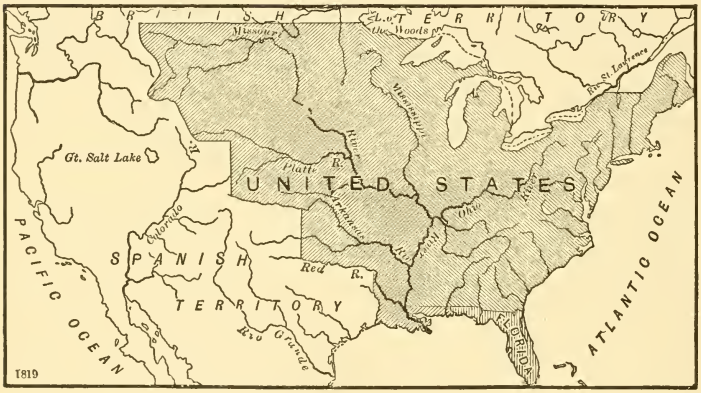
6. The first white visitors to Indiana were French missionaries (§§ 160, 161) who came by way of lakes Erie, Huron, and Michigan. They were soon followed by traders who established posts at Ft. Wayne, Quatanon, and Vincennes. Here, in their rough log warehouses, they exchanged blankets, knives, hatchets, and shot-guns for the rich furs of the northwest, while the land remained in undisputed possession of the savages, most of whom belonged to the powerful Miami Confederacy. The French claims to all this territory were ceded to England in 1763 (§ 194), but it was not until the victories of General Wayne (§ 326) and his treaty of 1795 had removed the Indians west of the Wabash, that the land was thrown open to English-speaking settlers. After Ohio was organized under a separate government in 1803, the name of Indiana was given for some years to the remaining portion of the great Northwestern Territory, the capital being at Vincennes. Harrison's victory over the Prophet and his savage confederates at Tippecanoe (§ 368) was gained November 7, 1811, a few miles north of Lafayette, Indiana.

7. Michigan was visited in 1610 or 1612 by French explorers, and its straits and islands later became the sites of several important forts and trading-posts (§ 161). The first permanent settlement of Detroit was in 1701, when one hundred French immigrants, led by Cadillac, built a few log houses inclosed by a stockade. The little town had its full share of suffering in the long wars between the English and the French and Indians. Detroit was held by the British twelve years after the Revolutionary War had ended (§§ 326, 331). In 1812 it was again seized by them, but was regained, together with all Michigan, by Perry's victory at Lake Erie (§§ 381, 382). After peace was restored, eastern immigrants were soon drawn to the fertile lands of Michigan; and in 1837, after two years' delay in the settlement of her southern boundary, she became the twenty-fifth in the Union of American States.

CHAPTER XXVI.

EIGHTH AND NINTH TERMS, A. D. 1817–1825.

JAMES MONROE, *President.* DANIEL D. TOMPKINS, *Vice-President.*



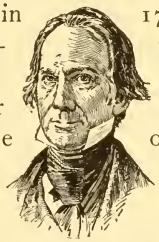
The United States in 1819.

James Monroe.

400. **The Fifth President.**—*James Monroe*,[1] of Virginia, the fifth President of the United States, had a happy and popular administration. The country speedily recovered from the evil effects of the war; the fame of its rich, unoccupied lands drew a tide of immigrants from Europe, whose labor helped to develop the natural wealth of the country, and, by making roads, bridges, and canals, to supply outlets for its productions.

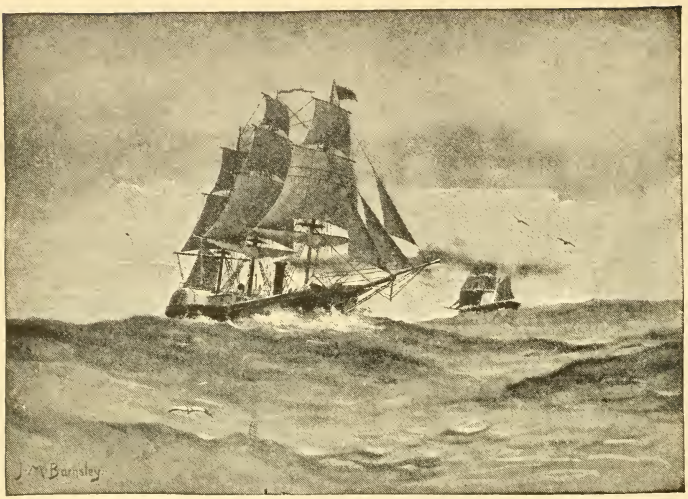
401. Slavery.—In colonial times negroes had been held as slaves in the North as well as in the South; but while corn and most of the northern products could be more profitably raised by free laborers, cotton, rice, sugar, and tobacco, the four chief staples of the South, were supposed to require the labor of slaves (§ 140). Notwithstanding this, there had been opposition by the South itself to the introduction and extension of slavery from the earliest colonial times (§§ 153, 157). The Federal Constitution did not mention slaves, but left to each State existing at the time of its adoption, the duty of making or modifying laws concerning them. The territories being under the direct government of Congress, this question had to be decided for them and for all States to be formed from them.

402. The Missouri Compromise.—Thomas Jefferson, a slave owner, made the first proposition in Congress to restrict slavery, in 1784. It then failed to pass, but when the Northwest Territory was organized, in 1787, slavery was there prohibited by a unanimous vote of Congress, and the act was approved by Washington. One northern State after another freed its slaves, and the boundary line of slavery separating the North and the South became more strictly defined. In 1817 the State of *Mississippi* was admitted to the Union; *Illinois* followed in 1818, *Alabama* in 1819, and *Maine* in 1820. Upon the application of *Missouri* for leave to form a State constitution, the important question arose in Congress whether any more slave-States should be admitted. After long discussion it was supposed to be settled by the *Missouri Compromise*, which admitted that State with its slaves, but prohibited the extension of slavery into any territory of the United States north of 36° 30′ north latitude. *Henry Clay*,[2] of Kentucky, was the chief advocate of the compromise, and he used all his eloquence in calming the angry passions which the discussion had excited.



Henry Clay.

Aug. 10, 1821.



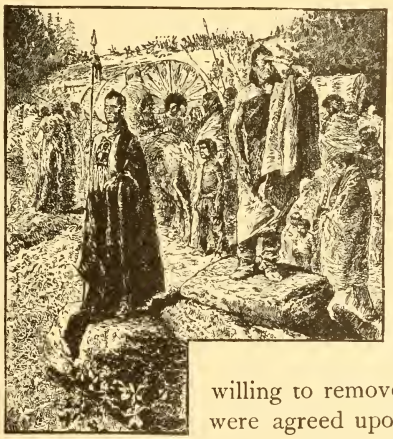
The First Ocean Steamer.

403. Events of 1819.—*The first ocean steamer* crossed the Atlantic, from Savannah to Liverpool, in 1819. The same year a treaty was made by which *Spain ceded Florida*, of which she had again obtained possession (§ 194), to the United States, the latter undertaking to pay five millions of dollars due from the former power to American citizens. Florida became a territory under the control of Congress, and the President appointed General Jackson to be its governor.

404. The Monroe Doctrine.—A ten-years' revolution had now resulted in the separation of most of the Spanish colonies from their mother-country (§ 300). In recognizing Mexico and five South American republics as independent states, President Monroe announced the principle of his foreign policy: "The American continents, by the free and independent condition which they have assumed and maintain, are henceforth not to be considered as subjects for future colonization by any European powers." "Friendship with all, entangling alliances with

none," has been the spirit of international relations founded upon the "Monroe Doctrine." At the close of his first term **Mr. Monroe was re-elected** by the votes of every State.

405. Visit of La Fayette.—In 1824 La Fayette, then an old man, revisited the country which in his youth he had aided to make free. Everywhere he was welcomed by tokens of the gratitude and love of the people. He stood with reverent affection at the tomb of Washington; he laid the corner-stone of Bunker Hill Monument on the spot where Warren had fallen fifty years before; and when he returned home it was in a national ship, named *The Brandywine*, in honor of his first battle in the cause of American freedom. (§§ 261, 263, notes.)



Moving the Southern Indians.

406. Removal of Indians.—In 1825 Mr. Monroe recommended to Congress the removal of all Indian tribes to the country west of the Mississippi, far beyond the limits of the States and Territories then existing. The Creeks and Cherokees of Georgia had so improved their lands that they were unwilling to remove. At last, however, terms were agreed upon,—a large sum of money to be paid by the United States, with a guarantee of undisturbed possession of lands in the *Indian Territory*,—and under the two following Presidents the removal was effected.

407. The Cherokees, owning immense numbers of cattle, horses, hogs, and sheep, were the most civilized of all the tribes. Mills, salt works, churches, schools, and well-ordered farms soon rewarded their industry in their western homes.

Native merchants sold the cotton and other products of their lands in southern markets, and carried home such goods as their Indian customers required. Spinning, weaving, and other mechanical arts found place among them, though planting and cattle-raising were their chief employments. Many of their men were highly educated, and their government was carried on under written laws with a dignity and propriety not always to be found among people longer civilized.

408. **The Creeks** were less united, each chief having his own village and retainers; but they, too, were peaceful cultivators of the soil, and exported great quantities of grain. They were less inclined to manufactures than the Cherokees.

Questions.—What was the condition of the country under Monroe's administration? What had Congress to do with slavery? Name the chief events of 1819. Describe Monroe's foreign and Indian policy. Who visited the United States in 1824, and how was he entertained?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map IX., the five States admitted to the Union, A. D. 1817–1821. (§ 402.)

Point for Essay.—The letter of a schoolboy or schoolgirl in Boston, describing the visit of La Fayette.

Read Monroe's *Tour of Observation through the Northeastern and Northwestern States in* 1817. Life of Monroe in *National Portrait Gallery of Distinguished Americans*, Vol. II.

NOTES.

1. James Monroe (1758–1831), was a Virginian by birth, and was educated at William and Mary College. During the Revolution he fought as a subordinate officer at Trenton, Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth, and after the war took a prominent part in politics, both in the Virginia Assembly and in Congress. He appreciated the weakness and inefficiency of the general government under the first articles of confederation, and the Constituent Convention (§ 314) was the result of his motion in Congress to give that body the power to regulate all trade among the States. However, in the Virginia Convention he strongly opposed the adoption of the Constitution, thinking it conferred too much power on the general government. His conduct as minister plenipotentiary to France, in 1794, greatly offended the administration, whose policy he

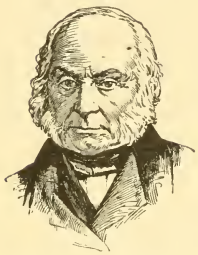
opposed, and he was recalled. From 1799 to 1802 he was governor of Virginia, and was then sent by Jefferson to arrange for the purchase of Louisiana. In 1811 he was again elected governor of Virginia, and during the same year was appointed Secretary of State by Madison. He also acted as Secretary of War, and, finding the treasury empty, he pledged his own means in order to secure the defense of New Orleans. Under Monroe's administration party lines disappeared, and the period came to be known as "the era of good feeling."

2. HENRY CLAY (1777–1852), was born near Richmond, Va. His father, a Baptist preacher, died when Henry was five years old. He became a copyist in a law office while very young. Licensed as a lawyer in 1797, he removed to Lexington, Ky., and soon gained a flourishing practice through his remarkable power of influencing juries. He took a prominent part in the discussion over the constitution drawn up for the State of Kentucky, and in 1803 was chosen a member of the State legislature. In 1806, although hardly of legal age, Clay was chosen to fill a vacancy in the United States Senate. Here he made an impression by warmly advocating the policy of internal improvement. He was sent to the House of Representatives in 1811, and at his first appearance was made speaker, an honor unprecedented since the meeting of the first Congress. He was a strong advocate for the war against Great Britain, and, in fact, may be said to have forced Madison into his declaration; at its close he was sent to negotiate the peace of Ghent (§ 393). Clay's weighty speeches also brought about the recognition of the South American states (§ 404). In 1824 five candidates were nominated for the Presidency, Clay being one of them. As no one received the requisite number of votes, Congress had to choose among the three highest candidates, Andrew Jackson, John Quincy Adams, and William H. Crawford. Clay and his friends voted for Adams, who was elected, and when the latter appointed Clay his Secretary of State the cry of "Bargain!" was immediately raised. This charge occasioned a duel between Clay and John Randolph, in which neither was hurt. Clay had retired from public life in 1842, but in 1848 he was again sent to the Senate, where he struggled hard to avert the great battle on the slavery question.

CHAPTER XXVII.

TENTH TERM, A. D. 1825–1829.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, *President.* JOHN C. CALHOUN, *Vice-President*

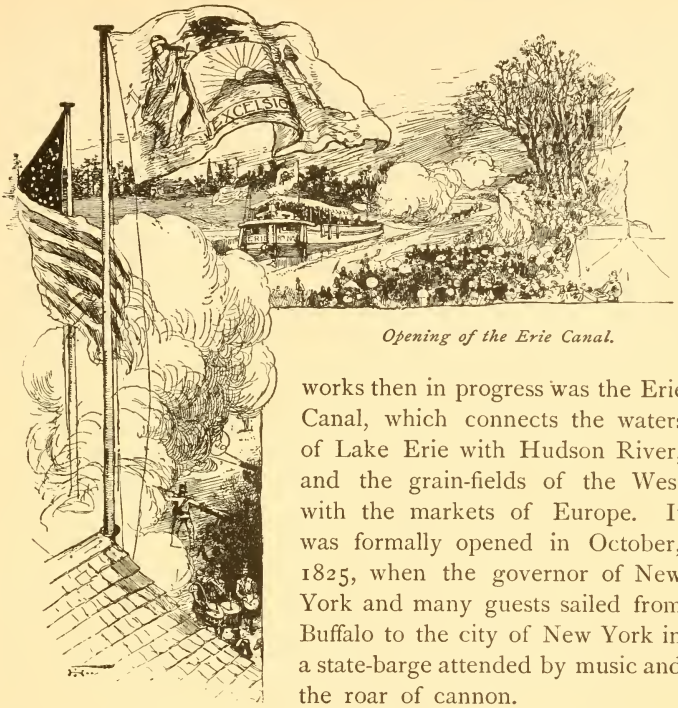


John Quincy Adams

409. The Sixth President. — Among four candidates for the presidency in the autumn of 1824, the electors failed to make a choice; the decision, therefore, devolved again upon the House of Representatives (§ 349), and *John Quincy Adams*,[1] of Massachusetts, son of the second President (§ 340), received the highest office in the gift of the people. *John C. Calhoun*,[2] of South Carolina, was Vice-President, and Henry Clay became Secretary of State.

410. Character of the Younger Adams.—Trained from his childhood in the service of his country, the new President was a statesman of great ability and of upright character. He had filled several important foreign missions, and had been at different times senator and Secretary of State. Yet his administration, though peaceful and prosperous, was not altogether popular. Parties now became distinct; the President's friends called themselves National Republicans, while their opponents were known as Democrats.

411. Public Improvements.—One party desired that the whole nation should pay for the great public works which were needed to develop the resources of the country; the other insisted that each State must take care of itself. The greatest of these

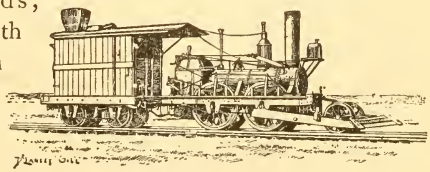


Opening of the Erie Canal.

works then in progress was the Erie Canal, which connects the waters of Lake Erie with Hudson River, and the grain-fields of the West with the markets of Europe. It was formally opened in October, 1825, when the governor of New York and many guests sailed from Buffalo to the city of New York in a state-barge attended by music and the roar of cannon.

412. Within a few years the *first steam locomotive* in the United States was put in service on the "Delaware and Hudson Canal Railroad." Steam was soon introduced on the "Baltimore and Ohio" and the "Albany and Schenectady" railroads, and on that of South Carolina from Charleston to Hamburg. Gradually the iron net-work overspread the whole country, and the re-

Aug., 1829.



The First Locomotive.

motest corners of the land were brought into swift communication with the great cities of the coast.

413. **The semi-centennial of American Independence** was celebrated with joy and gratitude, July 4, 1826. On that day the President's venerable father and Thomas Jefferson died at their widely separated homes, in Massachusetts and Virginia. Fifty years before, each had set his name to the Declaration which gave their country her rightful place among the nations; each had served her in missions abroad and in the highest office at home.

414. The President absolutely refused to employ the influence of the government to secure his re-election; he was opposed by many of his own officers, and *General Andrew Jackson* received the greatest number of votes. Soon after leaving the presidency, Mr. Adams was sent back to Washington as representative from Massachusetts. He served his native State in that office until 1848, when he died at his post in the Capitol. He had been in high public service fifty-three years.

Questions.—What were the character and history of the sixth President? How did parties differ as to public works? What great improvements were made? What occurred July 4, 1826?

Map Exercise.—Point out the site of the Erie Canal. Of the first three railroads in the United States.

Hint for Essay.—Describe the condition and the hopes of the American people July 4, 1776, and July 4, 1826, showing fifty years of progress.

Read *Life and Letters of John Quincy Adams.*

NOTES.

1. JOHN QUINCY ADAMS was born at Braintree, Mass., July, 1767. As a boy he possessed great vigor of mind and body. At the age of eleven he went with his father to France, and was placed at school in Paris. In 1780 he entered the University of Leyden. For fourteen months he was private secretary to the American Minister to Russia, and after this service he made the tour of Sweden, Norway, the Netherlands, France, and England. Returning to America, young

Adams entered the junior class at Harvard College, and graduated in 1788. Three years later he was admitted to the Boston bar. A series of political letters which he contributed to the newspapers about this time drew attention to Adams as a man of more than ordinary power. President Washington appointed him Minister to The Hague, and later to Portugal. In 1797 he was transferred by his father—then President—to Berlin. In 1803 he was chosen United States Senator by the Federalists. In 1809 he was appointed Minister to Russia. He negotiated commercial treaties with Prussia, Sweden, and Great Britain, and was the most conspicuous of the American commissioners in the important treaty of Ghent, 1814. He was President Monroe's Secretary of State during the eight years of his administration, which position he filled with signal ability. The friends of the defeated candidates united against President Adams, making his office very uncomfortable, and securing his defeat for a second term. (See note 2, page 243.) He entered Congress in 1831, and ably represented his district until stricken with death on the floor of the House of Representatives, February 21, 1848.

2. JOHN CALDWELL CALHOUN (1782–1850). This great statesman, and champion of southern rights and opinions, was born in Abbeville District, South Carolina. His ancestors on both sides were Irish Presbyterians. He graduated at Yale College in 1804, and studied law at Litchfield, Conn. In 1808 he was elected to the legislature of South Carolina; and, three years later, he was chosen to the national House of Representatives. In 1817 he was appointed Secretary of War, and held the office seven years. From 1825 to 1832 he was Vice-President of the United States. He then resigned this office, and took his seat as senator from South Carolina. In 1844 President Tyler called him to his cabinet as Secretary of State; and, in 1845, he returned to the Senate, where he remained till his death. During all his public life Mr. Calhoun was active and outspoken. He took the most advanced ground in favor of "State Rights," and defended slavery as neither morally nor politically wrong. His foes generally conceded his honesty, and respected his ability; while his friends regarded him as little less than an oracle.

CHAPTER XXVIII.

ELEVENTH AND TWELFTH TERMS, A. D. 1829–1837.

ANDREW JACKSON. *President.* JOHN C. CALHOUN, MARTIN VAN BUREN, } *Vice-Presidents.*

Andrew Jackson.

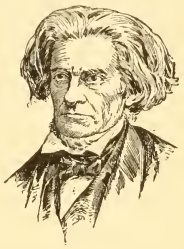
415. The Seventh President. — President Jackson[1] differed from his predecessor in his lack of education and early advantages; but he was a successful and popular general, and no one doubted his courage, honesty, or energy of will. He began by making sweeping changes in the public offices, dismissing ten times more men in one year than all former Presidents had removed since the adoption of the Constitution. He filled these places with his political friends. This practice has been largely followed by all subsequent Presidents, but is opposed by the advocates of Civil Service Reform, who hold that offices exist for the convenience of the people, and not as prizes for politicians.

Daniel Webster.

416. Violent debates arose in Congress on questions concerning the public lands and the raising of a revenue for the government. The opposing opinions of the North and the South now became more plainly marked. Daniel Webster,[2] of Massachusetts, and Robert Hayne,[3] of South Carolina, argued with great eloquence, the one for "Liberty

and Union, now and forever," the other for "State Rights," or the right of any State to nullify acts of Congress or to secede from the Union.

417. In 1832 **additional duties** were placed by Congress upon foreign goods. A convention in South Carolina declared the act to be null, and prepared to resist at Charleston the collection of the duties. The legislature of that State even threatened to secede and place Mr. Calhoun, then Vice-President of the United States, at the head of a "Southern Confederacy" in case the government should attempt to enforce its laws. But the prompt appearance of war vessels and an army under General Scott proved the sincerity and the power of the government. Mr. Clay exerted his peace-making influence in another compromise bill, providing for a gradual reduction of duties, and the excitement died away.

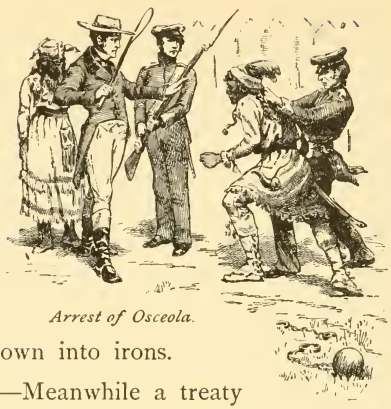


John C. Calhoun.

418. Several Indian disturbances occurred during this administration. The *Sacs* and *Foxes* of Illinois had sold their lands to the United States; but they refused to remove, and, in concert with the *Winnebagoes* of Wisconsin, attacked the miners who were now flocking to the rich lead region about Galena, Illinois. The Indians were defeated in several battles by government troops, and in 1832 their noted chief, Black Hawk, with others, was taken as a captive to Washington. Having seen the power and wealth of the United States as displayed in the eastern cities, the chiefs returned and advised their people to lay down their arms. The Winnebagoes, as well as the Sacs and Foxes, now exchanged their lands for tracts west of the Mississippi, with yearly supplies of money and food.

419. The Seminole war was longer and more obstinate. The Everglades of Florida gave refuge to many runaway slaves, who, marrying Seminole Indians, were adopted by that tribe,

and increased its power. A daughter of one of these marriages was the wife of *Osceola*, a powerful chief. In visiting with her husband a United States fort, she was seized and carried away as the slave of a family from whom her mother had escaped. Her husband, expressing his rage, was thrown into irons.



Arrest of Osceola.

420. Osceola's Vengeance.—Meanwhile a treaty had been made with certain chiefs for the removal of the Seminoles to lands west of the Mississippi. Osceola pretended to consent, and was set free; but it was only to plot a terrible vengeance against the whites. General Thompson, who had so grossly ill-used him, was surprised and killed; a hundred men under Major Dade were massacred the same day in Wahoo Swamp. The war was relentless on both sides. Osceola was taken at length by treachery, and died of fever in Fort Moultrie. His people kept up their resistance for seven years in impenetrable marshes, whose air, poisonous to white men, destroyed thousands of their assailants. Generals Scott and Taylor at length finished the work which Jackson had begun, and the war ended in 1842, after a cost of thirty millions of dollars and very many lives.

421. No previous President made such use of his *veto power* as did Jackson. (See Art. I., Sec. 7, of Constitution.) Congress having passed an act renewing the charter of the United States Bank, which was to expire in 1836, he refused to sign it, and proceeded, against the advice of his cabinet, to remove the public money deposited in the Bank.

A. D. 1832.

422. Prosperous Times.—This money he ordered to be distributed among eighty-nine banks of deposit in various States,

which lent it out to merchants and farmers, and thus increased the rage for wild speculations which had taken possession of every class. Public lands were bought to the amount of $24,000,000 in a year. Villages and even cities were laid out by hundreds; great works were projected, and State debts were incurred for their completion. Foreign goods were imported in greater quantities than ever before. Foreign immigrants thronged to the fertile lands of the Northwest. Foreign capital, disturbed by revolutions in Europe, was sent to America. Proud of its great, rich territory, and of its rapid growth in wealth, the "universal Yankee nation" doubtless offended the taste of its less fortunate rivals, and acquired a reputation for conceit which it has not even yet lived down.

Costumes in 1830.

423. A Full Treasury.—The government was not only out of debt, but had in the banks $37,000,000 more than it needed to use. It was resolved to distribute this among the several States for public uses, the principal to be returned when called for. The Middle and Western States used this additional income in the improvement of roads and in the perfecting of their systems of public schools; the Southern States, largely, in increasing the area of cotton production; for the improved mill machinery of England demanded, at good prices, all the cotton that American fields could furnish.

424. The Specie Circular.—While the banks were embarrassed by the withdrawal of the government money, President Jackson issued his famous *Specie Circular*, requiring all payments for public lands to be made in coin. This was only a reasonable precaution, for so many banks had been founded for mere speculation that their notes might easily become worthless. In

the excited state of the money market it hastened a crisis of which we shall learn in the next chapter.

425. **Troubles with France.** — The President's foreign policy was equally energetic and decisive. The king of France had agreed, in 1831, to pay $5,000,000 for damage done to American commerce during the wars of Napoleon. Payment being delayed, President Jackson proposed to make reprisals on French merchant ships. England then acted as peacemaker; France paid the debt, and the danger of war passed by.

426. At the autumn election of 1836 *Martin Van Buren*, of New York, was chosen to be President. The electors failed to elect a Vice-President, and the Senate chose for its presiding officer Richard M. Johnson, of Kentucky. *Arkansas* was admitted as a State in 1836; *Michigan* in the following year.

Questions.—How did President Jackson's policy differ from that of Civil Service Reform? How did he deal with Nullification and Secession? How, with the Indians? How, with the money-markets? How, with France?

Read *Lives* of Jackson by Eaton, Cobbett, or Kendall. Account of his administration in Williams's and Lossing's *National History of the United States.* Webster-Hayne speeches in the Senate, Jan., 1830.

NOTES.

1. ANDREW JACKSON was born at Waxhaw settlement, North Carolina, March 15, 1767. His father had died a short time before. At the age of thirteen he volunteered under General Sumter, and was taken prisoner the next year. After the Revolution he supported himself by working at saddlery and teaching school,— his spare hours being employed in the study of law. He removed to Nashville in 1788; and, when Tennessee became a Territory, was appointed by President Washington district attorney. He was the first Representative in Congress from the new State of Tennessee. The next year he was made United States Senator, but soon resigned to accept a supreme judgeship in his own State. When Aaron Burr came west in 1805, and again in 1806, he was the guest of Jackson, who at first entered warmly into his plans, believing

them to mean simply war against Spain. But when Jackson discovered the treasonable designs of Burr he at once denounced him, and informed President Jefferson of his suspicions. Andrew Jackson's military career began in the Creek War in 1813. In May, 1814, he was made a major-general in the United States army, and won his famous victory of New Orleans January 8, 1815 (§ 395). In 1823 Jackson was again in the Senate, and in 1824 received fifteen more electoral votes for President than John Quincy Adams, but the decision of the House gave to Adams the high office. In the election of 1828, however, Jackson was made President. His strong common sense, unswerving honesty, indomitable energy, and shining patriotism made amends for the lack of softer and more refined traits; marked his administration with deeds of moral courage; and stamped it as a political and social era in the history of our country. The nullification movement, the bank war, the Indian troubles, and the hot debates on the currency, tariff, and slavery questions—all together made Jackson's term of office an exciting one. He was glad to retire to the quiet scenes of his "Hermitage," where he died June, 1845.

2. DANIEL WEBSTER (born in Salisbury, N. H., 1782, died at Marshfield, Mass., 1852), had as a boy no educational advantages beyond the home instruction of his father and mother, and a few terms in the district schools of the neighborhood. He passed nine months of diligent study at Phillips Exeter Academy, and graduated from Dartmouth with high honors in 1801. At this period he is described by his friend George T. Curtis, as having "a faculty for labor something prodigious, a memory disciplined by methods not taught him by others, and an intellect expanded far beyond his years. He was abstemious, religious, of the highest sense of honor, and of the most elevated deportment. His manners were genial, his affections warm, his conversation was brilliant and instructive, his temperament cheerful, his gayety overflowing. He was beloved, admired, and courted by all who knew him." In 1812 he was elected to Congress by the Federalists, and was a prominent member of the House for two terms. Then he removed to Boston, and, during the busy practice of his profession for the next seven years, became by common consent the greatest lawyer of his time. In 1823 Webster was again sent to the national House of Representatives, and was twice re-elected; but, in 1827, he was transferred to the Senate, of which body he was, perhaps, the most conspicuous figure during the next twelve years. As Secretary of State under Harrison and Tyler, and again under Fillmore, he managed the foreign affairs of the nation with consummate skill. He was returned to the United States Senate in 1845. See §§ 464, 466.

3. ROBERT YOUNG HAYNE (1791–1840), entered the United States Senate in 1823, and served two terms. He was educated for the law, fought in the War of 1812, was speaker of the house in the South Carolina legislature, and Attorney-general for the State before going to Washington. Before his senatorial term was ended he was chosen governor of South Carolina, and boldly defied President Jackson to enforce his proclamation in regard to the nullification acts. Hayne possessed brilliant talents, and was especially strong in debate.

CHAPTER XXIX.

THIRTEENTH TERM, A. D. 1837–1841.

MARTIN VAN BUREN, *President.* RICHARD M. JOHNSON, *Vice-President.*

Martin Van Buren.

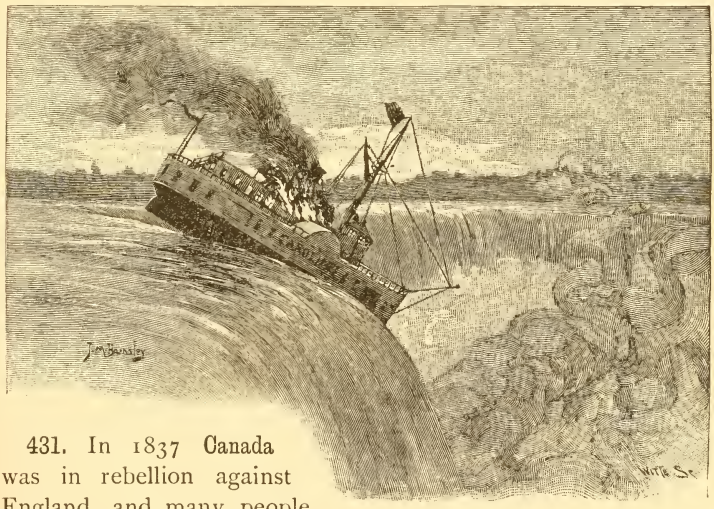
427. The Eighth President.—President Van Buren[1] was of the same party as his predecessor, under whom he had been Vice-President the last four years. His term began with panic and ruin in the commercial world, owing partly to the reaction that must always follow extravagant speculation, partly to bad harvests and high prices of food, partly to a check in the demand for cotton, and partly to abrupt money movements under Jackson's administration.

428. Commercial Disasters. — A great firm in New Orleans failed on the day of Van Buren's inauguration; within two months New York merchants had failed to the amount of one hundred millions, and those of New Orleans to half that sum. Every part of the country shared the distress. Banks failed; mills were closed; public works ceased; hundreds of thousands of people were thrown out of employment, and multitudes lacked bread. Eight States were bankrupt, and even the general government had to delay the payment of interest on its bonds.

429. The Bank of the United States had been re-chartered by the State of Pennsylvania. It failed in 1841 for the third and last time, but all its debts were ultimately paid in full. So were those of the Union and of all the States excepting Mississippi

and Florida; but American bonds long continued to be a name of reproach in the money-markets of the world.

430. **The Sub-treasury Law.**—To prevent similar disasters in future, the President proposed an act requiring all public moneys to be kept, not in banks, but in the treasury at Washington, or in sub-treasuries at other cities. Banks were required to limit and secure their operations by depositing funds with the government. The "Sub-treasury Bill" was unpopular, and prevented the re-election of the President; but it became a law in 1839, and though repealed in 1841, it was re-enacted in 1846, and time has proved its wisdom.



The Caroline.

431. In 1837 **Canada** was in rebellion against England, and many people on our northern border wished her success. But when good wishes took the shape of arms for the rebels, the President ordered all citizens to abstain from hostilities, and General Scott was sent to the frontier to preserve peace. The steamer *Caroline*, which had been fitted out with supplies for the Canadians, was seized by a

British party, and, having been set on fire, was allowed to drift over Niagara Falls. The boundary line between Maine and New Brunswick was another cause of trouble, and there was great excitement among restless spirits who were eager for a fight. Happily good sense prevailed; the President's proclamation was obeyed, and the danger of war passed by.

432. The Democratic party had now been in power forty years, with the exception of the four years of the second Adams's administration. The *Whigs*, who had lately taken this name in memory of revolutionary times (§ 145, and note 5, Chapter XV.), comprised all that were left of the Federalists, with those who for various reasons had become dissatisfied with Democratic policy.

433. General William Henry Harrison was the Whig candidate in 1840. Memories of his victories at Tippecanoe and the Thames (§§ 368, 383), together with the affection inspired by his benevolent and upright character, made the campaign a very enthusiastic one. Harrison's simple frontier life was ridiculed by his opponents in the nick-names "Log Cabin Candidate" and "Hard Cider Campaign," but these were caught up by his partisans and made their rallying cries. They charged Van Buren, in their turn, with having lived in needless luxury and splendor in the White House, not caring that many people were starving through the mismanagement of public money by his party. These charges, though unjust, had great effect. Harrison was elected by an immense majority, with John Tyler, of Virginia, as Vice-President.

Questions.—What was the condition of the money-markets at the beginning of Van Buren's term of office? How did the people suffer from the loss of public credit? Were the debts of the National Bank and of the State and Federal governments ever paid? What change was made in the disposal of public money? What was done by our government and people in reference to the Canadian rebellion? What change of parties in the election of 1840?

NOTE.

1. MARTIN VAN BUREN (1782-1862), was born at Kinderhook, N. Y., and after being educated as a lawyer entered on his political career at the age of eighteen. In 1812, and again in 1816, he was elected to the State senate, and from 1815 to 1819 he was attorney-general of New York. Not being satisfied with some of the Democratic principles, he re-organized the party in his own State in 1818, and this new faction held control of public affairs there for twenty years. In 1821 Van Buren was elected a member of the convention called to revise the New York State constitution. During the same year he was elected to the United States Senate, and was re-elected in 1827. He, however, resigned in 1828 to accept the office of governor of New York. President Jackson made Van Buren his Secretary of State in 1829, but the latter resigned in 1831, and a few months later was sent as minister to England. After his arrival in that country the Senate refused to confirm his nomination, claiming that as Secretary of State he had pursued a weak course toward England in reference to questions of trade between her West Indian colonies and America. In return for this piece of "party persecution," the Democrats elected Van Buren Vice-President in 1832 over the very Senate that had refused to confirm him. Although defeated in 1840 by a sweeping majority, Van Buren's friends tried to effect his renomination for the presidency in 1844, but they failed through his openly avowed opposition to the annexation of Texas. Van Buren and his followers withdrew from the Democratic party in 1848, disagreeing on the question of slavery in newly acquired territories, and formed a new party known as the "Free Democrats." Van Buren was nominated by them for President, but was defeated. He then retired permanently from politics, passing his remaining days in European travel and in the quiet seclusion of his estate at Kinderhook.

CHAPTER XXX.

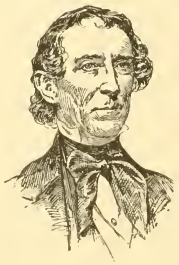
FOURTEENTH TERM, A. D. 1841–1845.

WILLIAM H. HARRISON, *President.* JOHN TYLER, *Vice-President.*

William H. Harrison.

434. The Ninth and Tenth Presidents.—President Harrison[1] lived only one month after his inauguration. "Killed by office-seekers" would probably be the true verdict; for, anxious to do justice to all men, he gave to the throng of applicants time which he needed for rest. He died April 4, 1841. **John Tyler,**[2] of Virginia, became President, keeping the same cabinet which Harrison had appointed and the Senate had confirmed.

435. National Bank Question.—On the question of re-chartering a National Bank, President Tyler was in opposition to his party. Twice a bill for that purpose was passed by Congress, and twice it was vetoed by the President. All his cabinet then resigned, excepting Mr. Webster, Secretary of State, who was engaged in negotiating an important treaty with Great Britain.



John Tyler.

436. This "Webster and Ashburton Treaty" settled two old and troublesome questions between the two countries. The north-eastern boundary-line of the United States was fixed where it still remains; the "right of search" was formally given up by Great Britain;

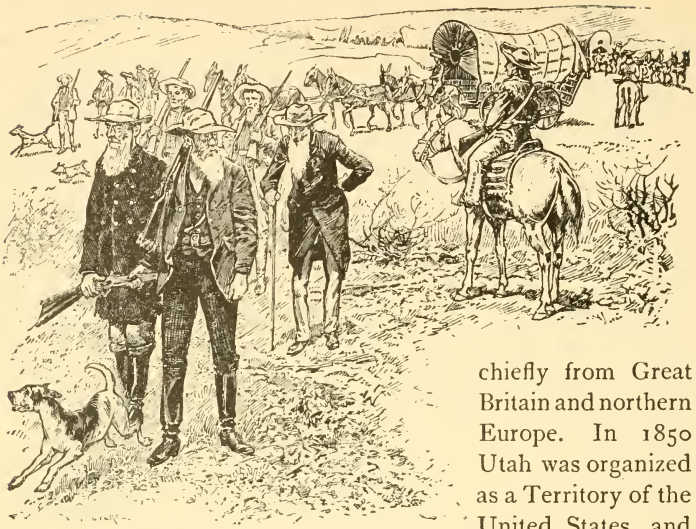
A. D. 1842.

and it was now agreed that the navies of the two nations should unite in the suppression of the slave-trade.

437. **Dorr's Rebellion.**—Peace at home was broken by "Dorr's Rebellion" in Rhode Island. The constitution of that State was no other than the old colonial charter granted by Charles II. It allowed only owners of real-estate to vote, and in other respects was unsuited to the times. All parties agreed that there must be a change, but in choosing the manner of it, the "suffrage party," with Thomas Dorr[3] at its head, was opposed to that of "law and order." Dorr and his partisans attempted to seize the State arsenal, but were driven away by the militia and afterwards dispersed by United States forces. The "law and order party" prevailed, and a new constitution was adopted in 1843.

438. **The Mormons.**—Far more serious difficulty arose with the Mormons, a sect founded in 1830 at Manchester, N. Y., by Joseph Smith,[4] who pretended to have received a revelation from Heaven. Great excitement was caused by his strange teachings: he was mobbed and shot at, and narrowly escaped with his life. It was then decided to find a home for the "Latter Day Saints" in the newer lands of the West. It must be said that the Mormons were more orderly, sober, and industrious than a large part of those who opposed them. Moving west from Ohio in 1837, and being driven from Missouri by the state militia in 1838, they built a new city and a splendid temple at Nauvoo, in Illinois.

439. **Brigham Young in Utah.** — Here again they came into conflict with the laws. Their "Prophet" and his brother were imprisoned, and were killed by a band of ruffians who broke open the jail. At length the Mormons, under their new leader, Brigham Young,[5] went beyond the Rocky Mountains to the valley of the Great Salt Lake. Here their industry soon turned the dry plains (§ 15) into blooming gardens. Recruits flocked in from all parts of the world, A. D. 1844.

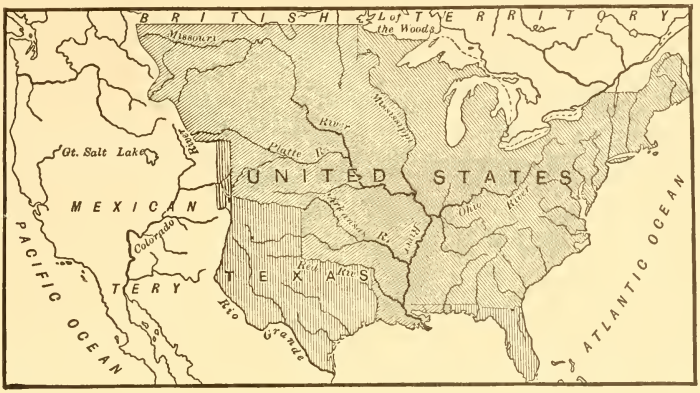


Mormons Moving to Utah.

chiefly from Great Britain and northern Europe. In 1850 Utah was organized as a Territory of the United States, and Brigham Young was appointed by the President to be its governor. His opposition to judges and other officers of the United States caused him to be displaced the next year, but he continued to be the prophet and absolute chief of the Mormons until his death, in 1877.

440. Texas.—The most exciting question of Tyler's term of office concerned the fate of Texas. Until 1836 that great country was part of the republic of Mexico, though the most powerful party among its citizens, both for numbers and energy, had of late been emigrants from the United States. Under their leadership Texas declared her independence in 1835, and secured it the next year by the decisive battle of San Jacinto.[6] She then asked admission to the United States, but was refused. The application was renewed in 1844, the Democrats strongly favoring acceptance and the Whigs opposing it.

441. Annexation of Texas.—Mr. Calhoun frankly declared that the purpose in annexing Texas was "to extend the influence



The United States in 1845.

of slavery, and secure its perpetual duration." This was not desired by the northern people, who also objected to the burden of the Texan debt, which the United States were to assume, and to the war with Mexico, which must grow out of the unsettled dispute as to boundaries. Henry Clay was the candidate of the Whig party; *James K. Polk*, of Tennessee, that of the Democrats. The latter was elected, and as the question of annexation was thus decided by popular vote, *Texas* was admitted before his inauguration. *Florida* was also made a State on the last day of Tyler's term of office.

S. F. B. Morse.

442. The electro-magnetic telegraph, invented by Samuel F. B. Morse, was now first put to practical use. Congress appropriated $30,000 to test the invention, and a line was built from Washington to Baltimore. It had been found, by many experiments, that messages could be sent to great distances by means of wires and electric batteries. The first public dispatch sent over the wires was the announcement of Polk's nomination, May 29, 1844.

Questions.—What changes occurred in 1841? What agreements were made with Great Britain? What was done in Rhode Island? Tell the story of the Mormons in their different homes. Give the history of Texas. What great invention came into use in Polk's term of office?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map No. IX., the two States ceded to the Union in 1845. The present home of the Mormons (§ 439).

NOTES.

1. WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON (1773–1841), was the son of Benjamin Harrison, a signer of the Declaration of Independence, and later governor of Virginia. At the age of nineteen he entered the army, and served against the Indians under Governor St. Clair and "Mad Anthony" (§ 326). He thus became experienced at an early age in Indian warfare. At the age of twenty-two he was made a captain, and commanded Fort Washington, on the site of Cincinnati; two years later he resigned in order to be secretary of the Northwest Territory. Later, he represented the people of that district as their delegate to Congress. In 1801 the Northwest Territory was divided, and Harrison was appointed governor of the "Territory of Indiana," which included the present States of Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin. During his governorship he made several important treaties with the Indians, and fought the celebrated battle of Tippecanoe (§§ 368, 375, 376, 383). After the war he turned his attention to politics, and served in both branches of Congress and in the Ohio State senate. Under John Quincy Adams he was sent as minister plenipotentiary to Colombia, S. A.

2. JOHN TYLER (1790–1862), was born in Charles City Co., Virginia. His father was a Revolutionary patriot, and for some years was governor of the State. Tyler graduated at William and Mary College, studied law, and shortly after being admitted to the bar was elected to the legislature. This was the beginning of a long political career, during which he served at various times in the House and Senate, in his State legislature, as governor of Virginia, and finally as Vice-President and President of the United States. When the Southern States seceded, in 1861, Tyler was sent as a delegate from Virginia to the Peace Convention at Washington, of which he became president. This convention failed of its purpose, and, returning to his native State, he espoused the Southern cause. At the time of his death he was a member of the Confederate Congress.

3. THOMAS WILSON DORR, the leader of the suffrage party, was tried, and was convicted of treason. He was sentenced to imprisonment for life, but was released in 1847.

4. JOSEPH SMITH was of Scotch descent, and was born in Sharon, Vermont, in 1805. He led a dissolute life when young, and was very ignorant. When

twenty-one years of age he pretended to have received from an angel tablets of gold upon which was written the "Book of Mormon." Smith attempted to introduce polygamy into the Mormon customs when they settled at Nauvoo, Illinois, but was resisted by some of the community, who established a press and published opposition articles. Smith headed a mob which demolished the press, but this act cost the "prophet" his liberty, and ultimately his life.

5. BRIGHAM YOUNG was born at Whittingham, Vermont, in 1801, and was a man of limited education. He first joined the Mormons while they were located at Kirtland, Ohio, and soon became a prominent leader among them through his eloquent preaching and strong personal influence. After Smith's death Young was the successful candidate for the presidency of the church. In 1852 he introduced polygamy as "the celestial law of marriage" into the Mormon constitution, declaring that it had been revealed to Smith nine years before. Young died in 1877, and the Mormons are rapidly losing control of Utah.

6. The most prominent American in the Texan revolt was General Samuel Houston. He was born near Lexington, Virginia, in 1793. His mother, a poor widow, removed to Tennessee in 1807, but her son shortly left her, and went to live with the Cherokee Indians in Arkansas, where he made many strong friends among the chiefs. Three years later he returned, and after teaching school for a time enlisted as a private in Jackson's campaign against the Creeks (§ 384). Retiring at the close of the war with the rank of lieutenant, he commenced the study of law, and was soon a prominent politician. He was elected to Congress, and kept his seat there for four years, when he was elected governor of Tennessee, at the age of thirty-four. Two years later he resigned the governorship, and went to live with his old friends, the Cherokees. In 1832 Houston went to Texas and took a prominent part in the revolutionary movement. After Texas declared her independence, Houston was made commander-in-chief of her army. Santa Anna, the Mexican general, butchered two American forces that had surrendered to him, in cold blood, and then attacked Houston, who had but 783 men, with a force of 1,600 men. This was the famous battle of SAN JACINTO, in which 630 Mexicans were killed, and nearly all the rest were captured; among the latter was Santa Anna. The American loss was eight killed and twenty-five wounded. Houston worked earnestly for the annexation of Texas to the United States, and after it was accomplished was elected United States Senator. In 1859 he was elected governor of Texas, but, being opposed to secession, he was deposed from office when that State went out of the Union, and retired to private life. He died July 25, 1863.

Eclectic U.S. Hist. Map No. 7 Chap. XXXIII. L. B. Folger Sc. Cin.

CHAPTER XXXI.

FIFTEENTH TERM, A. D. 1845–1849.

JAMES K. POLK, *President.* GEORGE M. DALLAS, *Vice-President.*

James K. Polk.

443. The Eleventh President.—Early in Mr. Polk's[1] term of office the northern boundary of **Oregon** was settled by treaty with Great Britain. Columbia River had been first visited and named by an American sea-captain[2] in 1792. After its exploration by Lewis and Clark (§ 357) the colony of *Astoria* was founded on its southern bank by John Jacob Astor,[3] of New York, as a depot for the fur trade. British subjects meanwhile settled on the northern branch of the Columbia and on the Fraser River.

444. Boundary of Oregon and British America.—So long as the fur trade was the only object, the two nations could occupy the land together. But in 1834 the Willamette Valley began to be settled by American citizens, who desired the protection of their own government. Others were for claiming the whole coast to latitude 54° 40′, and "Fifty-four forty, or fight," was a party cry in the election of 1844. But in 1846, after several years' negotiation, the boundary was drawn at 49°, and there it still remains. *Oregon Territory* was organized in 1848. In 1859 the State of *Oregon;* and, later, the Territories of *Washington* and *Idaho* were formed from this region.

445. The southwestern boundary was not so peaceably settled. Mexico claimed the Nueces River, Texas the Rio Grande, as the dividing line; and the United States had now undertaken the Texan quarrel. General Taylor, with an "Army of Occupation," entered the disputed territory, and in April, 1846, built Fort Brown, near the mouth of the Rio Grande.

Uniforms during Mexican War.

446. War with Mexico. — The Mexicans began the war by surprising and killing or capturing a party of United States troops. Soon afterwards they attempted to cut off General Taylor himself, who had gone for supplies to Point Isabel; but they were defeated in a hard-fought battle at *Palo Alto*, and still more decisively the next day in the ravine of *Resaca de la Palma*. War was now formally declared, and fifty thousand volunteers were called for. Three hundred thousand pressed forward, eager for adventure. Crossing the Rio Grande, Taylor took Matamoras and several other Mexican towns.

447. Three plans comprised the campaigns of 1846 and 1847: (1) General Taylor was to hold the *line of the Rio Grande*. (2) General Kearny, with the Army of the West, was to cross the Rocky Mountains and conquer *New Mexico and California*. (3) General Scott,[4] commander-in-chief, was to advance from Vera Cruz to the *City of Mexico*.

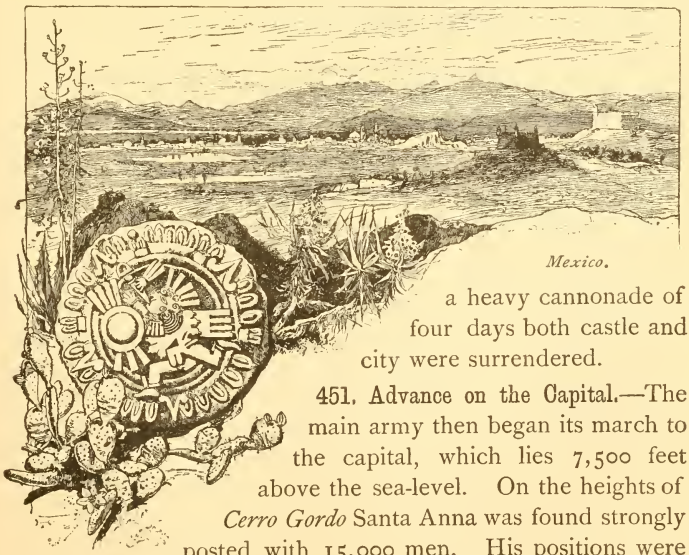
Winfield Scott.

448. Capture of Monterey.—In September, 1846, General Taylor moved upon Monterey. The city was protected by the mountain gorges which made approach difficult,

and by strong works manned by 10,000 Mexicans. It was taken, however, in four days, and the Americans fought their way from house to house until all had surrendered.

449. General Santa Anna[5] was then President of the Mexican Republic and at the head of her forces. With a fine army of 20,000 men he marched to attack Taylor in the mountain-pass of Buena Vista. The Americans numbered fewer than 5,000, but they fought furiously, and at every charge the Mexicans were driven back. At length they fled to the southward, and General Taylor was left in possession of the valley of the Rio Grande. Feb., 1847.

450. Capture of Vera Cruz.—He had already sent the greater part of his forces to the aid of General Scott, who landed in March with 12,000 men before Vera Cruz. This place was protected by the strong castle of San Juan d'Ulloa, but after



Mexico.

a heavy cannonade of four days both castle and city were surrendered.

451. Advance on the Capital.—The main army then began its march to the capital, which lies 7,500 feet above the sea-level. On the heights of *Cerro Gordo* Santa Anna was found strongly posted with 15,000 men. His positions were all stormed and taken; 3,000 Mexicans were made prisoners,

and the invading army pressed on. *Pueblo*, a city of 80,000 people, was taken without resistance, and here General Scott waited three months for additional forces.

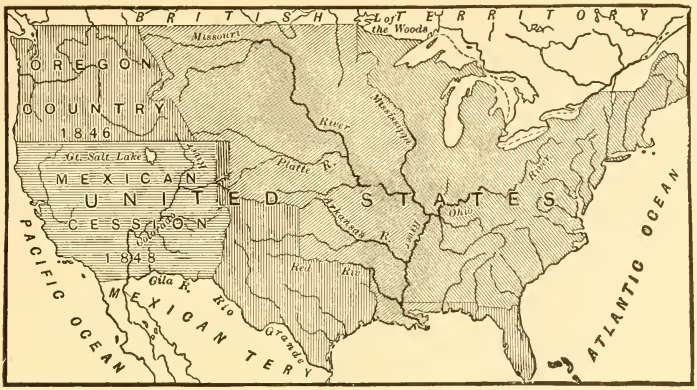
452. Arriving in August at the summit of the Cordilleras, the American army could look down upon the *City of Mexico*, lying in its beautiful plain dotted with lakes and hemmed in by lofty mountains. But all the roads to it were guarded by strong works and defended by Santa Anna with 30,000 Mexicans. Choosing a difficult route to the southward, Generals Pillow and Twiggs took the strongly intrenched camp at *Contreras* after a spirited fight of only seventeen minutes, and the same day captured the heights of *Churubusco*, while General Worth stormed *San Antonio*.

453. Surrender of Mexico.—The way was now open to the gates of the capital, for the other forces of Santa Anna were beaten by Generals Shields and Pierce, and the city government sent to ask a truce. On the 7th of September the army was again in motion; the great fortress of *Chapultepec*, overlooking the city, was taken by storm; Santa Anna and his officers fled; and on the 14th the flag of the United States floated over the old home of the Montezumas.[6]

454. Other Movements.—Meanwhile General Kearny had taken *Santa Fé* (§ 53), and sent Colonel Doniphan with a thousand men to conquer the province and city of *Chihuahua*. He defeated the Mexicans in two battles, and did what he was sent to do. Kearny, with only 400 dragoons, went to conquer *California*. This, however, was done before his arrival.

John C. Frémont.

455. Captain John C. Frémont, with a party of engineers, was exploring the region of the Rocky Mountains for a new route to Oregon, when he heard that the Mexican commander in California was about to drive all Americans from his province. At the same



The United States in 1848.

time Frémont received orders from his own government to protect its citizens as far as was possible.

456. California Independent.—Many Americans were in California for purposes of trade. Raising a force of volunteers among them, Frémont defeated the Mexicans many times in the Sacramento Valley. In concert with Commodore Stockton, who was cruising with an American fleet off the Pacific coast, he gained complete control of the country. California declared her independence of Mexico, July 5, 1846.

457. Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo.—With the fall of her capital, the power of Mexico was broken. By the treaty of *Guadalupe Hidalgo*, Upper California, with Nevada, Utah, Arizona, and New Mexico, was ceded to the United States. The latter agreed to pay fifteen millions of dollars for this territory, and to assume the debts of the Mexican government to American citizens. The other captured places were restored.

458. Gold Discovered.—Scarcely was this treaty signed when news came that gold had been discovered on the American Fork of Sacramento River. The report spread around the world, and from every country a throng of excited adventurers

Gold Digging.

rushed to the "gold diggings." Ships were deserted, while officers and men joined in the scramble for sudden wealth. From the Atlantic States thousands embarked for the long voyage around Cape Horn; others crossed the fever-haunted Isthmus; while multitudes journeyed overland, many of whom died of hunger and hardship on the plains.

459. **San Francisco,** from a sleepy Spanish "mission" (§ 53), surrounded by a village of mud cabins, became in a year a busy town of 15,000 people. At first the rough and reckless crowd had its own way, and the worst disorders prevailed. At length the best citizens formed themselves into "vigilance committees," and succeeded in enforcing justice; so that society became as peaceful as in older States. As the gold fever subsided, mining continued to be an important and regular industry of California, while the great wealth of her soil and the fame of her equable and healthful climate drew thousands of new citizens.

460. **The Wilmot Proviso.**—On the question of governing the great, rich region won from Mexico, violent contests arose. As early as 1846 David Wilmot[7] had brought before Congress a bill for excluding slavery from all future territories of the United States. This "Proviso" was defeated, but in the election of 1848 both Whigs and Democrats were opposed by a "Free Soil Party." It was not strong enough to secure even one electoral vote, but its principle—that of confining slave-labor to the States it already occupied—was gaining ground.

461. New States.—During Polk's administration *Iowa* (1846) and *Wisconsin* (1848) were admitted to the Union. Iowa was first settled by a Frenchman named Dubuque, who carried on trade with the Indians near the town which bears his name. The towns of Burlington and Dubuque were founded in 1833 by emigrants from Illinois. French missions and trading stations were also the first white settlements in Wisconsin, whose name means "the gathering-place of waters." In later years many industrious people from Norway, Sweden, Denmark, and northern Germany have found homes in the State.

Questions.—How was Oregon discovered and settled? Why and how was war begun with Mexico? What was done by Generals Taylor, Kearny, and Scott? What by Santa Anna? How was the war ended? What followed in California? What new party was formed, and what new States admitted?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map No. IX., the Columbia River. The northern boundary of the United States, from the Lake of the Woods to the Pacific Ocean. On Map No. VII., the southwestern boundary as claimed by Mexico in 1845; as claimed by Texas. General Taylor's first position in 1846. The sites of his principal victories. The march of General Scott from the coast to the capital of Mexico. The route of General Kearny. The boundaries of the lands ceded by Mexico in the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo. San Francisco. Iowa and Wisconsin.

Read Jay's *Mexican War* and Ripley's *War with Mexico*. Dawson's *American Battle-Fields*. Lowell's *Biglow Papers*, First Series.

NOTES.

1. JAMES KNOX POLK (1795–1849), was born in Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, his grand-uncle having been one of the promoters of the Mecklenburg Resolutions (§ 242). The family moved to Tennessee in 1806, and Polk received his education at the University of North Carolina. After graduating he studied law, and in 1823 became a member of the State legislature. From 1824 to 1839 he was a member of Congress, where he distinguished himself in his opposition to John Quincy Adams, and later by his support of Jackson. He was elected governor of Tennessee in 1839. As President, Polk displayed ability in public affairs. In character he was amiable, little given to display,

grave in manner, and irreproachable in his private life. Three months after his successor, Zachary Taylor, took the presidential chair, Polk died at his home in Nashville, Tenn.

2. This was Captain Robert Gray, of Boston, Mass., who entered the river on the 11th of May, in his vessel, "Columbia Rediviva," after which the stream was named.

3. JOHN JACOB ASTOR (1763–1848), was the son of a German peasant, and was born near Heidelberg. When sixteen years of age he went to London and joined his brother, a maker of musical instruments. He worked at that trade until the close of the American Revolution, when he started for Baltimore with some musical instruments, which he proposed to sell on commission. During the passage he became acquainted with a fur trader, who told him of the profit to be made in furs; and Astor, acting on this, exchanged his instruments for furs on his arrival, and thus began a business which before long became very extensive. At his death, in 1848, he was the richest man in the United States, his property being estimated at twenty millions, a sum which has many times been surpassed since his day.

4. WINFIELD SCOTT (1786–1866), was born at Petersburgh, Va. After graduating at William and Mary College he adopted the profession of law, but almost immediately left it, entering the army as a captain in 1808. His brilliant career in the War of 1812, the Creek War, and the war with Mexico, made him one of the most famous of American generals, while his tact and judgment in managing the delicate questions of the tariff trouble in South Carolina, and the Canadian agitation of 1837 (§ 431), marked him as a skillful diplomate. He was retired in 1861 on full pay and rank, and passed his remaining days at West Point. He has left behind him several military works, a few letters, and the memoirs of his life.

5. ANTONIO LOPEZ DE SANTA ANNA was one of the most prominent men in Mexico during the revolutionary times from 1810 to 1870. He commenced his military career in 1821, when only twenty-three years of age, and during his life, besides holding high military commands, was three times elected president and twice made dictator. He was compelled to leave the country no fewer than five times; and once, being convicted of treason, his vast landed estates were taken by the state. They were never returned to him, and he died at Vera Cruz in comparative poverty and obscurity in 1876.

6. The MONTEZUMAS were chief rulers of Mexico before the coming of Europeans.

7. DAVID WILMOT (1814–1868), was born at Bethany, Pa., and was a member of Congress from 1845 to 1851. The "Proviso" which has made his name celebrated was an amendment to a bill appropriating $2,000,000 for the purchase of Mexican territory, in nearly the language of the Ordinance of 1787, by which the Northwest Territory was organized (§ 324). It provided that "neither slavery nor involuntary servitude shall ever exist in any part of said territory except as a punishment for crime."

CHAPTER XXXII.

SIXTEENTH TERM, A. D. 1849–1853.

ZACHARY TAYLOR, *President.* MILLARD FILLMORE, *Vice-President.*

Zachary Taylor.

462. The Twelfth President.—*General Zachary Taylor*,[1] of Louisiana, a popular hero of the Mexican War, was elected by the Whig party, and became President of the United States in 1849. Soon afterwards California, having adopted a State constitution, asked for admission to the Union. This re-awakened the disputes between the North and the South; for the Californians had decided to have no slaves. The South opposed the admission of a free State as contrary to the Missouri Compromise (§ 402). The North replied that the Compromise applied only to the Louisiana purchase; that a large part of California was north of 36° 30′ north latitude; and that, moreover, the people of the new State had a right to choose for themselves.

463. The Compromise of 1850.—Henry Clay acted the part of peace-maker, as he had done before, but his compromise only delayed war for ten years. Six things were proposed in his "Omnibus Bill": (1) California to be admitted as a free State; (2) The admission of new States legally formed by the division of Texas; (3) Utah and New Mexico to be organized as Territories without mention of slavery; (4) The claims of Texas to New Mexico to be bought by the United States for ten millions of dollars; (5) The slave-trade to be stopped in the District of Columbia; and (6) Slaves escaping to free States to be arrested

and returned to their owners. After long debate, in which Clay and Webster bore a distinguished part, the bill was passed.

464. The Thirteenth President.—While it was under discussion, President Taylor died, after only sixteen months of office. Public duties, in the great excitement of the time, had weighed the more heavily upon him because he was unused to political life. His last words were, "I have tried to do my duty; I am not afraid to die." July, 1850. *Millard Fillmore*,[2] of New York, the Vice-President, now came to the head of the government. Daniel Webster was made Secretary of State. Part of the duties of that office were given to the new "Department of the Interior," which has charge of the public lands, of dealings with the Indians, and of the issuing of patents.

Millard Fillmore.

465. Within less than three years **three public men** died who were unsurpassed by any of their countrymen in eloquence or in their influence upon the future of the nation. Calhoun died in March, 1850; Clay in June, 1852; and Webster in the following October. Though often strongly opposed on questions of policy, each thoroughly respected the personal character of the others. All had been unsuccessful candidates for the highest office. Clay had given up his hopes in the effort to make peace between extreme parties, replying to his friends who remonstrated, "I would rather be right than be President."

466. The Fugitive Slave Law.—All party questions were now absorbed in the excitement concerning slavery. "The Fugitive Slave Law," a part of the "Omnibus Bill," was bitterly resented in the Northern States. Most northern people had been content to feel that slave-holding, whether right or wrong, was no concern of theirs, and to leave the responsibility to those who practiced it. It was a different matter to see runaway slaves hunted by officers of the United States in the streets of

Boston, and to be even required to help in finding and catching them. On the other hand, the South felt that northern men were willing to accept a large share in the profits of slave-labor, while refusing to own slaves themselves.

467. **Personal Liberty Laws.**—Several of the States made "Personal Liberty Laws," practically annulling the Fugitive Slave Law. While the excitement was at its height the election of 1852 resulted in the elevation of *Franklin Pierce*, of New Hampshire, to the Presidency, by the Democratic party, which had an immense majority in the South.

Questions.—What dispute arose about California? How was it settled? What changes occurred in 1850? What public men died, 1850–1852? What was the Fugitive Slave Law? How regarded and met?

NOTES.

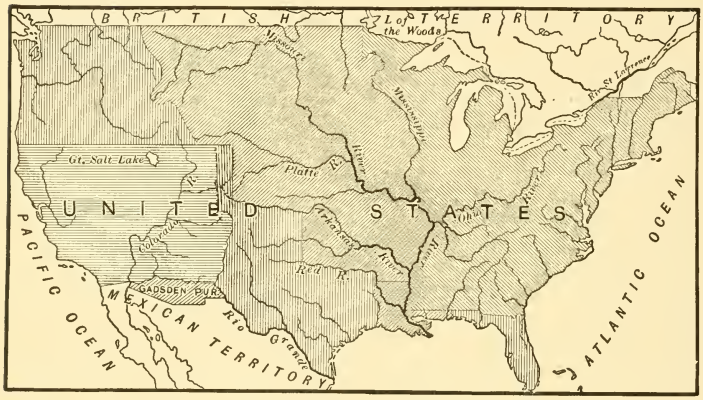
1. ZACHARY TAYLOR (1784–1850), was of Virginian birth: but his father, a Revolutionary officer, removed to a plantation near Louisville, Ky., and became one of the prominent politicians of that State. Zachary entered the army as a lieutenant, and distinguished himself by the brave defense of a fort on the Wabash, against a superior force of Indians. This was at the opening of the War of 1812, and established Taylor's reputation as an Indian fighter. He was employed on the western frontier and in Florida until the opening of the Mexican War, when he had risen to the rank of brigadier-general. While Taylor accepted the nomination for President, he expressed his doubts as to his fitness for the position. He was conservative in his views; and was strongly opposed to the Secession party, which began to gain power in the South during his term of office. One of his daughters married Jefferson Davis, and his son, General Richard Taylor, was one of the last Confederate generals to surrender.

2. MILLARD FILLMORE (1800–1874), was born in Cayuga County, N. Y. He was apprenticed to a trade when fourteen, but studied hard during spare hours, and finally entered a law office as a clerk. After two years he went to Buffalo, where his abilities soon made him known, and his rise was rapid. In 1832 he was elected to Congress. He was a staunch Whig, and took an active part in the debates. As President, Fillmore won the sincere admiration of his cabinet. He signed the various acts comprised in Mr. Clay's compromise measures, being convinced that they agreed with the Constitution; but the Fugitive Slave Law was so offensive to the Abolition Party that when he was again nominated for President in 1856 (§ 476), he received the electoral vote of only one State. He then retired to Buffalo, N. Y., where he died in 1874.

CHAPTER XXXIII.

SEVENTEENTH TERM, A. D. 1853–1857.

FRANKLIN PIERCE, *President.* WILLIAM R. KING, *Vice-President.*



The United States in 1853.

Franklin Pierce.

468. World's Fair at New York.—*Two peaceful events* marked the summer of 1853. Following an example set by London two years before, a "Crystal Palace" was opened at New York in July for an "Exposition of the arts and industries of all nations." Several "World's Fairs" have been held since then; and it may be hoped that these friendly meetings, by promoting better knowledge of each other's resources, and of the common interests which may be founded upon them, have done something to promote among all nations unity, peace, and con-

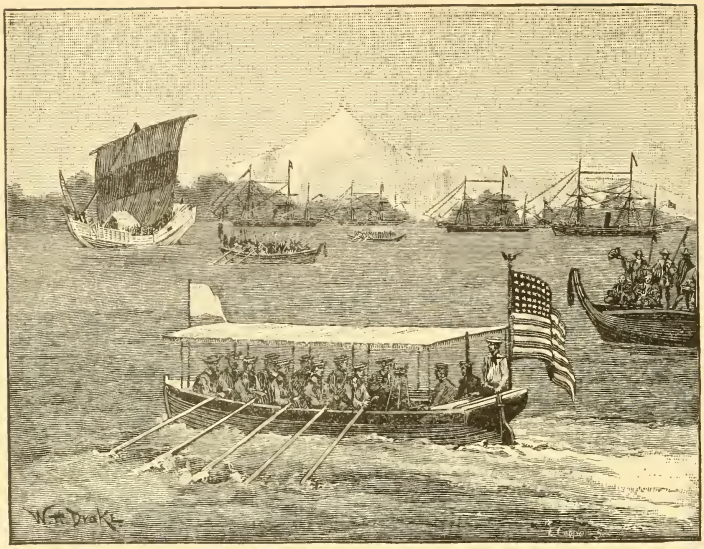
cord. Prejudices that could only come of ignorance, have passed away. Working side by side, men have learned to esteem each other as brethren.

469. **Perry in Japan.**—During the same month, July, 1853, Commodore Perry, in command of an American fleet, entered the harbor of Yeddo, and announced the desire of his government to make a treaty with Japan. That interesting empire had kept itself shut up for centuries from all intercourse with other nations, and the doors were now opened only with caution and reserve. The great war-steamers, the first they had ever seen, filled the Orientals with surprise, which was not lessened by the bold and confident bearing of the American officers. The intruders were at first ordered to depart; but at length an interview was arranged with a great official of the Japanese government, whom Perry was able to convince of the friendly purpose of his visit. In 1854 a treaty was made which admitted American merchants to Japanese ports, and a rich commerce soon sprang up, leading to wonderful changes in the policy and relations of Japan.

470. **The Gadsden Purchase.** — Our western boundary being firmly settled on the Pacific, and friendly relations established with the people beyond it, our interests in the south-west were supposed to call for an extension of territory. By peaceful agreement with Mexico, a large tract of land south of the River Gila was added to the United States. Ten millions of dollars were paid by the United States for this "Gadsden Purchase," so called because it was conducted by General Gadsden of South Carolina. The acquired territory was divided between Arizona and New Mexico. Its soil is very dry, but not wholly without fertility when irrigated, even sustaining the date palm, and other productions of northern Africa.

1853–54.

471. **Pacific Railroad Explorations.** — It had now become plain that great advantages would be gained if the rich Pacific coast could be reached from the East by railroads; and, although



Perry in Japan.

many thought the scheme absurd, Congress ordered surveys to be made. Accordingly, five different routes were explored during 1853–54, and it was found that such roads could be built.

472. The Ostend Manifesto.—Some people had always wanted the United States to include Cuba, but several attempts to buy it failed, and a filibustering expedition,[1] undertaken in 1851, to seize the island by force, ended in disaster. In 1854 another attempt to buy it was made. The American ministers to England, France, and Spain met at Ostend, Belgium, and published a manifesto which set forth the advantages to be derived by both Spain and the United States from the transfer of Cuba, at a reasonable price, as well as the danger to both nations of allowing it to remain in the possession of Spain. England and France, however, joined Spain in opposing the plan, and after some temporary excitement the matter was dropped.

473. The Kansas-Nebraska Bill.—The great political events of Pierce's[2] administration arose from a bill introduced into Congress by Senator Stephen A. Douglas,[3] of Illinois, "to organize the Territories of Kansas and Nebraska." In spite of the Missouri Compromise (§ 402), this bill left to the majority of people in each Territory the choice whether to enter the Union as a slave or as a free State. It became a law after five months of violent debate. Then began a rush for the first possession of the land.

474. Kansas was the immediate object. Missourians were first on the ground, and, guarding the nearest approaches, forced emigrants from New England to take a longer route through Iowa. In 1856 a convention at Lecompton framed a State constitution admitting slavery. Another convention at Topeka declared the first to be illegal, as the ballot had been controlled by armed voters from Missouri, and proceeded to organize Kansas as a free State. Two capitals and two legislatures claimed to be the lawful centers of government of Kansas Territory.

475. Civil war broke out. Lawrence, which had been settled by Massachusetts people, was plundered and burnt. Murder and all other kinds of violence were common. Congress refused a seat to the territorial delegate from Kansas, and sent a committee to investigate the manner of his election. It was made plain that he had not been fairly chosen. Governor Geary was appointed with a military force large enough to keep order.

476. The Republican Party was now formed for more determined resistance to the extension of slavery. It contained the greater number of Whigs, all the Free-soilers, and Abolitionists like William Lloyd Garrison,[4] Wendell Phillips,[5] and Charles Sumner,[6] and those Democrats who opposed the extension of slavery in the Territories. John C. Frémont[7] was the Republican candidate for the Presidency in the year 1856,

and received the electoral votes of eleven States. One State voted for Fillmore, who had been nominated by the American, or "Know-Nothing,"[8] party. The remaining nineteen States gave their votes to *James Buchanan*, the Democratic candidate, who became the fifteenth President of the United States.

Questions.—Name some of the early events in Pierce's term of office. What was done about Cuba? Tell the early history of Kansas. How was the country divided in the election of 1856?

Map Exercise.—On Map VIII., point out Topeka and Lawrence. In what direction is Iowa from Kansas? In what direction, Missouri?

NOTES.

1. The "Filibusters," as they were called, were a set of lawless men who, after the Mexican War, organized expeditions within the United States against Cuba and Central America. The expedition against Cuba consisted of 500 men, commanded by a Cuban named Lopez. The Filibusters were defeated and imprisoned, and Lopez was executed.

2. FRANKLIN PIERCE, of New Hampshire, was born in 1804, and died 1869. He graduated at Bowdoin College in the class of 1824, and was admitted to the bar three years later. He was very successful as a lawyer. His political life began in the legislature of his State, from which, in 1833, he was transferred to the lower house of Congress. In 1837 he was chosen United States Senator. He favored the annexation of Texas, and was among the first to volunteer for the Mexican War (§ 453). For bravery in action he rapidly rose from the ranks to a brigadier-generalship, and was commissioned by General Scott to arrange an armistice after the battle of Churubusco. Pierce's entire administration was one of intense political excitement. The President was an advocate of the doctrine of "State Rights," and opposed every anti-slavery movement.

3. STEPHEN ARNOLD DOUGLAS was born in Brandon, Vt., 1813, and died in Chicago, 1861. He emigrated to the West in 1833, and a year later began the practice of law in Jacksonville, Ill. At the age of 22 years he was chosen attorney-general of the State. In 1840 he was appointed secretary of state, and the same year a judge on the supreme bench of Illinois. Douglas was elected in 1843 to the House of Representatives. In 1847 he was promoted to the Senate, where he was an acknowledged leader for the remainder of his life. He was a master of constitutional law, a powerful debater, and exerted a strong personal influence over his audiences. He was a man of large frame, though not tall, and was popularly styled "the little giant." His Kansas-Nebraska bill was the cause of exciting controversy throughout the land, and led to the formation of

the Republican party. At the Baltimore Convention, in 1852, Mr. Douglas received 92 votes as candidate for the Presidency; and at Cincinnati, in 1856, 121 votes. In 1860 he was the nominee of the northern wing of the Democratic party, and received a very large popular vote. He greatly deplored the outbreak of the Civil War, and strongly denounced the doctrine of secession.

4. WILLIAM LLOYD GARRISON (1804–1879), while a printer's apprentice, attracted attention by a series of ably written articles in the *Salem Gazette*. Becoming his own master, he started a newspaper, called *The Free Press*, in his native town of Newburyport. This effort failed, but he soon became editor of *The New Philanthropist* of Boston, the first journal that advocated total abstinence from intoxicating drinks. Removing to Baltimore in 1829, Garrison became joint editor of a paper devoted to the abolition of slavery. A libel suit followed, in which he was condemned, and he was imprisoned until Arthur Tappan, a merchant of New York, paid his fine. At Boston, in 1831, first appeared *The Liberator*, a weekly journal, in which for thirty-four years Mr. Garrison boldly combated slave-holding in all its forms. Violent excitement prevailed; not only was a price set upon his head at the South, but even in Boston his life was not always safe. His lifelong desire was fulfilled, not, as he had hoped, through reason and conviction, but by war. In May, 1865, he resigned his presidency of the Anti-slavery Society, and in December of the same year discontinued *The Liberator*, its purpose having been fully accomplished.

5. WENDELL PHILLIPS, born in Boston, 1811, graduated at Harvard, 1831, admitted to the bar 1834. Through witnessing the persecution of Garrison and others he became an Abolitionist. Believing in no half-way measures, he gave up his profession and even his vote as a citizen, because he would not act under a government which protected slave-holding. One of his first public addresses was before a mass meeting called in Faneuil Hall, in 1837, to assert the freedom of the press and denounce the murder of Elijah P. Lovejoy by a pro-slavery mob at Alton, Ill. Lovejoy was the editor of an anti-slavery journal, and was killed in the defense of his property. The eloquence of Phillips on this occasion caused him to be recognized as one of the greatest of American orators. He died in Boston, 1884.

6. CHARLES SUMNER was born in Boston, 1811, studied at Harvard College and Law School, and soon became distinguished as a lawyer. His fame as an orator began with a Fourth of July address in 1845 on the "True Grandeur of Nations"—a plea for peace. He opposed the annexation of Texas, and became a member of the new Free Soil Party in 1845. Sumner succeeded Webster as United States Senator from Massachusetts in 1850, and took the lead in opposition to the Fugitive Slave Law and to all compromises with the slave-holding interests. His speech on the contest in Kansas, 1856, so aroused the wrath of a southern Representative, Preston S. Brooks, that he attacked Mr. Sumner, while seated at his desk in the Senate, and by blows on the head disabled him from public service for several years. Sumner returned, however, in 1859, and his speech on "The Barbarism of Slavery" showed undiminished elo-

quence. He was one of President Lincoln's most trusted counselors. From 1861 till 1871 he held the important position in the Senate of Chairman of the Committee on Foreign Relations. His speech on the Alabama Claims, 1869, made a great impression at home and abroad.

7. JOHN CHARLES FRÉMONT, of French descent, was born in Savannah, Ga., 1813. He died in New York City, July 13, 1890. To him are Americans indebted for the early exploration and first intelligent survey of the vast territory between the Mississippi River and the Pacific Ocean. His proposal to the government to explore the unknown region of the Rocky Mountains was accepted, and in 1842 he set out on his first expedition. Valuable information was gained, and after his return Frémont fitted out a second exploring party much larger than the first. During the next half dozen years he crossed the continent many times, often suffering extreme dangers from cold, and hunger, and the Indians. The American settlers on the Pacific slope elected him governor of California in 1846, and the next January he dictated the terms of surrender to the Mexican forces. President Taylor commissioned Frémont to run the boundary line between Mexico and the United States. In 1850 he was United States Senator from the new State of California. In the presidential election of 1856 he received 114 electoral votes to Buchanan's 174. During the Civil War he was a major-general in the Union army: his campaigns were in Missouri and Virginia. From 1878 to 1881 he was governor of Arizona Territory.

8. The name "Know-Nothing" was a token of the mystery in which the early movements of the party—or, rather, secret political society—were involved. Its main principle was the exclusion of foreigners from public office, and even from citizenship in the United States.

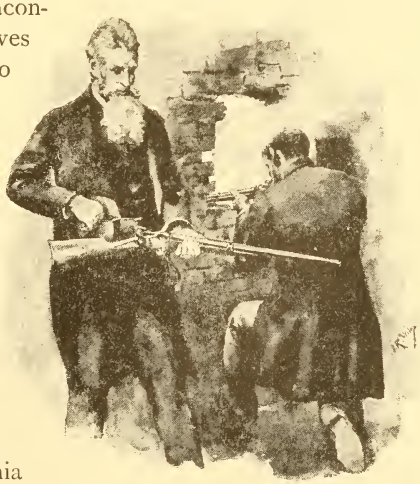
CHAPTER XXXIV.

EIGHTEENTH TERM, A. D. 1857–1861.

JAMES BUCHANAN, *President.* JOHN C. BRECKENRIDGE, *Vice-President.*

James Buchanan.

477. The Fifteenth President. — Early in Mr. Buchanan's administration two northern States were added: *Minnesota* in 1858, and *Oregon* in 1859, making thirty-three in all. The new President[1] wished to quiet all strife, but the conflict of opinions was now too serious to yield to persuasion. The Supreme Court of the United States decided that the Missouri Compromise was unconstitutional, and that slaves might be carried into any Territory of the Union. But this was contrary to the Ordinance of 1787, which prohibited slavery in the Northwest Territory.



John Brown at Harper's Ferry.

478. The excitement became greater when *John Brown*, formerly of Kansas, invaded the State of Virginia with a party of about twenty

Oct., 1859.

men, for the purpose of freeing slaves. He took the arsenal at Harper's Ferry, thinking to arm the negroes, whom he expected to join him. He was easily captured,—his party being either killed or dispersed,—and was tried, convicted, and put to death under the laws of Virginia. Though this rash movement had no support, the news of it excited a rage of resentment throughout the South, where it was considered as an expression of universal Northern feeling.

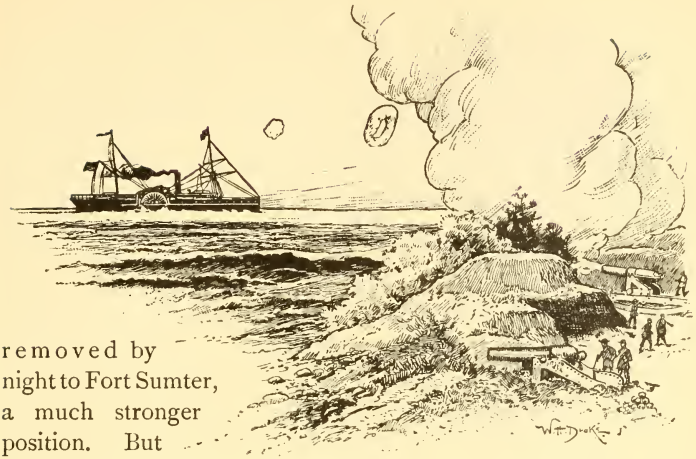
479. The Democratic Party itself, in convention at Charleston, became divided on the question of slavery in the Territories. The majority adjourned to Baltimore and nominated Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, to be the next President. A number of the delegates withdrew from this Baltimore Convention and nominated John C. Breckenridge, of Kentucky. A third party named John Bell, of Tennessee, and Edward Everett,[2] of Massachusetts, for President and Vice-President. The Republicans meanwhile nominated *Abraham Lincoln*, of Illinois, and *Hannibal Hamlin*, of Maine.

April, 1860.

480. By dividing its forces, the Democratic Party lost the power which it had held for twelve out of fifteen presidential terms since Jefferson held the office. Mr. Lincoln was therefore elected by a majority of votes. He was a native of Kentucky. He had educated himself, in spite of poverty and adverse circumstances, to be a successful lawyer and a popular representative in Congress, and had fairly won the confidence of his fellow-citizens by his energetic and upright character.

481. Secession.—Immediately after the election of Lincoln, the political leaders of South Carolina executed their plan of withdrawing from the Union. A convention, called for that purpose, passed an ordinance of secession, which was ratified by the State legislature December 20, 1860. Within a few weeks Georgia and all the Gulf States had followed the example.

482. The "Star of the West."—In Charleston Harbor Major Anderson, commanding the government troops in Fort Moultrie,

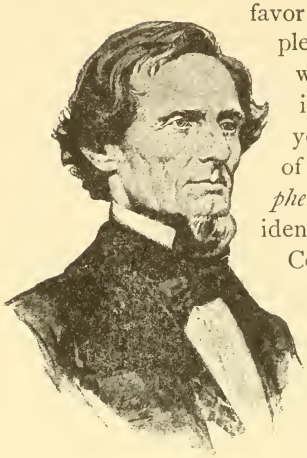


Firing on the "Star of the West."

removed by night to Fort Sumter, a much stronger position. But his supplies were low, and his men were few; he could not long withstand an attack from the batteries which had been erected on the land. Early in January, 1861, President Buchanan determined to send re-enforcements and provisions to the besieged national fort. To this end, he ordered the steamer "Star of the West" to Charleston Harbor with men and supplies. But news of her coming reached South Carolina before the vessel; and, on attempting to approach Fort Sumter, the steamer was fired upon from Morris Island, and struck several times. She was obliged to put back to New York without landing. This was the opening act of the Civil War.[3] *Kansas* was admitted to the Union as a free State on the 29th of this month, and took an active part in succeeding events.

Jan. 9, 1861.

483. Confederate States of America. — A convention of delegates from six of the seven seceding States met at Montgomery, Alabama, in February, 1861, and formed a new government under the name "The Confederate States of America." Its constitution was much like that of the United States, but the sovereign rights of each State were more fully recognized; the



Jefferson Davis.

favor of foreign nations was sought by pledges of free trade; and slavery was guaranteed protection not only in existing States, but in territories yet to be acquired. *Jefferson Davis*[4] of Mississippi, and *Alexander H. Stephens*,[5] of Georgia, were elected President and Vice-President of the new Confederacy.

484. Washington itself was full of opposing forces during the winter of 1860–61. Some who were afterwards leaders of secession were in the cabinet of Mr. Buchanan and in the Senate of the United States. The national government was paralyzed. On February 4, a Peace Convention representing twenty-one States, under the lead of Virginia, met at Washington in the hope of at least keeping the Border States in the Union, and of winning back the rest in time. (See note 2, Chapter XXX.) But all efforts failed. Many southern officers in the army and navy, believing their obedience due to their native States rather than to the Union, resigned their commissions and offered their services to the Confederate government.

485. *Fort Pickens*, near Pensacola, and *Fort Sumter*, in Charleston Harbor, were still held for the United States; and *Fortress Monroe*, the strongest work on the coast, was never lost, but served as a base of operations at sea.

Questions.—What caused excitement during Buchanan's term? What three States were admitted? How many candidates in 1860? How was war begun? What new government formed?

Map Exercise.—Point out, on Map VIII., Harper's Ferry. Forts Moultrie, Sumter, Pickens, Monroe.

NOTES.

1. JAMES BUCHANAN, of Pennsylvania, (1791–1868), was graduated at Dickinson College, 1809; admitted to the bar, 1812; elected to the lower branch of Congress, 1828; appointed minister to Russia, 1831; was United States Senator from 1833 to 1845; Secretary of State under Polk, and minister to England under Pierce. His administration covered the stormy political period just before the outbreak of the Civil War. He was blamed by the Unionists for not taking measures to prevent secession, but after his retirement from office he wrote a book explaining and defending his policy.

2. EDWARD EVERETT (1794–1865), was a distinguished American statesman, orator, and writer. Robert C. Winthrop, of Massachusetts, sums up Everett's character thus: "He was an ardent and gifted scholar, an accomplished and devoted professor, a cautious and conservative statesman, a sincere and earnest patriot, an exhaustless and consummate rhetorician. He was a true man, an ever-obliging and faithful friend, a good citizen."

3. As has been the case in most wars, each side accused the other of beginning the strife. The Federal government claimed that the South began the war because South Carolina fired the first gun. The South, on the other hand, claimed that the Federal government really began the war by its attempt to reenforce Fort Sumter, and that this attempt made the first gun fired by South Carolina necessary for defense. The student who wishes to learn more fully the causes of the war and the details of minor engagements, is recommended to read the larger and fuller works on this period. It is plain that it makes little difference which side struck the first blow: the war was then inevitable.

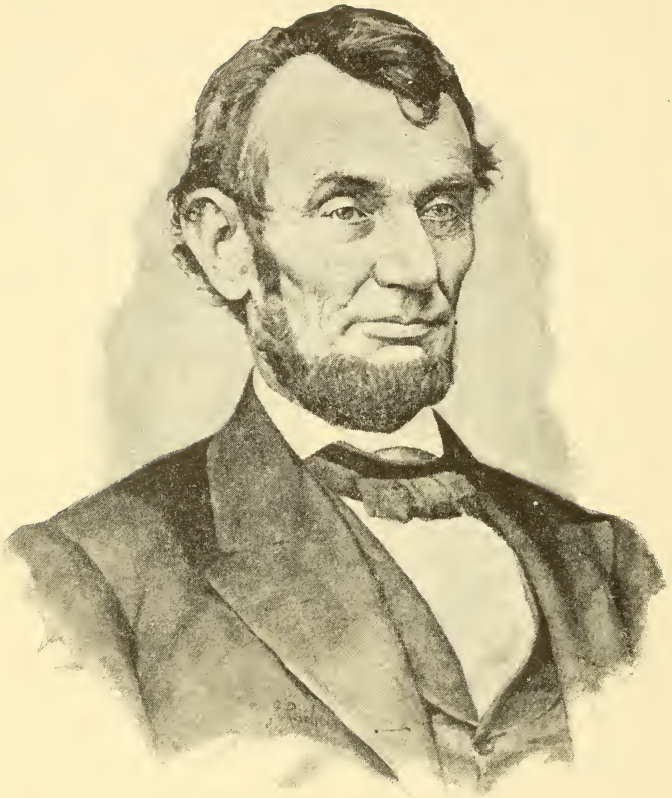
4. JEFFERSON DAVIS (1808–1889), graduated from the United States Military Academy, West Point, 1828; was employed for a time in hard frontier service, and fought bravely in the Mexican War. He was severely wounded at the battle of Buena Vista. He first entered Congress in 1845, and was promoted to the Senate in 1847. Davis was Secretary of War under Pierce. Afterwards he returned to the Senate, and was a Democratic leader until the outbreak of the Civil War. He died at New Orleans December 6, 1889.

5. ALEXANDER HAMILTON STEPHENS (1812–1883), was born near Crawfordville, Ga. He was a graduate of the State University at the age of 20; was admitted to the bar in 1834; and entered the State legislature two years later. From that date he was actively engaged in political life. He was sent to Congress in 1843, and remained for sixteen years—a statesman whose ability was recognized by all parties. After the Civil War the Georgia general assembly elected Mr. Stephens to the United States Senate; but, the State not having been fully restored to the Union, he was not permitted to take his seat. In 1872, however, he was elected to the United States House of Representatives, and held his place there until 1882, when he became governor of Georgia.

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW.—Part IV.

		Section
1.	Describe the condition of the States at the close of the Revolution.	309, 310
2.	What arrangements were made with the Indians?	311, 312
3.	Describe the formation and adoption of the Constitution.	313–319
4.	Name the first President and his cabinet.	320, 321
5.	What was their policy in money matters?	322, 323
6.	How was the Northwestern Territory provided for?	324
7.	What four causes of disturbance in Washington's time?	326–330
8.	What three foreign treaties were made?	331, 334, 335
9.	Describe Washington's character and habits as President.	336, 338, 339
10.	Describe the two political parties and their principles.	333, 340, 351, 390, 392, 398
11.	What three cities have been seats of the Federal government?	320, 323, 347
12.	What occasioned the Alien and Sedition laws, and why were they repealed?	341, 342
13.	What troubles with France during Adams's administration?	343–345
14.	How did cotton become profitable?	348
15.	Describe the beginning of Ohio.	324, 325, 365
16.	What can you tell of Jefferson, his policy and character?	351–353
17.	How was Louisiana acquired, and what was done with it?	355–358
18.	Describe the successive dealings of the government with the Barbary States.	329, 335, 359, 397
19.	Tell the story of Aaron Burr.	349, N., 360, 361
20.	What caused the War of 1812?	363–368
21.	Describe the first campaign on land.	369–371
22.	What was done by the American navy?	372, 373, 377–382

		Section
23.	What was done by General Harrison?	375, 376, 383
24.	Describe two campaigns of Jackson.	384, 394, 395
25.	Describe the war on the coast.	385, 386
26.	What was the cause of the Hartford Convention?	387, 390, 392
27.	What occurred in 1814 in northern New York?	390, 391
28.	Describe the return of peace.	393, 396, 398, 400
29.	What seven States were admitted A. D. 1812–1820?	383, 399, 402
30.	Describe the progress of slavery.	67, 140, 153, 157, 251, 401, 402, 441
31.	Describe the progress of steam navigation.	362, 403
32.	What is the "Monroe Doctrine"?	404
33.	What was Mr. Monroe's Indian policy?	406
34.	Describe J. Q. Adams's administration.	409–414
35.	Describe the policy of Jackson.	415, 421–425
36.	What was the subject of Webster's and Hayne's debate?	416, 417
37.	Describe Indian affairs during Jackson's administration.	418–420
38.	Describe the financial condition and policy of the government.	422–424
39.	What changes during Van Buren's term?	427–430
40.	Describe Harrison's election and time of service.	433, 434
41.	Describe Tyler's policy.	435
42.	What happened in Rhode Island?	437
43.	Tell the story of the Mormons.	438, 439
44.	What treaties were made with Great Britain in 1842 and 1846?	436, 443, 444
45.	What occasioned a war with Mexico?	440, 441, 445
46.	Describe its main events.	446–456
47.	What were the terms of peace?	457
48.	What were the consequences of the gold discovery?	458, 459
49.	What was the Wilmot Proviso?	460
50.	How were Iowa and Wisconsin first settled?	461
51.	Describe Taylor's administration. That of Fillmore.	462–467
52.	Foreign treaties made and attempted.	469, 472
53.	Pacific Railroad explorations.	471
54.	Consequences of the Kansas-Nebraska Bill.	473–476
55.	What were the great events of Buchanan's term?	477–485



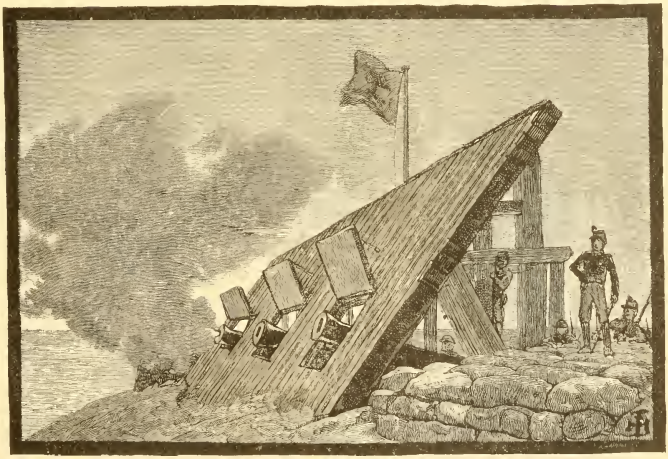
A. Lincoln

PART V.—THE CIVIL WAR.

CHAPTER XXXV.

NINETEENTH TERM, A. D. 1861–1865.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, *President.* HANNIBAL HAMLIN, *Vice-President.*



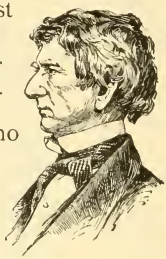
The First Gun,— Battery Stevens.

486. The Sixteenth President.—No President since Washington had taken upon him so heavy a burden with the oath to "preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States." That Constitution had secured great happiness to the people during seventy-two years of comparative peace: it was

yet to be seen whether it would bear the strain of civil war,—such a war as the world had never known.

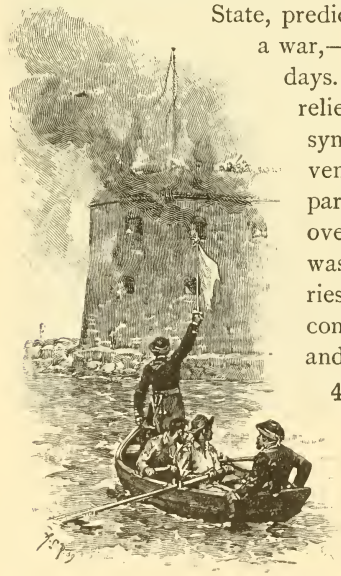
487. In his inaugural address, President Lincoln[1] declared that he had neither the right nor the wish to interfere with Southern institutions, but would hold and defend the property of the United States against any who should assail it. He threw upon the leaders of the South the whole responsibility of the evils which must follow the destruction of the Union, assuring them that there could be no conflict unless they themselves should choose to begin it.

March 4, 1861.



Wm. H. Seward.

488. Miscalculations. — No one, probably, imagined the magnitude of the struggle then beginning. Mr. Seward,[2] the Secretary of State, predicted that the war,—if there was a war,—would not last more than ninety days. The South, on the other hand, relied upon the great number of her sympathizers in the North to prevent any energetic action on the part of the government. Moreover, she believed that if her cotton was withheld from European factories, France and England would combine to put an end to the war and procure the needed supply.



Wigfall at Sumter.

489. Fall of Fort Sumter. — Before daylight of the 12th of April, 1861, the first cannon-ball from a Confederate battery struck the wall of Fort Sumter. The bombardment was kept up for thirty-four hours, until at midnight of the 13th

Major Anderson found that longer resistance was impossible. By the terms of surrender he marched out with his eighty men, with all the honors of war, and spent the last of his powder in a salute to the stars and stripes.

490. The news flew along the telegraph wires and aroused both divisions of the country to more decided action. Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee, which had hesitated, renounced the Union and joined their fortunes with the Confederate States. On the other hand, Missouri, Kentucky, Maryland, and Delaware refused to secede. The navy-yard at Norfolk, with its 2,000 cannon and immense stores of war-materials, was seized by Virginia troops. The United States arsenal at Harper's Ferry was burned by order of the Federal commander.

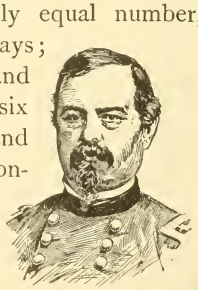
Sketch of Charleston Harbor.

491. Formation of Armies. — Both Presidents called for volunteers, and both calls were answered with enthusiasm. For the defense of the national capital, which was in immediate danger, militia regiments hastened from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and New York. The "Sixth Massachusetts" was attacked in its passage through Baltimore, and several men were killed. It was the eighty-sixth anniversary of the battle of Lexington, where their great-grandfathers had shed the first blood in the struggle for freedom (§ 232). Even then it was felt to be unnatural and degrading that men of the same English race should destroy each other. The present strife was more unnatural, and all who were not maddened by excitement felt that victory on either side must be mingled with regret.

492. In the east **the main field of war** was Virginia; in the west, at first, Missouri. Though the latter State had voted against secession, it contained a strong Confederate party, and sixty battles were fought upon its soil within a year. In the part of Virginia west of the Alleghanies a majority of the people were attached to the Union. In 1861–62 the necessary steps for organization were taken, and the separate State of *West Virginia* was admitted to the United States in June, 1863. Meanwhile General McClellan, with his Union army, gained repeated victories over the Confederate generals Garnett, Floyd, and Colonel Lee, who sought to retain West Virginia by force.

P. G. T. Beauregard

493. **Richmond,** the capital of old Virginia, was also the capital of the Confederate States. The Southern cry, "On to Washington!" was echoed by the Northern shout, "On to Richmond!" The most serious battle of the year took place at *Bull Run*, on Sunday, July 21. General Beauregard[3] commanded the Confederate army of about 30,000 men. General McDowell's forces consisted of a nearly equal number, composed mainly of volunteers for ninety days; he had, however, one battalion of regulars and a few regiments of three-years' men. For six hours the Northern men stood their ground, and kept or regained all their positions. The Confederates were once broken and driven a mile and a half from the field; but they were rallied by General T. J. Jackson, whose inflexible bravery there won for him the name of "Stonewall" Jackson.



Irvin McDowell

494. **A Southern Victory.**—At the moment when the Confederate cause seemed lost, suddenly Generals Kirby Smith and Early arrived with fresh forces for its rescue. The Union

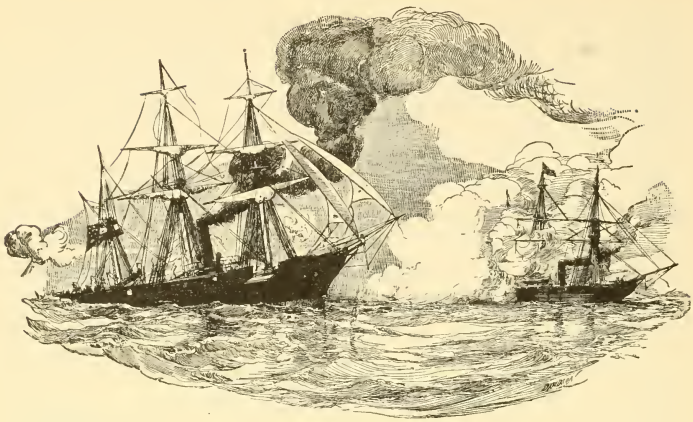
troops, exhausted by intense heat and furious fighting, were thrown into confusion, and battle was changed to flight. A confused throng of fugitives filled all the roads to Washington, and never rested until they were safely over the Long Bridge across the Potomac.

495. According to Mr. Pollard, the Southern historian, the victory at Bull Run was a misfortune to the Confederacy, for it led to ill-grounded confidence. Southern volunteers left the army in crowds, thinking that the war was over. The National government was roused to more serious effort. Congress voted five hundred millions of dollars and half a million of men. General George B. McClellan,[4] who had distinguished himself in West Virginia, was called to command the Army of the Potomac; and when, a few months later, General Scott retired from active service, McClellan became commander-in-chief of all the land forces of the United States.

496. Of the national navy only one war-steamer was on the Atlantic coast, and there was not a gun on the Mississippi or any of its branches. With wonderful energy the government formed a great steam-navy to blockade the Southern ports, and a fleet of gun-boats to guard the Mississippi. Though European governments declared that a blockade of so long a coast-line could never be enforced, they acknowledged within a few months that it was complete and effective.

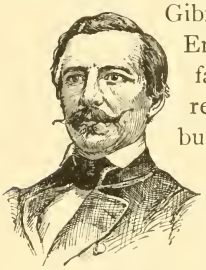
497. The Blockade.—The South had been used to receive all made goods from Europe in exchange for her cotton and other products of the soil. Now that she was cut off from commerce with the civilized world, cotton could not go out and cannon could not come in; and though she had begun the war with large supplies of money and material, its continuance must depend on breaking, or "running," the blockade.

498. Many a spirited chase occurred between the national steamers and the low, light, neutral-colored craft which swarmed in bays and sounds, and slipped out at night bound



The Alabama and the Kearsarge.

for the West Indies or for Europe. The Confederacy issued "letters of marque" to privateers, who made reprisals upon Northern commerce. Captain Semmes,[5] of the *Sumter*, had many successes; but at length he was blockaded in the port of Gibraltar, until he sold his vessel and went to England to buy a new one. This was the far-famed *Alabama*, so called, though she was registered only by her number, 290, on the builder's list. In her cruise of twenty months she almost drove American commerce from the sea, destroying sixty-five vessels and property worth $10,000,000. She was sunk at last in a battle with the United States war-steamer *Kearsarge*, commanded by Captain Winslow, off the coast of France, June, 1864.



Raphael Semmes.

499. **Messrs. Mason and Slidell,** envoys to England and France from the new Confederacy, were taken in the Bahama Channel from the English mail-steamer *Trent*, by Captain Wilkes, of the United States steam sloop-of-war *San Jacinto*. Great wrath was expressed at this "insult to the

Nov., 1861.

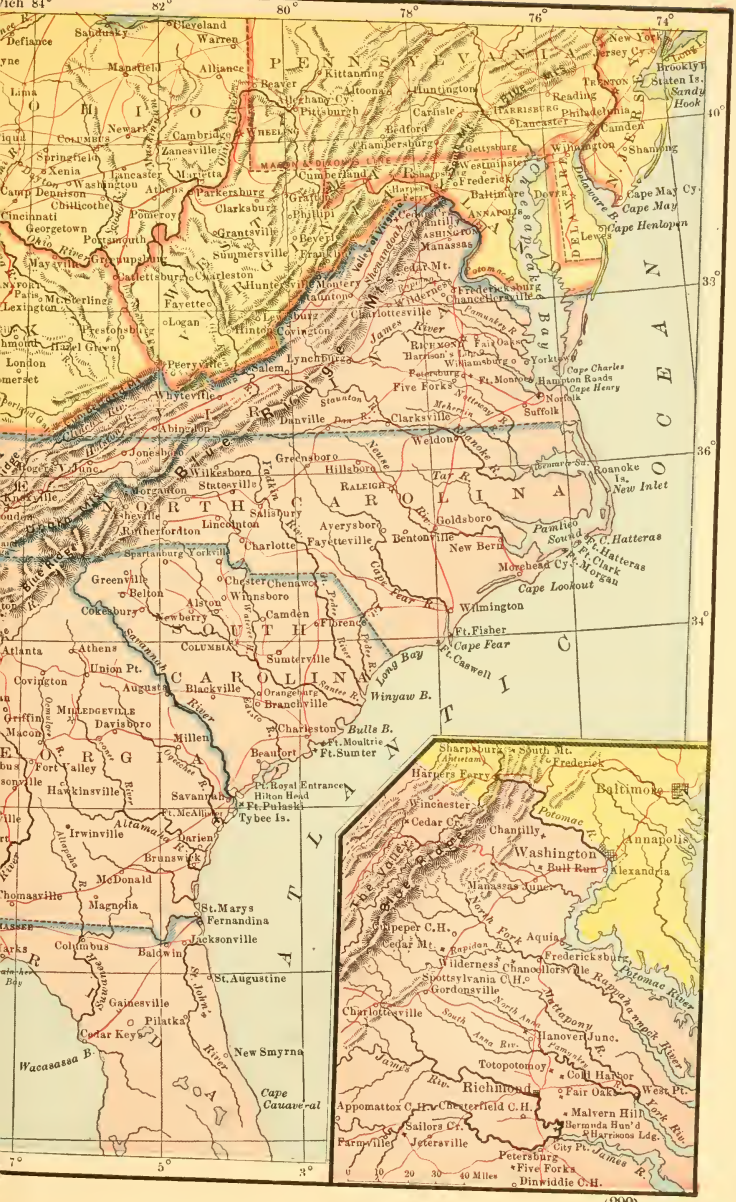
British flag," and it was predicted that England within twenty days would break the blockade and declare war against the United States.

500. End of the Trent Affair.—The Federal government, however, promptly disavowed the act of Captain Wilkes, and set the envoys at liberty, having no mind to assert a "right of search" which had been so justly resented when exercised by Great Britain before 1812 (§ 367). France, England, and Spain had proclaimed neutrality toward both "belligerent powers," thus recognizing the Confederacy as on nearly the same footing as the United States. In fact, the Confederacy was most favored, for ships built, manned, and equipped for her service in British yards were permitted to slip out of English harbors protected by the British flag, and meet their Confederate captains at the Azores or elsewhere. Our minister at London called the attention of the English government to these unfriendly proceedings, but the vessels were not detained. See, however, § 597.

501. Before the end of 1861 the National government had regained a considerable part of the Atlantic coast by the capture of the forts at Hatteras Inlet and Port Royal Entrance, and the occupation of Tybee Island, near the mouth of Savannah River. The army, which had numbered 16,000 at the beginning of the year, had risen to 600,000 by the first of December, and the Secretary of War announced that the government was able not only to protect itself, but to attack any foreign power which should undertake to meddle with our affairs.

Questions.—Name fifteen Presidents before 1861. What did the sixteenth President say on taking office? What followed the fall of Fort Sumter? What was done in Missouri? What, in Virginia? Describe the battle of Bull Run and its consequences. What was done by the Navy Department? What, by Confederate privateers and cruisers? What action was taken by foreign governments? What resulted from the first year of the war?

MAP Nº 8.
THE CIVIL WAR.
By Russell Hinman C.E.
0 50 100 150 200 250 Miles
Longitude West of
Eclectic U.S. History Map No.8.Chap. XXXIV-XI.
(298)



PENNSYLVANIA
OHIO
WEST VIRGINIA
VIRGINIA
NORTH CAROLINA
SOUTH CAROLINA
GEORGIA
ATLANTIC OCEAN
Blue Ridge
Cumberland Mts.
Valley of Virginia
Shenandoah
Chesapeake Bay
Delaware B.
Cape May
Cape Henlopen
Cape Charles
Cape Henry
Cape Fear
Cape Lookout
Cape Cauaveral
Sandy Hook
Long Bay
Winyaw B.
Bulls B.
Wacasassa B.
Pamlico Sound
Ohio River
Potomac R.
James River
Roanoke R.
Tar R.
Neuse R.
Cape Fear R.
Savannah River
Altamaha R.
St. John's River
Sharpsburg (Antietam)
South Mt.
Frederick
Harpers Ferry
Winchester
Cedar Cr.
Chantilly
Washington
Bull Run
Alexandria
Annapolis
Baltimore
Manassas Junc.
Culpeper C.H.
Cedar Mt.
Rapidan R.
Aquia
Fredericksburg
Wilderness
Chancellorsville
Spottsylvania C.H.
Gordonsville
Charlottesville
Hanover Junc.
Totopotomoy
Cold Harbor
Richmond
Fair Oaks
West Pt.
Appomattox C.H.
Chesterfield C.H.
Malvern Hill
Bermuda Hun'd
Harrisons Ldg.
Sailors Cr.
Farmville
Jetersville
City Pt.
Petersburg
Five Forks
Dinwiddie C.H.
Potomac River
Rappahannock River
Mattapony R.
North Fork
South Anna Riv.
James Riv.
York Riv.
0 10 20 30 40 Miles

Map Exercise.—Point out eleven seceded States. Four southern border States that did not secede. One new State and its boundaries. Fort Sumter. Norfolk. Harper's Ferry. Hatteras Inlet. Port Royal Entrance. Tybee Island.

NOTES.

1. ABRAHAM LINCOLN (1809–1865), was born in Hardin (now Larue) County, Ky. His father could neither read nor write; when his son was in his eighth year he migrated to the backwoods of Indiana, and, later, to Illinois. In the succeeding years we find Abraham employed variously as a farm laborer, flatboatman, clerk, surveyor, postmaster, and river pilot. He faithfully used his scanty means for self-improvement, studying by the light of a pine torch after the hard labors of the day. During the Black Hawk War (§ 418) he served as captain, and on his return, becoming interested in politics, he was elected to the Illinois State legislature in 1834. In the midst of his varied occupations he managed to study law, and was admitted to the bar in 1837. He settled at Springfield, Illinois, where he gained a great reputation as a lawyer. He took a prominent part in the Presidential campaigns of 1840 and 1844, and was elected to the House of Representatives in 1846. After the repeal of the Missouri Compromise (§ 402), he was called upon to reply to a speech made by Stephen A. Douglas at Springfield, Ill., in support of the Kansas-Nebraska bill. The contest between these two for the United States Senatorship resulted in Douglas's favor, but brought Lincoln prominently before the country, and led to his nomination in 1860 for the Presidency. In appearance, as in character, Lincoln was a most remarkable man. He was six feet four inches high, gaunt and rugged, a fitting type of the class from which he sprang. But the rough exterior covered a noble mind, and a heart that bore "malice toward none, with charity for all." In his death the South felt that it had lost its best friend; the North, its grandest President; and the colored people, their emancipator. His name is fitly coupled with that of Washington, and "The Martyred President" will ever remain sacred in the memory of the American people.

2. WILLIAM HENRY SEWARD (1801–1872), was born in Florida, Orange County, New York, and after graduating at Union College commenced the practice of law. He was soon drawn into politics, and before he was thirty years of age was elected to the State senate. From this time forward we find him prominent in the councils of both State and nation. Twenty-four years of his life were spent in the three important posts of governor of New York, Senator in Congress, and Secretary of State. In the latter position he had the most difficult office to fill in Lincoln's cabinet, owing to the great importance at that time attached to our foreign relations. His keen, far-seeing judgment, and prompt, decisive action justified the President's selection. Mr. Seward was a man of

great perseverance and courage. While these qualities made him respected and admired by his friends, they roused the most bitter feelings in his opponents; and during the latter part of his political career, as an adherent of Andrew Johnson, he was repeatedly subject to savage attacks even by his own political party. Seward spent the declining years of his life in a trip around the world. This was followed on his return by the publication of a book describing his travels. He died at Auburn, New York, in the seventy-second year of his age.

3. General Pierre Gustave Toutant Beauregard, one of the most prominent and efficient generals of the South, was born near New Orleans, in 1818, and was educated at West Point, where he graduated in 1838. He was twice brevetted for gallant service in the Mexican War, first as a captain and afterwards as a major. At the close of that war he was made a member of a special board of engineers for the improvement of harbors and rivers, and the erection of defenses on the Gulf of Mexico. Later he had charge of the construction of the custom-house, quarantine warehouses, and marine hospital at New Orleans. In January, 1861, he was appointed superintendent of West Point, but almost immediately resigned the position and entered the army of the Confederacy with the rank of brigadier-general. At the time of the surrender he had attained the highest possible rank. He then retired to private life in New Orleans. He died in 1893.

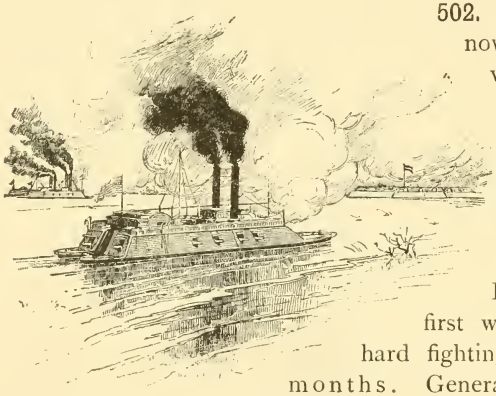
4. General George Brinton McClellan was born in Philadelphia in 1826, and graduated at West Point with high honors. He saw his first active service in the war with Mexico, where he distinguished himself for gallant conduct, and was brevetted first lieutenant and captain. The government appointed him on a commission to visit the seat of the Crimean War in 1855, and on his return published his official report on the "Organization of European Armies, and Operations in the Crimea." In 1857 he resigned from the army, and interested himself in various railroad enterprises until the breaking out of the Civil War. Much dissatisfaction was felt at his dilatory conduct of the war in Virginia, and he was finally ordered, on November 7, 1862, to proceed to Trenton, N. J., and there await further orders. He took no further part in the war, and resigned his position in the army on November 8, 1864, the day he was defeated as the Democratic nominee for President. For the three years succeeding January 1, 1878, he was governor of New Jersey. He died October 29, 1885.

5. Raphael Semmes was born in Charles County, Maryland, in 1809, and entered the navy as a midshipman in 1826. He gained his first experience in the Mexican War, where he served both on board ship and on shore. He published several works giving accounts of the Mexican War, and the exploits of the *Sumter* and *Alabama*. He died in 1877.

CHAPTER XXXVI.

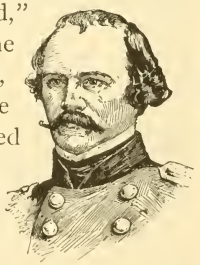
NINETEENTH TERM — EVENTS OF 1862.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, *President.* HANNIBAL HAMLIN, *Vice-President.*



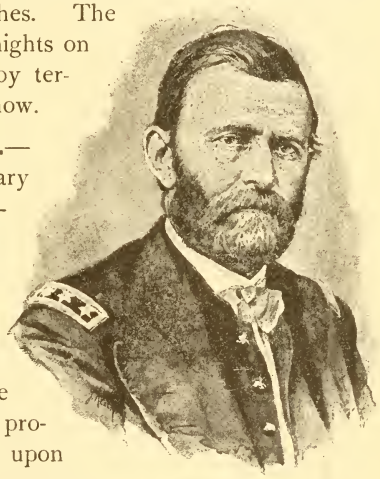
Bombardment of Fort Henry.

502. Three objects were now kept steadily in view by the Union generals: (1) The opening of the Mississippi River; (2) The recovery of the coast; and (3) The capture of Richmond. The first was done by very hard fighting during eighteen months. General Albert Sidney Johnston[1] commanded the Confederate forces in the West. His main task was to guard the "Memphis and Charleston Railroad," which connected the country west of the Mississippi with Richmond and the coast, and carried supplies of Texan beef to the Southern army. His line of defense reached from Columbus to Bowling Green in Kentucky; and its strongest points were near the center of the line,—at Fort Henry, on the Tennessee, and at Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland River.



A. S. Johnston.

503. Fort Henry was first attacked by the Union gun-boats under Commodore Foote,[2] and was taken after an hour's fighting; but the garrison made good its retreat to the stronger works of *Fort Donelson*. This was besieged by General Grant with a Union army, in concert with the gun-boats which arrived two days later up the Cumberland. Feb. 12, 1862. An attack was made, but a heavy cannonade from the fort drove back the gun-boats, and Commodore Foote received a serious wound. Early the next morning the besieged attempted to break through the besieging lines and escape to Nashville; but though the fight was desperate, they were defeated and driven within their trenches. The national soldiers lay three nights on the frozen ground, pelted by terrible storms of sleet and snow.



General U. S Grant.

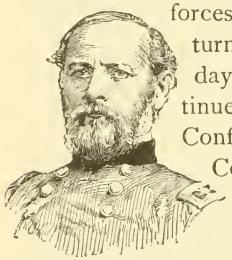
504. Surrender of Donelson.— Before daylight of February 15, General Buckner, commanding the fort, sent to ask what terms of capitulation would be accepted. Grant replied, "No terms except an unconditional and immediate surrender can be accepted"; and added, "I propose to move immediately upon your works." Fort Donelson was surrendered with 15,000 men, and the line of defense thus broken was necessarily given up. Nashville, Columbus, and Bowling Green were occupied by Union troops, and the Mississippi was open as far south as Arkansas.

505. Grant was placed in command of the new military department of *Western Tennessee*, and the field of action was removed to the southern border of that State. The Memphis and

Charleston Railroad was now the direct object of attack, especially at Corinth, where it crosses the Mobile and Ohio Railroad. Ascending the Tennessee River, Grant posted himself near Pittsburg Landing, at Shiloh, awaiting re-enforcements from Buell.

506. **Battle of Shiloh.**—Here he was attacked by generals Johnston and Beauregard with a fine Confederate army of 40,000 men. The battle raged all day mainly to the advantage of the assailants, who took the Union camp, with thirty flags, 3,000 prisoners, and an immense quantity of war-materials. They fell back, however, with the loss of their general-in-chief, while generals Grant and Sherman rallied the Union forces, many of whom had never been under fire before, and saved the first day's battle from being an utter rout.

507. The next morning the fight was renewed. Buell's fresh forces had arrived upon the field, and the tide turned in favor of the Federals. The second day's battle began before sunrise and continued until late in the afternoon. At last the Confederates retreated in good order toward Corinth, and Grant remained in possession of the field. Island Number Ten was surrendered on the same day, after a three-weeks' bombardment, and its garrison of 5,000 men became prisoners of war.



Don Carlos Buell.

April 7, 1862.

508. **A battle on the Mississippi** between the Union gun-boats and the Confederate iron-clads resulted in victory to the former. Fort Pillow was abandoned, Memphis was taken, and the great river was open to the Union forces as far south as Vicksburg. All Kentucky and the western half of Tennessee were regained by the Union. Beauregard abandoned Corinth, and fell back on his third line of defense, extending through central Mississippi to Alabama. During this

May 10, 1862.

grand campaign for the Mississippi and the railway connections in the South, the war in Missouri had been ended by the expulsion of General Price and the defeat of his army,—now commanded by General Van Dorn,—at Pea Ridge, in Arkansas. The Confederates had increased their numbers by several thousands of Indians; but these were thrown into confusion by the terrific roar and fatal effects of the Federal artillery, so that they were no help to their allies.

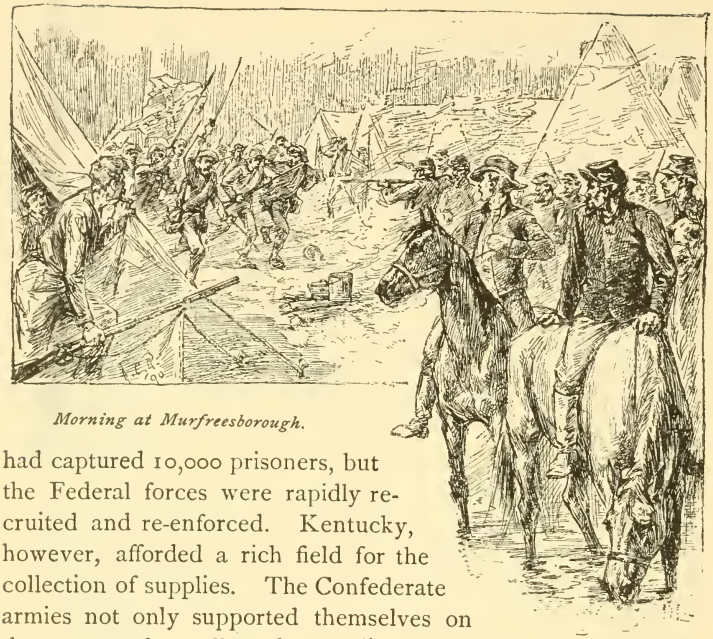
Braxton Bragg.

509. A Double Movement.—"The war was in truth a vast siege," but the South was unwilling to have it so. After a preliminary raid by Morgan[3] in Kentucky, a double movement was made to break through the besieging lines and carry the conflict into the North. On the same day, Lee moved into Maryland and Bragg[4] into Kentucky. They hoped to secure those border States,—whose people were almost equally divided in sympathy between the Union and the Confederacy,—and then march on to dictate terms of peace in Philadelphia or New York. We will follow the western movement first. (See § 525.)

Sept. 5.

510. The Campaign in Kentucky.—Bragg marched from Chattanooga to Frankfort, pursued by Buell, whose force was increased by all the men that Grant could spare. General Kirby Smith defeated a Union army at Richmond, Ky., and threatened Cincinnati. The first object of both Confederate generals was Louisville; but this was saved by the arrival of Buell a few hours in advance, and the invasion of the North was abandoned. Bragg and Smith set up a provisional government at Frankfort, and urged all the people of Kentucky to join the cause of the Confederacy.

511. The Confederate generals enlisted many Kentucky recruits; but these gains were more than offset by the number of soldiers who dropped out in the long and swift marches. They



Morning at Murfreesborough.

had captured 10,000 prisoners, but the Federal forces were rapidly recruited and re-enforced. Kentucky, however, afforded a rich field for the collection of supplies. The Confederate armies not only supported themselves on the country, but collected much live-stock and vast quantities of stores.

512. Perryville.—As Buell's forces advanced from Louisville, they met part of Bragg's army near *Perryville*, where a fierce battle was fought. The Confederates held the field, but soon withdrew. The two Confederate armies, opposed by greatly superior numbers, effected their retreat with a "wagon-train forty miles long," laden with the spoils of the State. While Grant's army in Mississippi was weakened (§ 510) by the withdrawal of Buell's force, the Confederates attacked *Corinth* after a slight engagement at *Iuka*. They were defeated at both places.

Oct. 8.

Oct. 3.

Sept. 19.

513. Murfreesborough.—Neither government was satisfied with the campaign in Kentucky. Buell was superseded by Rose-

crans, and Bragg was ordered northward again to finish his work. On the last day of 1862 the two armies met before *Murfreesborough*, in Tennessee. At first the Confederates prevailed, but the firmness of generals Sheridan and Hazen saved the Union cause. The carnage was frightful; and during New Year's day, 1863, "the two armies, breathless with their death struggle, stood looking at each other." The fight was renewed January 2,—the next day. Bragg retreated, and another costly victory had been won by the Federals.

Farragut Passing the Forts.

514. On the lower Mississippi, meanwhile, yet more important events had taken place. Early in April Captain Farragut,[5] with a fleet of armed steamers and mortar-boats, helped by a land force under General Butler, undertook the capture of New Orleans. This largest and richest city of the Confederacy was defended by two great forts seventy miles down the river; below these a strong iron chain stretched across the river from bank to bank; and the space between the forts and the chain was guarded by gun-boats, fire-rafts, and a floating battery.

515. Surrender of New Orleans.—A heavy cannonade from the fleet did not seem to harm the forts, and Farragut determined to pass them. Protecting his gun-boats with iron chains and bags of sand hung over their sides, he steamed boldly up the

David G. Farragut.

river, met and destroyed twelve of the thirteen Confederate armed steamers, and advanced to the city. Trusting in the river defenses, the commandant at New Orleans had sent a large part of his troops to help Beauregard and Bragg. As soon as the Union fleet came in sight, fire was set to the immense stores of cotton, and to the ships, gun-boats, steamers, and docks. General Butler took possession of the city. The forts and fleet below were soon afterwards surrendered. Farragut, sailing up the river, captured Baton Rouge and Natchez, and, passing the guns of Vicksburg, joined the Union fleet above.

Questions.—Of what importance were railroads in the defense of the South? Why was Johnston's first line of defense given up? Describe Grant's campaign in Tennessee. What was done on the Mississippi meanwhile? What, in Missouri? What two invasions of the North were planned? What was done in Kentucky? What, in Mississippi and Tennessee? Describe the campaign about New Orleans.

Map Exercise.—On Map VIII., show four chief points in Johnston's first line of defense. Point out Nashville. Corinth. Pittsburg Landing. Island Number Ten. Fort Pillow. Memphis. Richmond. Louisville, Perryville, and Frankfort in Kentucky. Chattanooga and Murfreesborough in Tennessee. Iuka and Vicksburg in Mississippi. New Orleans. Baton Rouge. Natchez.

Points for Essays.—Description of an invaded country. A letter from camp:—from a camp hospital.

NOTES.

1. ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON (1803–1862), was born in Mason County, Kentucky. He graduated at West Point in 1826, and saw active service in the Black Hawk War. He then resigned and went to Texas, where he attained chief command of the Texan forces. He also served as a volunteer in the war between the United States and Mexico, and in 1849 re-entered the regular army with the rank of major. At the breaking out of the Civil War he had attained the rank of brevet brigadier-general, bestowed for meritorious service in Utah.

He would doubtless have borne a more conspicuous part in the war but for his early fall at Shiloh.

2. ANDREW HULL FOOTE (1806–1863), was born in New Haven, Connecticut, and entered the navy, 1822. In 1861 he was made flag-officer of the Western naval fleet, and personally conducted the building of the gun-boats to be used. Through neglecting his wound received at Fort Donelson he nearly lost his life. He was made a rear-admiral, and in May, 1863, was ordered to take command of the South Atlantic Squadron; but while on his way to do so he was taken suddenly ill in New York, and died. Admiral Foote was a man of great moral as well as physical courage, and did much to improve the character of those under his command.

3. JOHN HUNT MORGAN (1826-1864), was born in Alabama, but settled in Kentucky in early childhood. He served as a lieutenant of cavalry in the war with Mexico. General Morgan's first Kentucky raid (July, 1862), was on a comparatively small scale; but in this and later raids he destroyed millions of dollars' worth of Federal military stores, crippled railroads at many places, and made necessary the employment of thousands of Federal troops as garrisons of important towns. Few cavalry leaders have ever equaled him in gallantry and daring.

4. GENERAL BRAXTON BRAGG (1817-1876), was born in Warren County, North Carolina, and was educated at West Point. In the Mexican War he was brevetted on three separate occasions for gallant conduct. At the opening of the Civil War he was made a brigadier-general in the Confederate army, and on the death of A. S. Johnston at Shiloh succeeded him in command, with the full rank of general. After his defeat at Mission Ridge he was called to Richmond as military adviser to the Confederate President, with whom he was a great favorite. At the close of the Civil War he was engaged as chief engineer in the improvements in Mobile Bay.

5. DAVID GLASGOW FARRAGUT (1801–1870), was the most illustrious naval officer of the Union in the Civil War. His naval career began at the early age of eleven, when he served on board the *Essex* in the War of 1812 (§ 379). He then received the highest praise from Commodore Porter in his official report of a battle with the British *Argus*, and would have been promoted in rank had he been old enough to allow of it. Aside from an attack on and capture of a pirate stronghold in Cuba, in 1823, Farragut saw no active service until the war broke out in 1861, when he had advanced to the rank of captain. He received the thanks of Congress for his gallant capture of New Orleans, and was placed first on the list of rear-admirals. After the capture of Mobile (§ 560) Farragut again received the thanks of Congress, and a new grade of rank, that of vice-admiral, was created for him; this was followed in July, 1866, by the creation of the still higher rank of Admiral, which was conferred on him as a mark of most distinguished honor. The following year Farragut joined the European squadron, to the command of which he had been appointed, and everywhere received marks of the highest respect from the foreign powers. After his return from this command his health began to fail, and, while on a journey for its improvement, he died at the Portsmouth navy-yard.

CHAPTER XXXVII.

NINETEENTH TERM — EVENTS OF 1862 (*Continued*).

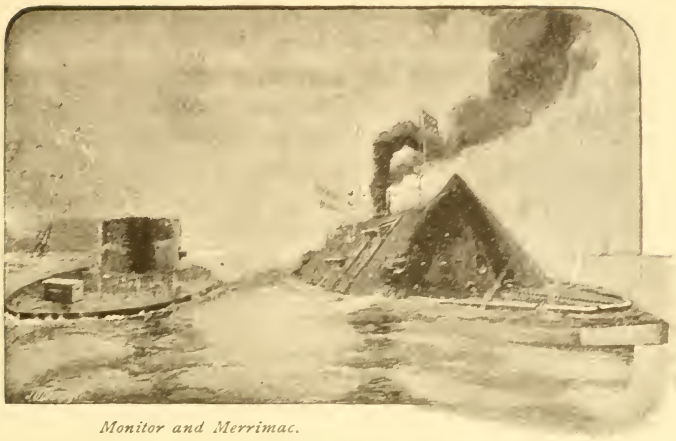
ABRAHAM LINCOLN, *President.* HANNIBAL HAMLIN, *Vice-President.*

John Ericsson

516. ON the 8th of March, 1862, a strange-looking craft appeared in Hampton Roads. It was the old United States steamer *Merrimac*, now in Confederate service, cut down to the water's edge and fitted with a steel prow and a sloping iron roof. Steering directly for the sloop-of-war *Cumberland*, it so disabled her by one blow of its steel beak that she sank, with her flag flying and with all her men on board.[1]

517. The United States frigate *Congress* was next attacked. She was run ashore, but the *Merrimac* poured into her such a storm of shot and shell that she was forced to surrender. The new sea-monster then retired to Norfolk, intending to complete its work of destruction the next day. Early in the morning it steamed out again, and approached the steam-frigate *Minnesota;* but before it had fired a gun a new champion appeared upon the scene.

518. It was the iron-clad *Monitor*, built by John Ericsson,[2] which had arrived from New York during the night, just in time for its first trial of strength. Its deck near the surface of the water was protected by a heavy iron coating; above this was a round iron tower, which, slowly revolving, turned its two enormous guns in every direction. The duel between these odd antagonists was not unlike David fighting Goliath, for the



Monitor and Merrimac.

Monitor was less than one fifth the size of the *Merrimac*. But the shot and shells of the latter rolled harmlessly off the iron coat of her little opponent, while her huge beak could not reach the tower. The *Monitor* glided nimbly away from every charge, and found out every weak spot in the *Merrimac's* armor, where a heavy ball from her guns could make a leak.

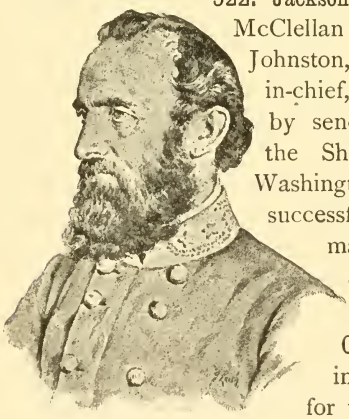
519. At length, unable either to silence her assailant or to engage any other vessel while she was present, the *Merrimac* withdrew to Norfolk for repairs. She was blown up by the Confederates two months later, on the surrender of Norfolk to the United States. The national government immediately contracted with Captain Ericsson for a fleet of "Monitors," which effectually defended the coast, and made the United States for a time the greatest naval power in the world.

Geo. B. McClellan.

520. **The movement toward Richmond** by the Union forces was attended with tremendous difficulties and losses, and no favorable result.

A march to Manassas was rewarded only by the capture of Quaker guns[3] and an empty camp. The Army of the Potomac was then removed to Fortress Monroe, and spent a month and more digging intrenchments—and graves—in the deep mud of the peninsula which had witnessed the surrender of Cornwallis (§ 304). When, at length, the Federals were ready to assault Yorktown, the Confederates again escaped them, and retreated toward Richmond.

521. A battle at Williamsburg resulted in loss to both and gain to neither party, except that the Confederate general succeeded in carrying away his baggage-train. The Federals kept the hard-won field, and buried their dead. McClellan then slowly advanced, and after two weeks saw the spires and roofs of Richmond. The Confederate Congress hastily adjourned, and a mass of retreating fugitives clogged all the roads to the southward.



"Stonewall" Jackson.

522. Jackson's Valley Campaign.—But while McClellan awaited re-enforcements, J. E. Johnston, the Confederate commander-in-chief, warded off his intended blow by sending "Stonewall" Jackson up the Shenandoah Valley to threaten Washington. This brilliant dash was successful in preventing McDowell's march to the aid of McClellan, and the attack upon Richmond.

523. A two-days' battle at Fair Oaks would probably have ended in victory to the Confederates but for the disabling of their chief by a serious wound. General Robert E. Lee,[4] who succeeded him, had time to raise immense numbers of recruits and strengthen the defenses of Richmond; and by cutting off McClellan from his supplies, forced him to move his army to the James. This difficult movement was only made

with seven days' tremendous fighting, usually successful, but fearfully costly of life. The Federal army, still outnumbering its enemy, then posted itself at Harrison's Landing below Richmond.

John Pope.

524. **Washington** was now seriously threatened. Lee left a small force to face McClellan on the Peninsula, and turned quickly to the north. General Pope, commanding the Union forces in northern Virginia, was defeated at *Cedar Mountain*, and three weeks later had to meet the whole army of Lee on the old battle-field of *Bull Run*.

Aug. 29, 30. Two days' fighting ended in a severe defeat of the Federals; and, after another sharp conflict at *Chantilly*, Pope retreated to Washington and resigned his command.

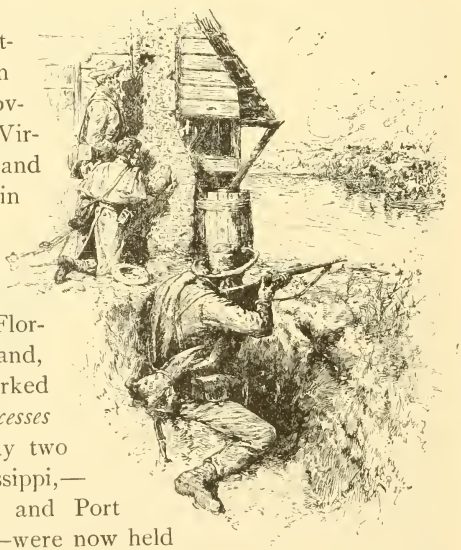
525. **Lee crossed the Potomac** and invaded Maryland, pursued by McClellan, who had restored the Union army to perfect condition after its ruinous campaign. Stonewall Jackson seized Harper's Ferry with its arsenal of cannon and small arms, and twelve thousand Union prisoners; but on the same day Lee was defeated at *South Mountain*, and his northward march was arrested.

526. **Battle of Antietam.**—At Sharpsburg, in the beautiful valley of *Antictam*, one of the most terrific battles of the war was fought, on the 17th of September. For fourteen hours the mountains echoed to the roar of five hundred cannon and mortars, and when night came 25,000 men lay dead or wounded upon the field; but neither side could claim a victory. Lee retreated into Virginia, followed at a distance by McClellan. The Union army was largely re-enforced, and the President expected and ordered a vigorous pursuit of the late invaders; but this was not made, and McClellan was soon afterward relieved of command by General Burnside of Rhode Island.

Robert E. Lee

527. **Battle of Fredericksburg.**—Burnside advanced in December to attack the strong Confederate works in the rear of Fredericksburg on the Rappahannock near the top of a steep hill. The assault was made with splendid courage and steadiness, and was five times renewed under a storm of cannon-balls; but it was repulsed with a loss of twelve thousand Union men.

528. **General Results.**—The year had been, on the whole, *unfavorable to the Federals in the East*, though the control of the Atlantic coast had been extended by the recovery of Norfolk in Virginia, of Roanoke Island and several points in North Carolina, of Fort Pulaski near Savannah, and of the eastern ports of Florida. On the other hand, the year had been marked by *great Federal successes in the West*, and only two posts on the Mississippi,—Vicksburg and Port Hudson,—were now held by the Confederacy. The operations



Sharp-shooters at Fredericksburg.

Dec. 20, 1862.

against Vicksburg were checked for a time by the destruction of Grant's magazines of supplies at *Holly Springs*, in Mississippi, by General Van Dorn and his cavalry. Fifteen hundred prisoners were taken, and the property destroyed was variously valued at from one to four millions of dollars.

Questions.—Tell the story of the *Merrimac*, the *Cumberland*, and the *Monitor*. Describe the movements of the armies in Virginia. What battles were fought in Lee's invasion of Maryland? What gains and losses during the year 1862?

Map Exercise.—Point out Hampton Roads. Fortress Monroe. Yorktown. Williamsburg. Potomac, Rappahannock, and James rivers. The Shenandoah. Fair Oaks. Cedar Mountain. Manassas. Sharpsburg. Fredericksburg. Posts gained by Union forces in 1862 (§ 528). Two Confederate strongholds on the Mississippi. Holly Springs.

Point for Essay.—Two pictures of the upper Potomac valley in peace and in war.

For references to reading upon the Civil War, see end of Chapter XL.

NOTES.

1. "Through the hole she had made, large enough for a man to enter, the water poured in. In vain Lieutenant Morris, who commanded the *Cumberland*, worked the pumps to keep her afloat a few moments more, hoping that a lucky shot might find some weaker place [in the *Merrimac*]. He only abandoned his guns, as, one after another, the settling of the sinking ship swamped them in the water. The last shot was fired by Matthew Tenney from a gun on a level with the water. That brave man then attempted to escape through the port-hole, but was borne back by the incoming rush, and went down with the ship. With him went down nearly one hundred dead, sick, wounded, and those who, like him, could not extricate themselves. The *Cumberland* sank in fifty-four feet of water. The commander of her assailant saw the flag of the unconquered but sunken ship still flying above the surface."—*Draper.*

2. JOHN ERICSSON was born in 1803, in Sweden; and at an early age displayed great mechanical ability. After serving some years as an engineer in the Swedish army, he went to England, where he introduced several important inventions. These attracted great attention and gained the inventor several medals and prizes. His scheme of the propeller not being well received, however, he came to the United States in 1839, and two years later built a war-steamer, the *Princeton*, for the government, which was the first steamship ever built with the

propeller machinery. This vessel was also furnished with numerous other ingenious contrivances of Ericsson's which have since come into common use. The application of the revolving turret to war-vessels, however, is the most important of Ericsson's works, and has caused a complete change in the naval architecture of the world. Ericsson died in 1889.

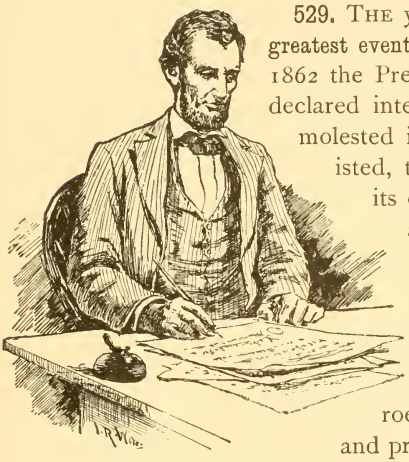
3. "QUAKER GUNS" are wooden imitations of cannon, frequently used to deceive an enemy as to the strength of a position.

4. ROBERT EDWARD LEE (1807–1870), was one of the ablest generals of the Civil War. He was born at Stratford House, Westmoreland County, Va., and graduated, second in his class, at West Point in 1829. He was employed in the most responsible positions even in times of peace, and when war was declared against Mexico he was appointed chief engineer. At the close of the war he was recognized by the army as the fitting successor of General Scott whenever the latter should retire from the head of the army. In a letter written at the outbreak of the war he says: "The whole South is in a state of revolution, into which Virginia, after a long struggle, has been drawn; and though I recognize no necessity for this state of things, and would have forborne and pleaded to the end for redress of grievances, real or supposed, yet in my own person I had to meet the question whether I would take part against my native State. With all my devotion to the Union, and the feeling of loyalty and duty of an American citizen, I have not been able to make up my mind to raise my hand against my relatives, my children, and my home." During the first year of the war Lee was kept in the background; but on his appointment as commander-in-chief, in 1862, new life was infused into the armies under him, and that energy which never flagged to the bitter end began to make itself felt. Although outnumbered, he kept up the unequal fight for three years, and usually inflicted far heavier losses than he received. The war left him homeless and penniless, and he gladly accepted the presidency of the "Washington and Lee University," at Lexington, Va. Here, after a quiet, useful life of five years, he died. It is worthy of record that during these last years he used all his influence, in a quiet way, to remove the bitter sectional feelings induced by the war.

CHAPTER XXXVIII.

NINETEENTH TERM — EVENTS OF 1863.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, *President.* HANNIBAL HAMLIN, *Vice-President.*



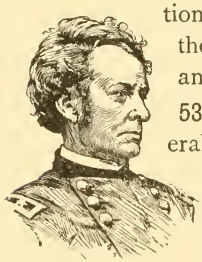
Freeing the Slaves.

529. THE year 1863 opened with the greatest event of the war. Until July of 1862 the President had acted upon his declared intention to leave slavery unmolested in the States where it existed, though pledged to prevent its extension into new States and Territories. General Butler had indeed confiscated the negroes whom he found employed upon the Confederate earthworks near Fortress Monroe, and they had been fed and protected as Union refugees. But when Frémont, in Missouri, and other generals, had undertaken to free the slaves of those who were fighting against the government, the President had disapproved and reversed their action.

530. President Lincoln, acting by virtue of his position as commander in chief of the Federal army and navy, now decided to set free the slaves in the Confederacy, as a measure of war. On the 22d of September, 1862, five days after the battle of Antietam, he issued a proclamation declaring that after

one hundred days "all persons held as slaves within any State, or designated part of a State, the people whereof shall then be in rebellion against the United States, shall be then, thenceforward, and forever, free."

531. **The Emancipation** became effective on the first day of January, 1863. Freedmen were invited to enter the service of the United States both on land and sea. Regiments of colored troops were speedily organized by northern officers in South Carolina and Kansas. Before this time free negroes, though not commonly organized as soldiers, had rendered a great deal of service to the Union armies as laborers on roads and wharves, and about the forts on the southeastern coast. Union generals had admitted crowds of refugees from plantations deserted by their owners, and had made them useful in various ways about their camps. The disadvantages of climate, which preyed upon the health of white soldiers, had no effect upon these able-bodied negroes, who were perfectly accustomed to them, and they rendered valuable service with pickax and spade. The general emancipation gave greater hopes to those who offered themselves for enrollment in the ranks. They were found diligent in drill and proud of their promotion. Within the year 1863 more than fifty thousand colored men had enlisted as soldiers and sailors.



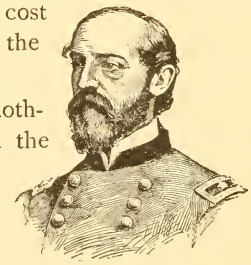
Joseph Hooker.

532. **Chancellorsville.**—In January, 1863, General Hooker[1] succeeded to the command of the Army of the Potomac. He found it greatly demoralized: 80,000 men and 3,000 officers were absent from their posts. More than two hundred men a day were quitting the ranks without leave, and the whole force on the Potomac seemed on the point of melting away. Hooker's severe discipline soon made it the "finest army on the planet." It was defeated, however, in a battle at *Chancellorsville*, (May 2, 3,) with a loss of 17,000 men. To the South the joy of

victory was clouded by the loss of "Stonewall" Jackson,[2] whose impetuous charge with 25,000 men upon the Union right had decided the fortunes of the day. He was returning in the evening to his camp, when he was fired upon through a blunder of some of his own men, and was mortally wounded.

Drafting in New York.

533. New York Riots.—The Southern leaders were now ready for a vigorous invasion of the North, and their cause seemed about to triumph. The time had expired for which a large part of the Union armies had enlisted, and a riot broke out in New York in resistance to a draft. For three days the disorders continued; a colored orphan asylum and an armory were plundered and burned; negroes were assaulted and even killed by the mob. The peace party had gained strength by the long continuance of the war, with its ruinous cost in blood and treasure; and the force of the government was lessened by so much.

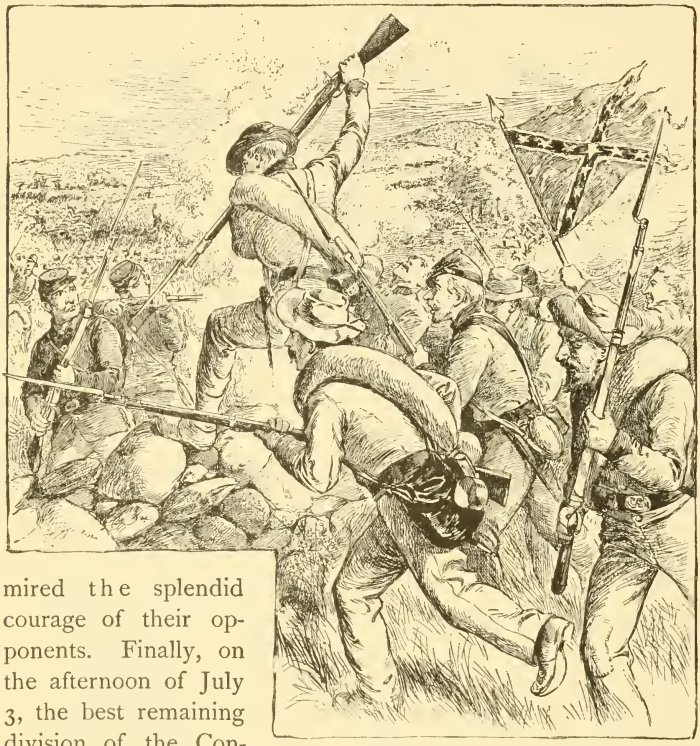


George G. Meade.

534. Invasion of the North.—Perhaps nothing could so have reunited and nerved the Northern people as the actual invasion of their soil. Lee advanced to Chambersburg, in Pennsylvania, and on the 1st of July met the Army of the Potomac at Gettysburg. General Meade[3] was in command, having superseded Hooker only two days before. The Union army was stronger in number[4] than the Confederate

army, and, acting on the defensive, had greatly the advantage in a strong natural position along the crest of Cemetery Ridge.

535. Battle of Gettysburg.—Three days the battle raged which was deciding the fate of a continent. On either side men admired the splendid courage of their opponents. Finally, on the afternoon of July 3, the best remaining division of the Confederate army, 18,000 strong, made a desperate charge upon the center of the Union line, and in the face of a terrible fire forced its way into the very intrenchments. Here fierce hand-to-hand fighting lasted a few minutes, and then the assailants gave way. The Southern loss is said to have been about 25,000 men; that of the North



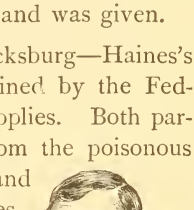
Pickett's Charge at Gettysburg.

was but little less. The battle-field was afterwards consecrated as a national cemetery.

536. **The retreat of Lee and the surrender of Vicksburg** occurred at the same hour, and the result of the war was no longer doubtful. The great stronghold of the Mississippi had been invested by the Federal armies on the 19th of May. Their terrific bombardment on the three following days failed to take the place, and a regular siege began. Citizens refused to leave the town, but dug caves in the damp earth of the hill-sides to avoid the storm of mortar-shells exploding in their streets.

537. The Confederate soldiers, who had been sadly demoralized by five severe defeats within twenty days, recovered themselves within the strong works of Vicksburg. Often their pickets were posted within ten yards of those of the Federals; and, laying aside their arms by mutual consent, the men would spend the night in friendly chat, regardless of the fact that they might be ordered to kill each other before another sun should set. But these informal truces never made either party less brave or less obedient when the stern command was given.

538. **End of the Siege.**—The outworks of Vicksburg—Haines's Bluff and Chickasaw Landing—were soon gained by the Federals, and the latter became their base of supplies. Both parties suffered from want of pure water and from the poisonous air of the swamps during the burning days and chilly nights of June. The Confederates, besides, were pinched with hunger, and exhausted by forty-seven days and nights of constant duty in the trenches, when on the 3d of July General Pemberton proposed a surrender. It took place on the 4th,—15 generals, 31,000 men, and 172 cannon,—the greatest surrender of men and material that had then ever been made in war.



J. C. Pemberton.

539. **Port Hudson**, which had been enduring a similar siege by General Banks, surrendered four days later

July 8.

than Vicksburg. The war was ended on the Mississippi; the divided members of the Confederacy were never reunited; and the great river flowed, free from hostile craft, from Minnesota to the Gulf.

540. Morgan's Raid.—During this eventful month of July the Confederate General Morgan made a dash into Indiana and Ohio with 4,000 cavalry. He entered the former State at Brandenburg, and, after scouring the country around Cincinnati, tried to leave Ohio above Pomeroy. Here, however, Federal gun-boats cut off his retreat, and, hemmed in by the pursuing forces, most of his men were captured. He himself escaped there only to be taken near New Lisbon, O. He was imprisoned at Columbus, but soon escaped.

541. Autumn of 1863.—The most important events of the autumn were in the mountain region of eastern Tennessee and northern Georgia. Throughout the South the people of the mountainous regions were ready to aid and support the National cause; and the government desired to protect them, as well as to hold the great natural barriers between the Atlantic slope and the Mississippi Valley.

542. The cliff, which the Indians had named *Chattanooga*, or Eagle's Nest, rises like a wall about two thousand feet above the banks of the Tennessee. Its English name is Lookout Mountain, while the Indian name of the cliff has been applied to the town near its base. This was and is a great railway center, through which the whole interior of the cotton region is connected with the North. On the east and south lies Missionary Ridge, where French missionaries once held Indian schools.

543. Chickamauga.—General Rosecrans, during the summer of 1863, gained all Tennessee for the Union cause; but in September he was severely defeated on the *Chickamauga River*, in one of the greatest battles of the war. General Bragg had retreated from Chattanooga, but being reenforced he suddenly turned against the pursuing Federals. On

Sept. 19, 20.

Chattanooga from Lookout Mountain.

the second day of the bloody fight, a gap was left in the Federal line, and through this the Confederates charged, sweeping away more than half of the Federal army. The left, under Thomas,[5] stood firm, but withdrew at night. The Federal army was now closely besieged in Chattanooga, and its supplies cut off. At this time Rosecrans was relieved of command; and the three military departments of the Ohio, the Tennessee, and the Cumberland, were united under General Grant. He soon succeeded in getting supplies to the starving National troops.

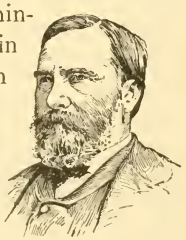
544. Their health and spirits were suddenly restored. General Thomas, who had saved the battle on the Chickamauga

George H. Thomas.

from being a rout, commanded the Army of the Cumberland. General Hooker arrived from Virginia with 23,000 men; Sherman, with four divisions of his victorious army of the Tennessee, came to have part in the decisive battle which was now to be fought for the possession of the gateway to the South.

545. Battle of Lookout Mountain.—On the 23d of November Thomas seized and fortified *Orchard Knob*, advancing the National line one mile beyond that which the Confederates had occupied a few hours before. Here Grant stationed himself to watch the great battle-field thirteen miles in length. The next day Hooker charged up *Lookout Mountain* above the river mists which settled densely in the valley. All the morning the battle raged "above the clouds"; but the victory was complete. The next day Hooker descended the northeastern slope and advanced to the Rossville Gap in Missionary Ridge, while Sherman carried the northern end of the same range, and forced Bragg to weaken his center to save his extreme right.

546. Battle of Missionary Ridge.—While the Confederates were making this difficult movement, the decisive blow was struck by the Army of the Cumberland, which, dashing over the plain at a full run, charged up Missionary Ridge under a plunging fire from the Confederate guns. Fifty-five minutes from their first movement they were in full possession of the ridge; and the cannon at the summit had not cooled when they were wheeled about and fired against their late masters. Sheridan pursued and captured most of the artillery which Bragg had removed.



James Longstreet.

547. Sherman immediately pushed northward to the relief of Burnside, who was shut up in *Knoxville* by General Longstreet.[6] The latter, with superior numbers, attacked Burnside as soon as he heard of the Con-

federate defeat at Chattanooga. Burnside's men fought bravely, though weakened by short rations, and the attack was repulsed. Longstreet abandoned the siege and moved out of his trenches just as Sherman's army came in sight.

Questions.—What change did the war bring about in the condition of negroes in the South? What occurred in Hooker's command? What, in New York? Describe Lee's campaign in Pennsylvania. The siege and capture of Vicksburg. What was done in Ohio? What in southeastern Tennessee?

Map Exercise.—On Map VIII., point out Chancellorsville. Chambersburg. Gettysburg. Vicksburg. Haines's Bluff. Port Hudson. Brandenburg. Cincinnati. Pomeroy. Chattanooga. Knoxville.

NOTES.

1. JOSEPH HOOKER (1814–1879), was born at Hadley, Mass., and graduated at West Point in 1837. His first active service was in the war against the Seminoles. In the Mexican War he was distinguished by three successive brevets, rising to the rank of lieutenant-colonel. In 1853 he resigned from the army and engaged in farming in California. At the outbreak of the war in 1861 he offered his services to the United States, and was appointed brigadier-general of volunteers. Throughout the war he was noted for his personal bravery, and came to be known as "Fighting Joe." He retired in 1868 on the full rank of major-general.

2. THOMAS JONATHAN JACKSON was born in 1824 at Clarksburg, Harrison County, in what is now West Virginia. He graduated at West Point in 1846, but after gallant service in the Mexican War he resigned from the army, having accepted an appointment in the Virginia State Military Institute at Lexington. Here he remained until 1861, when he tendered his services to the Southern Confederacy. He was exactly two years in its service, being placed in command of Harper's Ferry May 2, 1861, and falling at Chancellorsville, May 2, 1863. His firm stand at Bull Run changed the fortunes of the day, and gained for him and his brigade the undying name of "Stonewall." In his "Valley Campaign," with comparatively few soldiers, he struck blow after blow with a rapidity and secrecy that were marvelous, and managed to neutralize a Federal force of 70,000 men. He thus ruined McClellan's general plans, and caused the gravest fears in the North for the safety of Washington.

3. GEORGE GORDON MEADE was born at Cadiz, Spain, in 1815, where his father was at that time United States naval agent. Meade graduated at West Point in 1835, and served with distinction against the Seminoles and in the Mexican War. He was in many of the hardest battles of the Civil War, and at

Antietam had two horses shot under him. For his hard-won victory at Gettysburg he received the thanks of Congress, and many honors were bestowed upon him. The citizens of Philadelphia presented his wife with a house, and after his death in 1872 subscribed a fund of $100,000 for his family.

4. Authorities differ much as to the number of men engaged on either side in this battle as well as in many others. The movements preparatory to a battle are too urgent to admit of careful reports. The Union forces actually engaged have been estimated at 105,000, 95,000, and 82,000; Lee's forces, at 110,000, 73,500, and 68,000. It is impossible to secure absolute accuracy when the estimates of the generals having the fullest knowledge vary so widely.

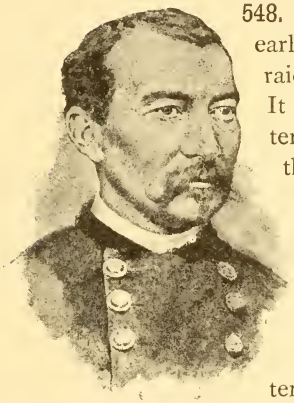
5. GEORGE HENRY THOMAS (1816–1870), was born in Southampton County, Va., and graduated at West Point in 1840. The next year he was brevetted for gallantry in the war with the Seminoles, and during the Mexican War he was advanced to the rank of brevet major. During the five years immediately preceding the Civil War, Thomas, as major of the Second Cavalry, was stationed in Texas. Of this regiment A. S. Johnston was colonel, Robert E. Lee lieutenant-colonel, W. J. Hardee senior major, with Kirby Smith, Fitz Hugh Lee, Hood, and others, who afterwards became prominent on the Southern side. Considering this fact, his surroundings, and the place of his birth, Thomas's adherence to the Union is remarkable. Few generals on either side did better service or so commanded the love and esteem of their subordinates. His stand at Chickamauga after the rout of the right and center, was one of the most heroic events of the war. When peace was declared, Thomas had attained the rank of major-general of the regular army, and it is characteristic of the man that he refused the rank of lieutenant-general, tendered him in 1868, on the ground that he had done nothing since the war to deserve such promotion. Upon his death Congress passed resolutions of sympathy, and military honors accompanied his interment at Troy, New York.

6. JAMES LONGSTREET was born in South Carolina in 1820, but removed with his family during his childhood to Alabama, from which State he received his appointment to West Point. Here he graduated in 1842, and in the Mexican War, which soon followed, he was advanced for gallant conduct to the rank of brevet major. He resigned his commission in 1861 to join the Confederate army, in which he bore a conspicuous part. It was he that covered the retreat of Johnston to Richmond after the battle of Williamsburg (§ 521). At Fair Oaks (§ 523) his troops bore the brunt of the battle, and, during the seven-days' fighting that followed, were reduced in numbers nearly one half. Again, at Fredericksburg in Virginia, and at Chickamauga in Georgia, it was Longstreet's command that carried the day for the Confederates. After being driven from Knoxville by Sherman he joined Lee in Virginia, and was severely wounded in the battle of the Wilderness by his own troops. After the war General Longstreet did his utmost to restore harmony of feeling between the divided sections of his country. From 1880 to 1881 he was U. S. minister to Constantinople. He died in 1904.

CHAPTER XXXIX.

NINETEENTH TERM, — EVENTS OF 1864.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, *President.* HANNIBAL HAMLIN, *Vice-President.*



Philip H. Sheridan.

548. THE main military movement of the early months of 1864 was the "Meridian raid" of part of Sherman's army. It destroyed all the railroads centering at Meridian, Mississippi, with their bridges and trestle-works, and made it impossible for the Confederates either to draw supplies from the State or to move large bodies of troops within it.

549. Lieutenant-general Grant. — Congress revived the grade of lieutenant-general, hitherto borne only by Washington and Scott, and in March General Grant was placed at the head of all the armies of the United States. Henceforth there was no scattering of forces. Grant in the East, and Sherman in the West, acted upon one plan, which they had formed together in an interview at Cincinnati.

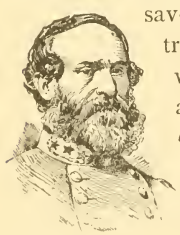
550. Battles in the Wilderness.—The fortunes of the Confederacy now depended upon two armies: that of General Lee, in Virginia, and that of General J. E. Johnston, in Georgia. Grant crossed the Rapidan and began his march to Richmond. All the obstacles that the highest military genius could invent,

and that perfect valor and discipline could execute, were thrown in his way. Dense woods blocked his advance, and a two-days' battle in this gloomy "Wilderness" cost 20,000 of his brave men; but acknowledging no defeat, he pressed on, intending to turn the Confederate right flank and cut their line of connection with Richmond.

551. Lee perceived the plan, and checked it by placing a division of his army upon Grant's road to *Spottsylvania Court-House*. Five days' severe fighting resulted in immense losses to both parties and no decided gain to either. Still Grant telegraphed, "I propose to fight it out on this line, if it takes all summer." He relied upon the superior resources of the North in men and means; and thought that, the campaign once begun, the interest of all parties required him to push it through to the speediest possible end.

552. **Sheridan's Raid.**—Of three side-movements which he had planned, only one succeeded. General Sigel was severely defeated in the Shenandoah Valley, and General Butler on the James. General Sheridan,[1] however, made a sudden move with his cavalry around the rear of the Confederate army, destroyed miles of railroad on which it depended for supplies, and even captured some of the outer defenses of Richmond.

553. The Confederate General Early, meanwhile, with 12,000 men, marched down the *Shenandoah Valley*, crossed into Maryland and Pennsylvania, and threatened Washington. It was saved, however, by the timely advance of National troops, and Early retreated. In September he was met by Sheridan, who defeated him twice, and drove him up the Valley. In a battle at *Cedar Creek*, the Confederates seemed likely to regain all that they had lost, for the Federals were driven four miles from their position; but Sheridan, hearing the roar of cannon thirteen miles away, galloped to the field just in time to



Jubal A. Early.

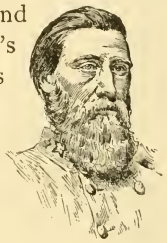
Petersburg Mine.

rally his disordered lines and lead them back to victory. Washington was never again threatened by the Confederates. The beautiful Shenandoah Valley was left bare of everything that could feed or tempt an army.

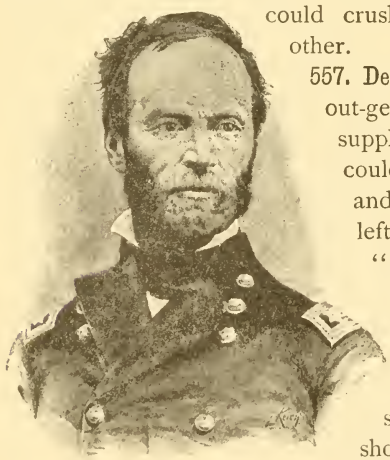
554. **Confederate Victory at Petersburg.**—Grant was still pushing his advance, resisted at every step. Crossing the James, he besieged both Richmond and Petersburg. At the latter place a mine was sprung under a Confederate fort, and the Union troops pressed forward over the ruins; but they were met by a storm of shot and shell which destroyed four thousand lives in a few minutes. A first attempt upon the *Weldon Railroad* failed with immense loss; but in August that important line was secured by the National troops, and Richmond was cut off from the South. The siege continued until April of 1865.

555. **Campaign in Georgia.**—Sherman moved from Chattanooga toward Atlanta three days later than Grant entered upon his campaign in the Wilderness. His forces were nearly double those of Johnston,[2] who conducted a masterly retreat among the woods and mountains of northern Georgia. Avoiding a battle, Johnston intrenched himself in the strongest positions, where, if attacked, he always repulsed his enemy; but Sherman, by skillful flank movements, always managed to seize his lines of supply and force him to fall back.

556. In this way the two armies arrived near *Atlanta*, where Johnston was superseded by General Hood, and more active operations commenced. Johnston's cautious tactics, though they had displeased his superiors, were fully justified by the results. Hood was three times defeated within nine days, with a loss of 20,000 men. Sherman broke up the railroads to the west and south of Atlanta, and managed to throw himself between two divisions of Hood's army, so that he could crush first one and then the other.



J. B. Hood.

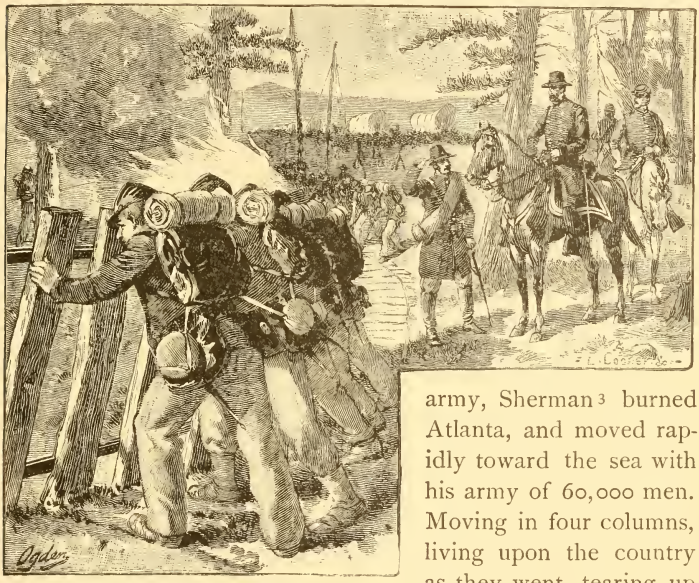


William T. Sherman.

557. **Destruction of Atlanta.** — Thus out-generaled, and cut off from supplies, Hood destroyed what he could of the mills, foundries, and stores in Atlanta, and left the place. Georgia, the "Empire State of the South," surpassed all the other seceded States in the number and value of her manufactures. The destruction of the machine-shops, factories, and foundries, whence the greater part of its

material of war had been derived, was a fatal blow to the blockaded Confederacy.

558. Sherman's "March to the Sea."—Hood pushed northward into Tennessee, expecting that Sherman would follow him. But this was no part of the Federal plan. Leaving generals Schofield and Thomas to complete the destruction of Hood's army, Sherman[3] burned Atlanta, and moved rapidly toward the sea with his army of 60,000 men. Moving in four columns, living upon the country as they went, tearing up and twisting iron rails so as utterly to destroy railway connections, the conquering army left a track of desolation sixty miles in width behind it. No great resistance was met with, for all able-bodied men were in the Confederate camps. The South had put forth her last efforts, and the Confederacy was indeed "an empty shell."



The "March to the Sea."

559. The city of Savannah was abandoned, after Fort McAllister had been taken by storm, and it was occupied by

David D. Porter.

General Sherman December 21. General Butler's attempt to blow up Fort Fisher, which guarded *Wilmington*, in North Carolina, failed a few days later; but Commodore Porter[4] kept his position with his gun-boats, and upon the arrival of fresh troops the fort was taken, January 15, 1865. The last port of the Confederacy was now closed.

560. Mobile Bay.—The forts and floating defenses of *Mobile* harbor had been taken in August by Admiral Farragut, in one of the most remarkable naval actions of the war. The approaches from the Gulf were well guarded, not only by forts and batteries on shore, but by sunken torpedoes, and by a powerful fleet, commanded by the highest officer of the Confederate navy. The fourteen Federal vessels that were outside the bar advanced "two abreast and lashed together," delivering their broadsides of heavy shot with perfect aim as they passed the forts. Four Federal iron-clads already within the bar joined in the battle, which was kept up for three hours with great spirit and resolution on both sides. The severest conflict was with the Confederate ram *Tennessee*, which engaged five Union vessels at once, but at length surrendered. Mobile Bay was restored to the nation, and blockade-running ceased in the Gulf. *Charleston* had been besieged since June of 1863 by Admiral Dahlgren and General Gillmore.

561. Re-election of Lincoln.—At the autumn election of 1864 Abraham Lincoln was chosen President by an immense majority in the loyal States, *Andrew Johnson*, of Tennessee, becoming Vice-President. Congress voted an amendment[5] to the Constitution, declaring that "neither Slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction." In due time this amendment was ratified by the legislatures of more than three fourths of the States, and became a part of the law of the land.

Questions.—What was done to Southern railroads in 1864? What movements followed Grant's promotion? What happened in the Shenandoah Valley? What, at Richmond and Petersburg? Describe the movements in Georgia. The capture of Mobile. What is the Thirteenth Amendment to the Constitution?

Map Exercise.—On Map VIII., point out Meridian, Mississippi. "The Wilderness" in Virginia. Spottsylvania C. H. Cedar Creek. Petersburg. Richmond. Chattanooga. Savannah. Wilmington, N. C. Fort Fisher. Mobile. Charleston.

NOTES.

1. PHILIP HENRY SHERIDAN was born in Somerset, Perry County, Ohio, in 1831, and received his education at West Point. Upon the breaking out of the Civil War he was made chief quartermaster to the army of Southwestern Missouri, and it was not until May of 1862 that he was transferred to a cavalry command. He immediately began to show that ability and energy which afterwards caused him to be recognized as the most able cavalry leader of the war. For defeating a superior cavalry force at Booneville, Miss., on July 1, 1862, he was made brigadier-general, and, the following December, was advanced to the rank of major-general for gallant action at Murfreesborough. At Chickamauga he distinguished himself; and, at the head of his division, led the charge up Missionary Ridge. When Grant was made lieutenant-general of the United States armies, in 1864, he had Sheridan transferred to the East, and gave him command of the cavalry in the Army of the Potomac. The many brilliant raids and hard-won victories which followed increased his fame; and the decisive battle of Five Forks, conducted by Sheridan with rare skill, compelled Lee to evacuate Petersburg. Sheridan was lieutenant-general of the regular army during the later years of his life, and was promoted to General during his last illness. He died at Nonquitt, Mass., August 5, 1888.

2. JOSEPH EGGLESTON JOHNSTON was born in Prince Edward County, Va., in 1807, and graduated at West Point in 1829. Of all the Southern generals, he had held the senior rank in the United States army, and he probably did more for the Confederate cause than any other general except Lee. In 1860 he had attained the rank of brigadier-general of staff, and held this position when he resigned his commission April 22, 1861, and cast his lot with the Confederacy. After the surrender of his army to General Sherman, he addressed the following order to his troops: "Comrades: In terminating our official relations, I earnestly exhort you to observe faithfully the terms of pacification agreed upon; and to discharge the obligations of good and peaceful citizens, as well as you have performed the duties of thorough soldiers in the field. By such a course you will best secure the comfort of your families and kindred, and restore tranquillity to our country." Johnston died March 21, 1891.

3. WILLIAM TECUMSEH SHERMAN was born in Lancaster, Ohio, in 1820. When he was nine years of age his father died, and the Hon. Thomas Ewing took Sherman into his family. After graduating at West Point in 1840, Sherman saw active service in the Seminole War, but took no part in the Mexican War which followed. At that time he was stationed on the Pacific coast, where he remained until 1850. He resigned from the army in 1853, and engaged in banking in San Francisco and New York. Being appointed colonel in the regular army at the beginning of the Civil War, he commanded a division at the memorable battle of Bull Run. After that battle he was made brigadier-general of volunteers, and was transferred to the West. His action there soon stamped him as an able commander, and in his official report of the battle of Shiloh, General Grant said, "I am indebted to General Sherman for the success of the battle." His gallant service during the siege of Vicksburg was rewarded by the rank of brigadier-general in the regular army. When Grant was made lieutenant-general, he had Sherman appointed as his successor in chief command of the Western armies of the Union, and the latter immediately began to prepare for that "March to the Sea," which is one of the most celebrated events in our history. After Grant's resignation of the office, Sherman was appointed General of the Army, which office he held until his retirement in 1883. He died in New York, February 14, 1891.

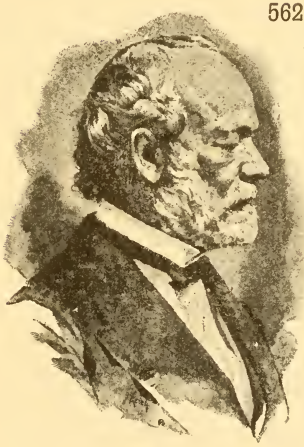
4. DAVID DIXON PORTER was born in Philadelphia in 1813. His father was David Porter, who did such gallant service in the War of 1812 (§ 379). Both father and son entered the service of Mexico in her war with Spain, and when the latter was only fourteen years of age he was engaged in a sea-fight with a much superior Spanish vessel. That war closing, young Porter entered the United States Navy, and after a long interval of peace the Mexican War gave him an opportunity of adding fresh laurels to an already famous name. His first service in the Civil War was the relief of Fort Pickens, and he then began the construction and organization of the mortar flotilla which did such effective work in the reduction of New Orleans and Vicksburg. Porter's aid in capturing the last point won him the rank of rear-admiral, and he was given command of all the naval forces on the western rivers above New Orleans. Being transferred to the North Atlantic blockading squadron, Porter crowned his valuable services to the Union by the capture of Fort Fisher at Wilmington, N. C. He was made vice-admiral in 1866, and for the four succeeding years had charge of the naval school at Annapolis. In 1870, on the death of Farragut, he succeeded to the highest rank, as Admiral of the Navy of the United States. He died in Washington, D. C., February 13, 1891.

5. It will be noticed that the words of this amendment are identical, in part, with those of the act establishing the Northwest Territory (§ 324), and with the language of the Wilmot Proviso (§ 460, note).

CHAPTER XL.

TWENTIETH TERM, — EVENTS OF 1865.

ABRAHAM LINCOLN, *President.* ANDREW JOHNSON, *Vice-President.*



Joseph E. Johnston.

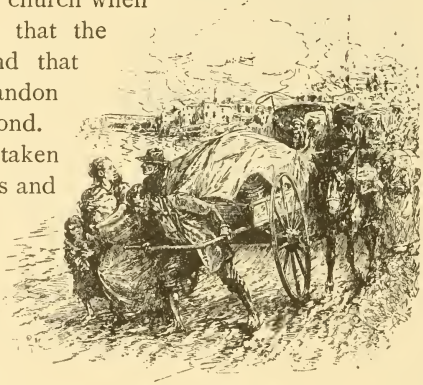
562. Sherman in South Carolina.—After a month's rest in Savannah, Sherman pursued his "grand march" through the Carolinas. Columbia was taken, February 17, after its stores of cotton had been set on fire. The flames spread to dwellings, and a great part of the city was burned. General Hardee found it necessary to abandon Charleston. The immense quantities of cotton stored there were kindled by his orders; unhappily the fire reached a mass of powder, and two hundred people were killed by the explosion.[1] Though every effort was made to arrest the flames, the fair city became a scene of ruin and desolation.

563. Passing into North Carolina, Sherman was met by Johnston, who had again been placed in command. The latter was defeated at *Averysboro* and *Bentonville*, and, April 13, Sherman took possession of *Raleigh*. The forces of the Confederacy now consisted of the remnant of Johnston's troops, and of Lee's army of 40,000 men, which lay behind the earth-works of

Richmond and Petersburg, hemmed in by Grant's 100,000 veterans, with but little hope of escape.

564. **The Last Effort.**—To disguise his plan of moving southward to join Johnston, Lee attacked and took Fort Steadman on the Union right. He hoped that Grant's forces would be massed to defend it, and that so he might gain the road which lay near the Union left. But the fort was almost immediately recaptured. Three thousand men were lost in the vain assault, and Grant made no movement to relax his hold upon the Southern roads. On the first of April Sheridan advanced to *Five Forks*, twelve miles in the rear of Lee's position, and captured its garrison of 5,000 men.

565. **Advance upon Richmond.**—The next morning the Union army moved forward. Resistance was no longer possible. Jefferson Davis was in church when the news reached him that the lines were broken, and that Lee was forced to abandon his defence of Richmond. Measures were quickly taken for removing the papers and other property of the Confederate government. Citizens took the alarm, and provided as best they could for the safety of their families. The streets were clogged with wagons carrying away household goods and valuables. The confusion increased all night. The city authorities ordered the destruction of all intoxicating liquors; but some soldiers managed to secure a portion, and added the horrors of a mad carousal to those inseparable from the abandonment of the city.



Citizens leaving Richmond.

566. Burning of Richmond.—Four great store-houses of tobacco were set on fire by General Ewell's order; iron-clads were blown up; bridges burnt; the flames "leaped from street to street," and the roar of the conflagration was heard above the rumbling of wheels and all the other sounds of flight. On Monday morning, the 3d of April, the National forces occupied the Confederate stronghold.

Confederate Troopers at Appomattox.

567. Lee's Surrender.—Lee retreated westward, closely pursued by Grant. His men, worn out by rapid marches, and deprived of food by the capture of their supply trains, were scarcely able either to march or to fight. Many fell exhausted by the road-side, or tried to still their hunger with leaves and roots. Arms were thrown away, and hundreds deserted at a time. Sheridan, with his cavalry, hung on his flanks, and captured thousands of prisoners. Finally, on the 9th, Lee surrendered his entire command at Appomattox Court-House, Virginia. Officers and men, having given their word of honor to fight no more against the United States, "until properly ex-

changed," were dismissed to their homes.[2] Johnston surrendered[3] on similar terms to Sherman, April 26, and the few scattered forces of the Confederacy followed the example.

568. **Jefferson Davis,** after a feeble attempt to keep up the forms of a government at Danville, escaped to the southward. He was arrested by Union forces near Irwinsville, Georgia, and was held for two years a prisoner at Fortress Monroe. Then he was released on bail, and the proposed trial for treason never took place.

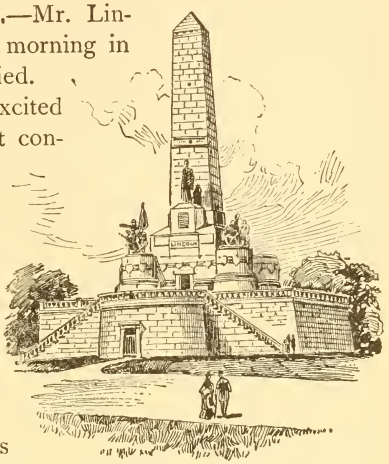
569. **President Lincoln's second Inaugural Address,** on March 4, 1865, fairly stated the positions of the two parties in the Civil War: "Both read the same Bible and pray to the same God, and each invokes His aid against the other. . . . The prayer of both could not be answered. That of neither has been answered fully. The Almighty has His own purposes. . . . With malice toward none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right as God gives us to see the right, let us finish the work we are in, to bind up the nation's wounds, . . . to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations." It was believed that the same just and manly spirit which had guided the nation through the tempest of civil war would best preside over its interests in the restoration of peace. But so it was not to be.

570. **Thanksgiving Day.**—The fourth anniversary of the surrender of Sumter was appointed by the President as a day of thanksgiving for *the close of the war.* By his invitation a party of distinguished citizens went to Charleston and witnessed the raising of the stars and stripes above the ruined fort.[4] He remained at his post in Washington. In the evening, learning that the people would be disappointed if he failed to appear at the theater, he went thither with his wife. A half-mad actor, who had been nerving himself to the horrid deed by brandy, entered the President's private box and shot him through the head; then, leaping to the stage, escaped, took

April 14.

horse, and fled away into the darkness. At the same time another murderer visited the house of Mr. Seward, who was ill in bed, and stabbed him several times, but not mortally.

571. Death of the President.—Mr. Lincoln lingered until the next morning in unconsciousness, and then died. The horror and indignation excited by the wicked plot was not confined to the North. It was found, however, that only a few persons of no great reputation were concerned in it. The chief assassin was overtaken and shot, as he refused to surrender; four of his accomplices were tried and hanged, and three were imprisoned for life. As the funeral escort of the dead President passed through the northern cities to his old home in Springfield, Illinois, all ranks and classes of the people thronged about it to testify their love and grief. Never had one strong feeling so united all hearts.



Lincoln's Tomb at Springfield, Ill.

572. The Seventeenth President.—Vice-President *Andrew Johnson* took the oath of the highest office on the day of Mr. Lincoln's death, and became the seventeenth President of the United States.

573. Nevada was the third State formed (1864) from the lands acquired from Mexico. Its rich silver mines, discovered in 1859, drew a crowd of adventurers; and in no other State have such sudden and immense fortunes been made. *Carson City* and *Virginia City* are centers of mining interests. Several Territories were divided during this period, and *Dakota*, *Arizona*, *Idaho*, and *Montana* received regular territorial governments.

Questions.—What occurred at Columbia and Charleston? Describe the last war-movements about Richmond. The abandonment of the city. The surrender of Confederate armies. The closing acts and scenes of Mr. Lincoln's life. What State and what Territories were organized during this period?

Map Exercise.— Point out Columbia. Averysboro. Bentonville. Raleigh. Five Forks. Appomattox C. H.

Read histories of the Civil War by Draper, Greeley, Bryant, Lossing, Stephens, Pollard, and the Count of Paris. Scribner's *Campaigns of the Civil War* and *The Navy in the Civil War.* Moore's *Rebellion Record.* Johnston's *Narrative of Military Operations.* Gordon's *The Army of Virginia.* Jefferson Davis's *The Rise and Fall of the Confederate Government. Southern Historical Society Papers.* Nicolay and Hay's *Life of Abraham Lincoln. Personal Memoirs of General U. S. Grant. Memoirs of General W. T. Sherman* and *Memoirs of General P. H. Sheridan.* War articles in *The Century Magazine* 1884 and later, and in the *Magazine of American History.* Lowell's *Biglow Papers*, Second Series. Whittier's *In War Time*, and W. Gilmore Simms's *War Poetry of the South.*

NOTES.

1. "Some boys had discovered powder at the depot of the "Northwestern Railway," and amused themselves by throwing some of it on the burning cotton in the street. The powder dropping from their hands soon formed a train, along which fire ran to the large quantity stored at the depot. A terrible explosion followed, by which the city was shaken to its foundations."—*Lossing.*

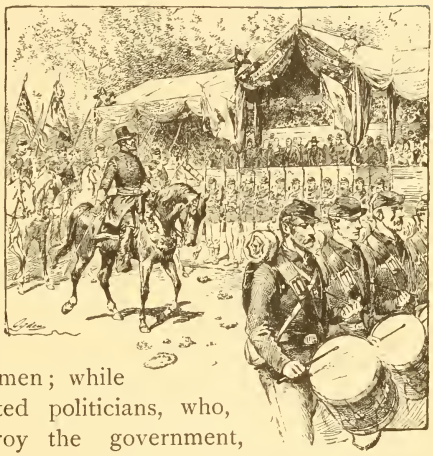
2. Learning that many of the cavalry troopers were riding their own horses, Grant gave orders that they should be permitted to keep them, saying that the war was now over, he earnestly hoped never to be renewed, and that these horses would be needed for work upon the plantations. Observing that Lee wore a valuable sword, and not wishing to give him the vexation either of surrendering it or of receiving it back as a favor, he added to the terms of surrender that all officers should keep their side-arms.

3. Terms of surrender were first agreed upon between Sherman and Johnston on the 18th of April. But the terms were considered too liberal by the government, and were refused.

4. On this occasion a well-deserved compliment was paid to Anderson, then a major-general. With his own hands he raised the same flag that he had been compelled to lower four years before.

CHAPTER XLI.

RESULTS OF THE CIVIL WAR.



The Final Review of the Army.

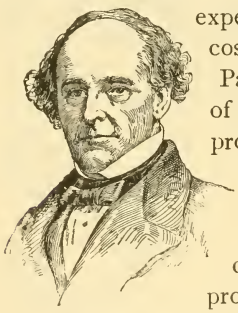
574. The war over, all reasonable men were ready to join in repairing its wastes and forgetting its enmities. Doubtless there were selfish Northern adventurers, who cared only to make their own fortunes out of the poverty of the exhausted South and the ignorance of the freedmen; while there were disappointed politicians, who, having failed to destroy the government, used every chance to hinder its action. Both these classes were obstacles to the thorough restoration of peace, but their influence could not be lasting.

575. The strength and the kindness of the great Republic were equally proved by the circumstances attending the close of the war. The hopes of its enemies were disappointed. It had been said that the peaceful, industrious pursuits of the majority of the people had unfitted them for war; and that, used as they were to personal independence, they would never submit to the needful discipline of the army. But it was found that men will fight most cheerfully and bravely for a government that rep-

resents their will and promotes their prosperity, and that happy home-life gives courage instead of destroying it.

576. **Great anxiety** was felt, at the close of the war, lest the letting loose of more than a million of men, used to the rough disorders of camp-life, might endanger the security of the country. The very persons who had said "Americans will never fight," now predicted that they would never stop fighting. But the citizen-soldiers gladly and quietly returned to their homes, resumed their peaceful occupations, and public order was not seriously disturbed.

577. **The National debt** had increased to more than twenty-seven hundred millions of dollars. If to this be added the expenses of States, counties, and towns, the cost of the war was at least $4,000,000,000. Part of the sum was raised by the issue of "greenbacks"; *i. e.*, the government's promises to pay certain amounts to the bearer; and these fell in value until $2.90 in paper had to be paid for $1.00 in gold. Gold and silver coin disappeared, and, until the government provided a fractional paper currency, post-age-stamps did duty as small change.



Salmon P. Chase.[1]

578. **Prosperity and Public Credit.**—At the same time, the immense contracts given out by the government afforded work to multitudes of people, and never were wages higher nor the appearances of prosperity greater than during the early years of the war. Though the war expenses toward the end of the great conflict exceeded in one year the whole cost of the government from Washington to Buchanan, yet public credit was unshaken, and the loan called for in March, 1865, was taken to the amount of $530,000,000 in five months.

579. **The Confederate paper money** was only a promise to pay certain sums, two or six months after the conclusion of peace

between the Confederate States and the United States. As the hope of such a peace vanished, the currency became worthless, and was found scattered about the streets of Nashville and Atlanta like waste paper. The bonds of the Confederacy, of course, could never be paid.

580. The loss of life during the war was not far from 600,000 on both sides. It is impossible to number the lingering deaths of those whose health was ruined by exposure on battle-fields and in camps. Some idea of the maiming effects of war may be obtained from the fact that the United States provided more than seven thousand artificial limbs for disabled soldiers.

581. The conduct of the war on both sides proved *the progress of science.* During some great battles, all the National major-generals were in council, though hundreds of miles apart, by the aid of electric wires. Fifteen thousand miles of military telegraph-wire were sold when the war was over. The old style cannon and small arms with which the conflict began were replaced by Dahlgrens, columbiads, and the most improved rifles, and in naval architecture America surpassed all nations.

582. Sanitary Commissions.—Never had science and human sympathy gained such victories over the horrid brutalities of war. The *United States Sanitary Commission* spent twelve millions of dollars in money and supplies for the relief of the sick and wounded, and the *Western Sanitary Commission* three millions more. But money could not measure the service rendered: the home comforts added to the rough necessaries of the military hospital; the "feeding-stations" and night lodgings for soldiers returning home on sick-leave; the strength imparted by the assurance that their sufferings were gratefully remembered.

583. The Christian Commission, also, shared the hardships of the march, the trench, the battle-field; and cared for both bodies and souls. It cheered the sick, comforted the dying, buried the dead. It supplied about five millions in money

The Work of the Sanitary Commission.

and material. Both Commissions continued their kind offices after the war was over, providing homes for disabled soldiers and work for those who needed it.

584. **Foreign Results of the War.**— One sixth part of all the people in England depended for their daily bread upon the cotton manufacture, and suffered severely from the blockade (§ 497) which deprived them of their material for work. Lancashire weavers were starving; and neither Egypt nor India could supply cotton enough to give them employment. Moreover, English manufacturers were injured by the high tariff (§ 398) which kept their goods out of American markets, and a very strong and bitter feeling against the Union prevailed. The British government, however, resisted all pressure which would have carried it into interference in the war.

585. **Napoleon III., Emperor of the French,** believing that the Union was already destroyed, sent an army to Mexico, thinking

to establish an empire of the "Latin Race" in America, and perhaps to regain part of the great territory which France had sold (§§ 355, 356). But the Union victories, and the firm remonstrances of the government, led him to abandon his Mexican plans. The Emperor Maximilian, whom he had placed upon a tottering throne, was betrayed and shot; his poor wife, crazed with grief, vainly besought help from the governments which had led him to his destruction. Mexico continued to be a republic, on friendly terms with the United States.

Questions.—How was American character tested by the war? How much money did the war cost? How many lives? What was done for the relief of the soldiers? How was England affected by our war? How was Mexico?

Point for Essay.—Write a story of scenes and incidents in the Civil War in hospital or camp.

1. For sketch of Chase, see note 3, page 352.

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW.—PART V.

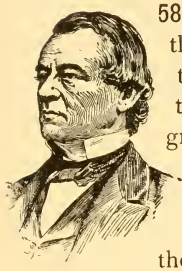
		Section
1.	With what views and expectations did the North and the South go to war?	487, 488
2.	Describe the beginning of hostilities.	489
3.	What Southern States refused to secede?	490
4.	Name the eleven seceding States.	481, 490
5.	What preparations were made on both sides?	491
6.	What changes occurred in Virginia?	492
7.	Describe the first great battle and its effects.	493–495
8.	The blockade and attempts to break it.	496–498
9.	The affair with the British steamer *Trent*.	499, 500
10.	What was accomplished during 1861?	501
11.	What three objects comprised the Federal plan of the war?	502
12.	Sketch the campaign in which forts Henry and Donelson were taken.	502–504

		Section
13.	Describe the battle of Shiloh or Pittsburg Landing.	505–507
14.	What occurred meanwhile on the Mississippi and in Missouri?	508
15.	What was the Confederate plan for the autumn of 1862?	509
16.	Describe the campaign in Kentucky.	510–513
17.	What was done on the lower Mississippi?	514, 515
18.	Describe the doings of the *Merrimac* and the first *Monitor*.	516–519
19.	What was done in 1862 by the Army of the Potomac?	520–524
20.	What resulted from Lee's first invasion of Maryland?	525, 526
21.	What was the general result of 1862?	528
22.	What were the causes and effects of the Emancipation Proclamation?	529–531
23.	What changes and disasters to the Army of the Potomac, January to May, 1863?	532
24.	What occurred in New York, July, 1863?	533
25.	Describe Lee's second invasion of the North.	534, 535
26.	The siege and surrender of Vicksburg and Port Hudson.	536–539
27.	General Morgan's movement north of the Ohio.	540
28.	The objects, scenes, and events of the Chattanooga campaign.	541–547
29.	Grant's campaign in the Wilderness.	549–554
30.	Sherman's movements in Georgia.	555–559
31.	What three cities were besieged by the U. S. Navy?	559, 560
32.	What was done by Sherman in the Carolinas?	562, 563
33.	Describe the surrender of Richmond, of Lee's army, and the arrest of Davis.	564–568
34.	The second inauguration and the death of Lincoln.	569–571
35.	Sum up the effects of the Civil War at home and abroad.	574–580, 584, 585
36.	What scientific improvements were of use during the war?	581
37.	What was done by the Sanitary and Christian commissions?	582, 583

PART VI.—THE UNION RESTORED.

CHAPTER XLII.

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION, A. D. 1865–1869.



Andrew Johnson.

586. An important question had now to be settled. Were the lately seceded States out of the Union or in it? The President[1] held that they had never been out; a majority in Congress, though denying the right of secession, insisted that they had lost their State rights, and must be dealt with as Territories. The difference of opinion between Congress and the President grew wider, and three important laws were passed over his veto. One established a *Freedmen's Bureau* to protect and provide for those who had been slaves; a second guarded their *civil rights;* a third made it unlawful for the President to *remove any civil officer* without the consent of the Senate.

587. Impeachment of Andrew Johnson. — The last,— called the "Tenure of Office Law,"— was broken by the President's dismissal of Edwin M. Stanton,[2] Secretary of War. Thereupon the House of Representatives impeached Andrew Johnson before the bar of the Senate, Chief-justice Salmon P. Chase[3] presiding. The trial lasted more than

March, 1868.

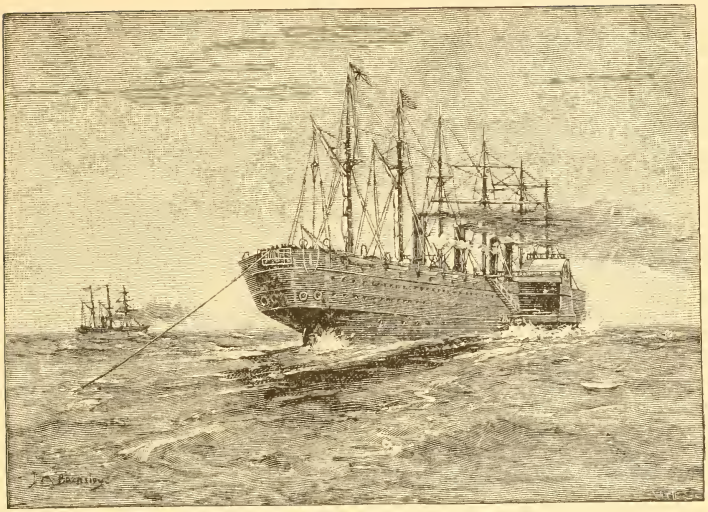
Edwin M. Stanton.

two months. The President was acquitted, as one vote was lacking of the two thirds required for his condemnation.

588. **The work of reconstructing the Union** went on. The principle of the Civil Rights Bill was embodied in the Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution, which was promptly accepted by Tennessee, and finally by the other States. In time all the Southern States annulled the ordinances of secession, disowned the Confederate war-debts, and were again represented in Congress. One cause of bitterness remained. Candidates before taking office were made to take the "iron-clad oath," as it was called, declaring that they had taken no part in the war for secession. Few of the intelligent class in the South could take this oath, though many frankly accepted the results of the war, and were ready in good faith to resume their allegiance to the United States. The result was that many public offices were held for a time by newcomers from the North and by negroes.

589. **Submarine Telegraph.**—The year 1866 was signalized by the successful completion of a submarine telegraph between Europe and America. The chief mover in the enterprise was Mr. Cyrus W. Field,[4] of New York, who, during twelve years of costly experiments, never lost heart, even under disastrous failure; but, crossing the ocean fifty times, succeeded in imparting his own courage to English and American capitalists. The first transatlantic cable was laid in 1858 from Heart's Content, in Newfoundland, to Valencia Bay, in Ireland. It carried four hundred messages, but ceased to work within a month.

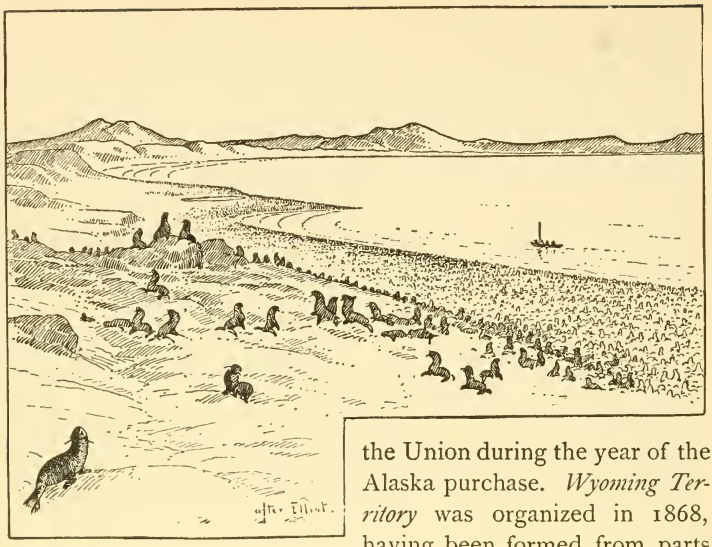
590. Many ridiculed the idea of trying again, but Mr. Field soon formed a new company with a capital of three millions of dollars; a much better cable was made, and in June, 1865, the *Great Eastern* began to lay it on the ocean bed. Half her task was done, when the cable broke and was lost beneath the waves. A new company was at once formed, a new cable made, and in the following summer the two hemispheres were connected by lines of instant communication. Going to the



The Great Eastern Laying the Cable.

place of her former failure, the *Great Eastern* picked up the lost cable, joined the broken strands, and successfully laid it. Twelve cables now connect us with Europe, and through it with all the other grand divisions of the world.

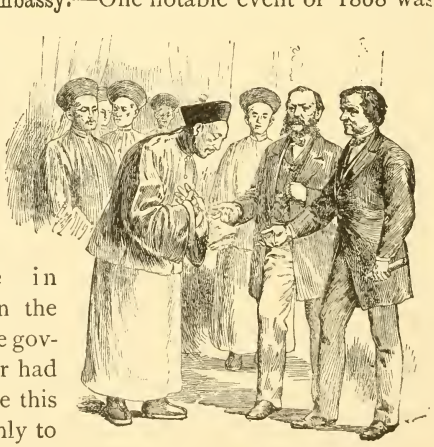
591. The purchase of all Russian America[5] for $7,200,000, in 1867, greatly enlarged the territory of the United States. From the corruption of a native word meaning "a great country," it is called *Alaska*. Sitka, the capital, is one of the rainiest places in North America. The wealth of the region is in its pine and cedar timber, its seal-skins and other valuable furs, its fisheries, and its mineral deposits, including gold. The Yukon, one of the great rivers of the world, flows for 2,000 miles through the territory. Its waters abound in fish. Until the year 1884 this vast region had no other government than could be exercised by military officers at Sitka. In May of that year Congress enacted a law for the organization of the territory. *Nebraska* was admitted as the thirty-seventh State in



Alaska Seal Rookery.

the Union during the year of the Alaska purchase. *Wyoming Territory* was organized in 1868, having been formed from parts of Dakota, Idaho, and Utah.

592. The Burlingame Embassy.—One notable event of 1868 was the arrival of an embassy from China, the first ever sent by that exclusive empire to any foreign power. Its head was Hon. Anson Burlingame, an American citizen, and lately his country's representative in China. He had so won the confidence of the Chinese government that the emperor had induced him to undertake this important mission, not only to the United States, but to sev-



The Chinese Embassy.

eral European courts. The Chinese had begun to cross the Pacific in great numbers, to find work in California and the inland mining States. A treaty, now made between the Asiatic Empire and the American Republic, promises security of life, liberty, and property, to the people of either nation while in the territory of the other.

Questions.—What led to the impeachment of the President? How was reconstruction effected? Tell the story of submarine cables. What purchase was made in 1867? What State admitted? What treaty made in 1868?

NOTES.

1. ANDREW JOHNSON was born in 1808 at Raleigh, N. C. The family were so poor that young Johnson attended no school, and at the age of ten was apprenticed to a tailor. Soon after this his ambition was aroused by a charitable gentleman, who used to read to the men in the shop, and he diligently employed his leisure hours in learning to read. In 1826 he removed to Greenville, Tennessee, and there married. Under his wife's instruction Johnson rapidly extended his education, and was twice elected alderman and twice mayor of the city. He was three times elected to the State legislature, and finally to Congress in 1843. He retained his seat there until 1853, when he was elected governor of Tennessee. Johnson was a Democrat in principle, and in 1860 was an adherent of the Breckenridge party; but when the question of secession arose, he, being then a United States Senator, took a firm stand for the Union. Lincoln appointed Johnson military governor of Tennessee in 1862, when his energetic management of affairs attracted general attention throughout the North, and marked him as a fitting candidate for the Vice-Presidency in 1864. In 1875 he was elected to the Senate, but his health failed, and in July of that year he died.

2. EDWIN MCMASTERS STANTON (1814–1869), was born at Steubenville, Ohio, and received his education at Kenyon College in that State, being admitted to the bar in 1836. In 1847 he removed to Pittsburgh, and a few years later acquired a national reputation as counsel in an important case tried before the Supreme Court of the United States. His business before this court became so continuous and important that in 1856 he removed to Washington. Two years later he was sent as United States counsel to the Pacific coast in some land cases involving millions of dollars. In 1860 Mr. Stanton was appointed Attorney-general of the United States. In 1862 Lincoln appointed him Secretary of War. "The characteristics of Mr. Stanton's administration were integrity, energy, determination, singleness of purpose, and the power to comprehend the

magnitude of the rebellion and the labor and cost in blood and treasure involved in suppressing it." In 1869 Grant appointed Mr. Stanton an associate justice of the United States Supreme Court, but before he could take his seat he died, after a brief illness, having worn himself out in the service of his country.

3. SALMON PORTLAND CHASE (1808–1873), was born at Cornish, N. H. After a collegiate training, first at Cincinnati College, and then at Dartmouth, he went to Washington, where he taught school while studying law. In 1830 he removed to Cincinnati to practice, and there employed his leisure time in preparing an edition of the "Statutes of Ohio," which at once gave him a high reputation. In 1849 he was elected United States Senator, and took a prominent part in all the exciting debates over the slavery question which occurred during his term (§§ 463, 467, 468, 473–476). He was elected governor of Ohio in 1855, and re-elected in 1857 by a larger majority than had ever been given a governor in that State. He was returned to the United States Senate in 1860, but President Lincoln made him Secretary of the Treasury, and he bore one of the most arduous positions during the war with wonderful judgment and skill. The National banking system, which was chiefly his invention, placed the finances of the country on a sounder basis than they had ever been before. In December, 1864, he was raised to the still more responsible position of Chief-justice of the United States. The grave questions raised immediately after the war, which involved the constitutionality of certain acts of Congress and the President, were dealt with by him in a manner to excite the admiration of all.

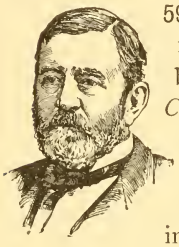
4. CYRUS W. FIELD was born at Stockbridge, Mass., in 1819. After an ordinary education in his native town, he went to New York when fifteen years old, and rapidly worked his way from a clerkship to the head of a large and prosperous mercantile house. At a banquet given to celebrate the arrival of the first cable message, Mr. Field said, "Maury furnished the brains, England gave the money, and I did the work." His reference was to M. F. Maury, U. S. N., who discovered the plateau in the ocean-bed between Newfoundland and Ireland, upon which the cable was subsequently laid. Field died July 12, 1892.

5. The existence of North America first became known to the Russian government in 1711. In 1741, Behring and Tschirikoff sailed in company from Petropaulovski in Kamchatka to find this unknown land. They lost each other in a storm, Tschirikoff striking the American coast in latitude 56°, and Behring at Cape St. Elias, latitude 60°. The Aleutian Islands were discovered by a Russian fur-trader in 1745. Seven years later the peninsula of Aliaska was seen, but supposed to be an island, until Captain Cook made a more careful survey in 1778. Russian hunters visited Oonalaska and the Fox Islands, shooting sea-otters, seals, and foxes, and buying furs from the natives for ironware and beads. A great part of the food of these natives comes from the sea and rivers. They have also blue-berries, dried in summer, and eaten with seal oil in winter; eggs and flesh of multitudes of water-fowl and the flesh of reindeer. Whales not only serve for food, light, and fuel, but their bones afford the frames of the poor cabins of the Eskimos, Kadiaks, Aleuts, and Thlinkeets

CHAPTER XLIII.

TWENTY-FIRST AND TWENTY-SECOND TERMS, A. D. 1869–1877.

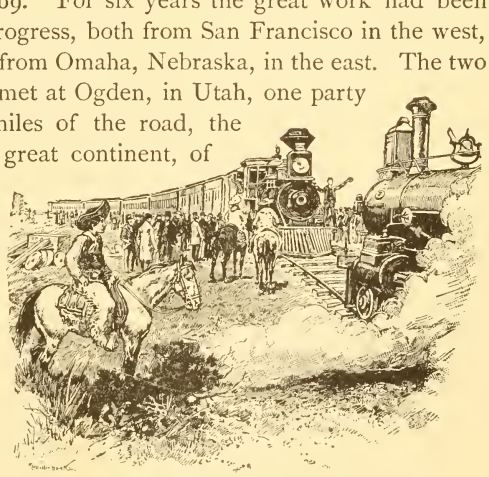
ULYSSES S. GRANT, *President.* SCHUYLER COLFAX, HENRY WILSON, } *Vice-Presidents.*



U. S. Grant.

593. The Eighteenth President.—By the elections in the autumn of 1868 *General Ulysses S. Grant*[1] became the eighteenth President, and *Schuyler Colfax*, of Indiana, Vice-President, of the United States.

594. The Pacific Railroad was completed in May, 1869. For six years the great work had been in progress, both from San Francisco in the west, and from Omaha, Nebraska, in the east. The two construction-trains met at Ogden, in Utah, one party having built 882 miles of the road, the other 1,032. The great continent, of which Columbus and his fellow discoverers saw only the eastern edge, no longer blocked the way to China and Japan, but afforded the speediest passage to them even for travelers from Europe.



The Meeting Trains.

595. The first few months of 1870 saw **the restoration of the entire South** to equal rights with the North. The Senators and Representatives of Texas, last of all the seceded States, took their seats in Congress, March 30. On the same day the President proclaimed the Fifteenth Amendment,—already adopted by Congress and ratified by three fourths of the States,—as part of the Constitution. It ordains that no State shall deny or abridge the right of any citizen to vote on account of his race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

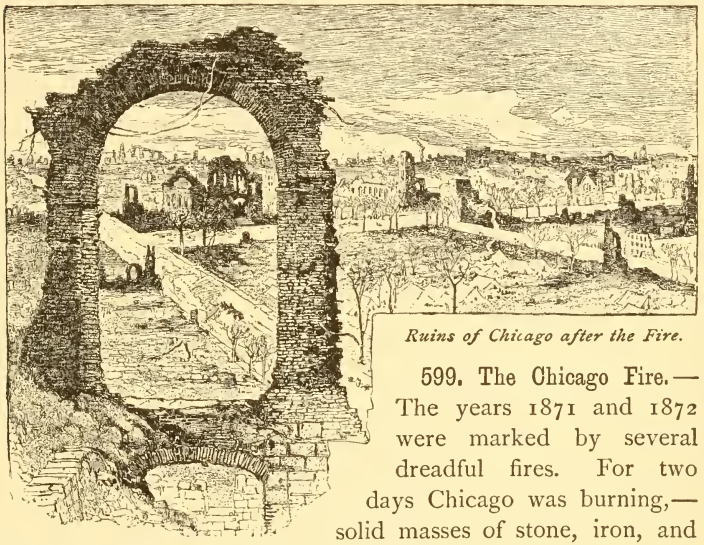
596. **Unsettled war claims**, arising from the mischief done by Confederate cruisers built in Great Britain (§ 500), occasioned some anxiety both in England and America. But neither government was unwise enough to plunge the two nations into war for matters which could be settled by reason. A "Joint High Commission," consisting of five English and five American statesmen, met at Washington, and, after a fair discussion, agreed that all claims of either nation against the other should be decided by three modes of arbitration:

Jan., 1871.

597. (1) The **"Alabama Claims,"**—including demands for injury done by several other English-built Confederate cruisers,—were submitted to a board of commissioners from three friendly nations, meeting with those of the two whose interests were in conflict. This board[2] met at Geneva, Switzerland, in the summer of 1872, and, having heard the lawyers on both sides, decreed that Great Britain should pay to the United States fifteen and a half millions of dollars. The amount was paid without demur.

598. (2) A question concerning the **boundary between Washington Territory and British Columbia** was referred to the Emperor of Germany, and his decision was accepted by both parties. (3) Some years later three commissioners, one English, one American, and one chosen by the first two, met at Boston to settle claims arising from the fisheries near the coasts of Nova Scotia

and Newfoundland. In consequence of their award, the United States paid to Great Britain five millions of dollars. Lovers of peace rejoice that a step has thus been made toward the good time coming,—though doubtless yet too far away,—when cannon-law among nations shall be thought as out of date and brutal as "fist-law" among individual men.



Ruins of Chicago after the Fire.

599. The Chicago Fire.— The years 1871 and 1872 were marked by several dreadful fires. For two days Chicago was burning,—solid masses of stone, iron, and brick making scarcely more resistance to the fierce heat than the lightest wooden buildings. Oct 8 and 9, 1871. Nearly 100,000 persons were deprived of homes, and the property destroyed was worth $200,000,000. About the same time the great lumber-lands of Wisconsin and Michigan were visited by immense conflagrations. The flames spread from forests to villages; people plunged into lakes or rivers to escape them, but uncounted hundreds perished.

600. Boston was visited in November, 1872, by a similar disaster, though with less loss of life and property. Magnifi-

cent structures of granite and brick, covering sixty acres, were laid in ashes. The disaster was greater from an epidemic which had disabled all the horses in Boston, so that the heavy fire-engines had to be drawn by men. With wonderful energy both Chicago and Boston recovered from their great calamities; so that within a year or two "the burnt districts" were only to be known by more splendid and massive buildings than those which the flames had destroyed.

Nov. 9.

601. Horace Greeley,[3] founder and editor of the "New York Tribune," was proposed for the Presidency in the autumn of 1872 both by the Liberal branch of the Republican party and by the Democrats. He loved peace, and at the first movement toward secession in 1860 had even advocated a friendly separation of the States rather than war. He soon changed his views, and favored the "short, sharp, and decisive" conflict which might lead to settled peace. His name was on the bond which released the ex-President of the Confederacy from prison; and many thought his election would hasten the return of good feeling between different sections of the country. Grant, however, was re-elected, with *Henry Wilson*, of Massachusetts, as Vice-President; and Greeley, broken down by labor, excitement, and domestic sorrow, died within the month.

Horace Greeley

602. Grant's Indian Policy.—The President had a new and hopeful plan for preventing trouble with the Indians. This was to civilize them, and win them by every possible means to the pursuits of peace. To this end he proposed schools, model farms, premiums for success in cattle-raising, etc.; and, as Quaker policy toward the Indians was the only one that had ever succeeded (§ 125), he committed all questions concerning them to a board consisting mainly of "Friends," while an educated Indian, who had served on his staff during the war,

was a prominent member. But this humane scheme could not immediately efface the memory of many wrongs.

603. **The Modocs** had been ordered from their lands in Oregon to a new reservation in the Indian Territory. They refused to go, and, intrenching themselves upon their "lava-beds," defied the government to remove them. Their leader was "Captain Jack," whose father had been killed by the order of a United States officer, when under a flag of truce. The Modocs were soon surrounded and overpowered; but to avoid bloodshed a truce was agreed upon, during which General Canby and six commissioners met the chiefs in council. Revenge and treachery won the day. The General and a kind-hearted clergyman were murdered in the presence of the council; another commissioner was shot but not killed. War was then prosecuted until the whole band surrendered, and their chiefs, having been tried by court-martial, were put to death. April, 1873.

604. **Effects of Paper Money.**—The unsettling of values by the Civil War (§§ 577, 578) still kept the money-markets in an excited state. There was great seeming prosperity; hundreds of millions of the public debt were paid; but eight years went by without any serious attempt to redeem the government's promises on the greenbacks, and the frequent rise and fall of their value gave every chance to wild speculation.

605. **Railways and Money Panics.**—More railroads were begun than the country could pay for. Chief of these was the "Northern Pacific," from Duluth, on Lake Superior, to Puget Sound. Its stock was largely held and sold by a banking-firm in Philadelphia. The failure of this firm in 1873 gave a shock to the commercial world, and in the panic many banks and other establishments were forced to suspend payments. Public works stopped; multitudes of the poor were without employment. "Hard times" were most keenly felt by those who had no share in causing them.

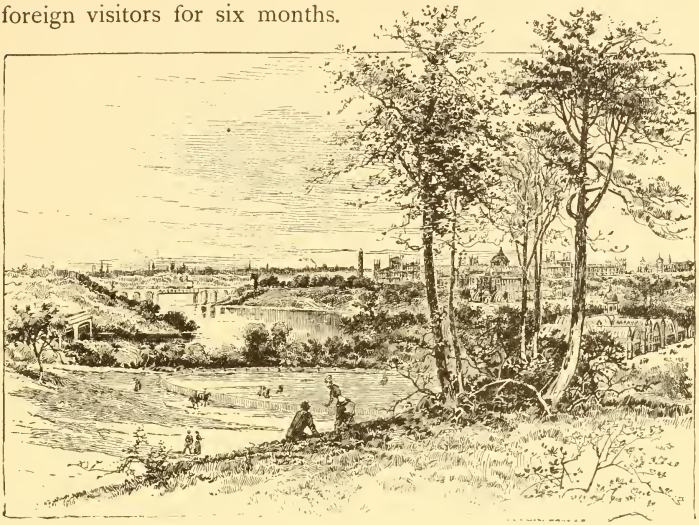
606. Worst of all was the destruction of confidence. No one knew whom to trust. So many enormous fortunes had been made by fraudulent contracts or by scarcely less fraudulent speculation, that men were tempted to despise the moderate rewards of honest business, and to join in the rush for sudden wealth. Blame fell even upon Senators and Representatives at Washington. A long series of investigations resulted in the clearing of a few names, but left others deeply shadowed.

607. **Ring Robberies.**—The government of New York and other great cities fell into the hands of thieves, who robbed the public treasury and bribed voters to keep themselves and their tools in power. Tax-payers were too busy to look after their own interests. Suddenly their eyes were opened, and then the movement toward reform was as swift and thorough as the current of crime and corruption had been. So many frauds were brought to light that "at first sight it seemed as if the world had suddenly grown worse; on reflection it was clear that it was growing better."

608. **The Specie Resumption Act,** passed by Congress in 1876, provided for the exchange of coin for all United States paper money on and after January 1, 1879. The credit of the nation was now fully restored, and the disturbances due to the war were at an end. *Colorado*, the thirty-eighth State, was admitted to the Union in 1876. The wonderful dryness of its air makes it the paradise of pilgrims in search of health; while its mineral wealth affords abundant attraction to miners and adventurers.

609. **The Centennial Year.**—The year 1876 completed a century of American Independence. The great Republic had surpassed the hopes of her friends and disappointed the wishes of her enemies. Though assailed by foes within, she had proved strong enough not only to conquer but to forgive. The Centennial was celebrated by a great International Exposition at Philadelphia. More than two hundred buildings were erected

in Fairmount Park, where a magnificent display of the products of all parts of the world delighted vast multitudes of home and foreign visitors for six months.



The Centennial Exposition Grounds.

610. Dom Pedro II., the energetic and enlightened Emperor of Brazil, was present, with President Grant, at the opening. Afterwards he pursued his journey through the States, inquiring into everything that could be of use to his great undeveloped empire, whose circumstances were in many ways so much like our own.

611. The war with the Sioux more sadly marked the Centennial summer. Instead of confining themselves to the extensive lands in Dakota which they had accepted by treaty with the United States, these savages committed robberies and murders in Montana and Wyoming. A large force of the regular army was sent to subdue them. General Custer, with the Seventh Cavalry, was scouting near the Little Horn River, when he suddenly came upon the Indians in force. A

June 25.

fierce battle followed, in which the General, with every man of his command, was slain. This great disaster led, of course, to a stern following-up of the war. The savages were defeated many times during the summer, autumn, and winter, until a remnant of their number escaped into Canada.

612. The Republican Party had now been in power sixteen years, the most exciting and momentous years in the history of our country. Violent differences of opinion had arisen, and the presidential canvass of 1876 was the most closely contested that had ever been held. "Returning Boards" had been appointed in some of the Southern States to decide the result of elections. Their decision in favor of the Republican party in Florida and Louisiana was denounced by the Democratic party as fraudulent; the Republicans firmly disputed the accusation, and serious trouble seemed unavoidable.

S. J. Tilden.

613. The Joint High Commission.—When Congress met, there was a long debate. It was agreed at last that a Commission consisting of five Judges of the Supreme Court, five Senators, and five Representatives should hear the evidence and decide. Their conclusion was to the effect that the Republicans had cast one hundred and eighty-five electoral votes for *Rutherford B. Hayes*, of Ohio; the Democrats had cast one hundred and eighty-four for Samuel J. Tilden, of New York. So the vexed question was settled, and President Hayes was inaugurated (the 4th being Sunday) on the 5th of March, 1877.

Questions.—What great work was completed in 1869? What two events in Washington, March 30, 1870? How were disputes settled between England and America? What fires occurred, 1871, 1872? Who were candidates for the Presidency, 1872? What Indian plan had Grant? What Indian wars in his two terms? What led to hard times? What State was admitted in 1876? How was our Centennial celebrated? How was the election decided?

NOTES.

1. ULYSSES S. GRANT was born in 1822 at Point Pleasant, Clermont County, Ohio. At the age of seventeen he entered West Point, where he graduated four years later without having distinguished himself, being twenty-first in a class of thirty-nine. He was in nearly every battle of the Mexican War, and received praise for gallant conduct. He resigned his commission as captain in 1854, and attempted farming near St. Louis. At the breaking out of the Civil War he was entirely unknown to the public. When President Lincoln first called for volunteers, Grant organized a company at Galena, and offered his services by letter to the Adjutant-general, but was ignored. Marching his company to Springfield, Illinois, he was appointed by the governor to muster the State volunteers, and five weeks later was made colonel of a regiment. Shortly after, he was placed in command of the district of southeast Missouri. His first act of importance was the seizure of Paducah, which had great influence in keeping Kentucky in the Union; and the capture of Fort Donelson, which followed soon after, gave him a national reputation and won him his commission as major-general of volunteers. His career was now a series of brilliant successes, and his generalship at Chattanooga is considered by military authorities as the masterpiece of the war. After his second term as President had expired, he made a tour of the globe, and no one in the world's history ever received such a continuous series of public honors. He resided in New York City after his return, and became partner in a bank. This venture resulted in financial failure, which was immediately followed by failure of health. After suffering intensely for many months, he died on the 23d of July, 1885.

2. The five Arbitrators were: Sir Alexander Cockburn, appointed by the Queen of Great Britain; Mr. Charles Francis Adams, by the President of the United States; Count Frederick Sclopis, by the King of Italy; Mr. James Stampfli, by the Swiss Republic; Baron Marcos A. de Itajuba, by the Emperor of Brazil. Two preliminary meetings of the Board were held December 15 and 16, 1871, in the town hall at Geneva. Here Mr. J. Bancroft Davis, agent for the United States, presented his "case" printed in seven large volumes, to each of the Arbitrators; and Lord Tenterden, agent of the British government, presented his counter-statement. Count Sclopis was chosen President by his colleagues. The Board then adjourned till the 15th of June, 1872, when the actual work of arbitration commenced. The sessions continued three months, and were occupied with earnest and thorough discussion. At one time there was danger that the negotiations would be broken off, through the refusal of the British government to admit the consideration of "indirect claims" on the part of the United States; *i. e.*, claims arising from the prolongation of the war by the action of Great Britain in recognizing the Confederate States as belligerents; from the transference of American ships engaged in commerce, to the British flag, owing

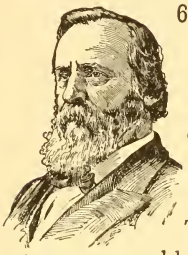
to apprehended danger from British-built cruisers: and from the actual expense incurred by the United States government in pursuing and capturing those cruisers. These "indirect claims," however, were withdrawn by the government of the United States, and the Board proceeded to discuss questions of actual and measurable damage. On the 14th of September a carefully drawn paper embodying the results was signed by all the Arbitrators excepting Sir Alexander Cockburn, who set forth his views in a separate report.

3. HORACE GREELEY (1811–1872), was born at Amherst, New Hampshire. He could read when only two years old, and at the age of seven had read all the books upon which he could lay his hands within seven miles from his father's farm-house. When Horace was ten years of age his father moved to Vermont, and in this State the son took his first step in the profession of journalism, being apprenticed to a printer. Having learned his trade, he determined to go to New York, where he arrived August 17, 1831, with but ten dollars in money and a small bundle of clothing. After working as a typesetter for about a year and a half he made several attempts at journalism, but with poor success, until, on April 10, 1841, he issued the first number of the *New York Tribune*, which has since made the name of Horace Greeley celebrated throughout the English-speaking world. He was justly proud of his success; and in the story of his life says: "I cherish the hope that the journal I projected and established will live and flourish long after I shall have moldered into forgotten dust. . . . . and that the stone which covers my ashes may bear to future eyes the still intelligible inscription, 'Founder of the *New York Tribune*.'"

CHAPTER XLIV.

TWENTY-THIRD TERM, A. D. 1877–1881.

RUTHERFORD B. HAYES, *President.* WM. A. WHEELER, *Vice-President.*



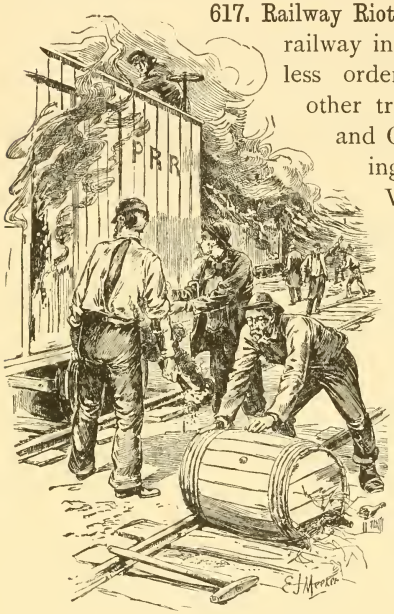
R. B. Hayes.

614. The Nineteenth President. — Among President Hayes's[1] first measures was the withdrawal of National troops from the Southern States. Governor Wade Hampton, of South Carolina, and other officials, assured him that their presence only irritated the people, and was not needed for the preservation of order. The President desired to do all that was possible toward soothing feelings of bitterness and establishing peace and friendship.

615. Civil Service Reform was the next object. Ever since Jackson's time the rule had been that "to the victors belong the spoils" after an election (§ 415). Postmasters and other officials had been appointed upon the request of members of Congress, not always with a view to the fitness of the candidate, but rather as payment for political services. President Hayes was pledged to consult the service of the public rather than of the politicians, and to regulate both his appointments and dismissals by questions of personal worth.

616. The "Grangers."—The immense power and wealth of certain railway companies had for several years attracted attention. During the war an association, called the "Patrons of Husbandry," was formed to protect the interests of Western farmers against unjust charges for transportation on the part of

the railroads, and in general to oppose all oppressive monopolies. In 1874 there were twenty thousand "Granges," or local clubs, and a membership of a million and a half.



Railway Riot in Pittsburgh.

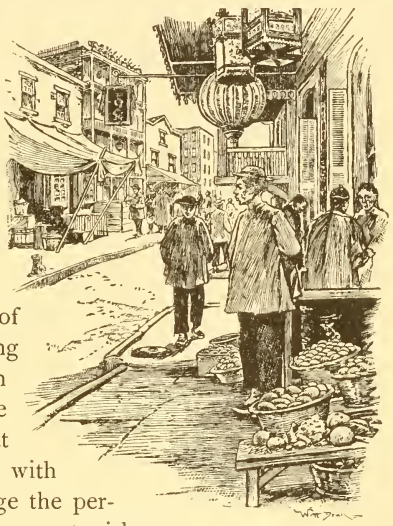
617. Railway Riots.—In the summer of 1877 railway interests were threatened in a less orderly way. Brakemen and other train-hands on the Baltimore and Ohio Railroad stopped working at Martinsburg, in West Virginia, because their wages were lowered. The business of the whole road was thus stopped. The example was quickly followed upon other roads. Because the roads hired other men to take the places of the strikers, railroad buildings and cars were burnt; and from opposition to the railway companies the movement became rebellion against the States, and even against the government at Washington, which sent troops to put down the insurgents.

618. Pittsburgh, in Pennsylvania, was the scene of the greatest violence. The mob numbered 20,000 men, and for two days had entire control of the city. 100 lives were destroyed; 125 locomotives and 2,500 freight and express cars were destroyed. Riots occurred at Chicago, St. Louis, and even at San Francisco; but here it was not railway companies, but the employers of Chinese laborers, who were attacked.

619. Communism.—The alarming fact was that the leaders in all these places were not railway hands, but restless agitators,

who were traveling from place to place exciting workmen against their employers. While the men were "striking," their families too often were starving. The railway riots were put down within a fortnight; but the problem of securing just relations between employers and employed remained to tax the best energies of thoughtful minds for many years to come.

620. The Chinese Question. —The large immigration of Chinese laborers made the problem more difficult. They already numbered more than 100,000 in America, of whom 75,000 were in the State of California alone. They crossed the Pacific often in large companies under the direction of contractors, and were willing to work at a lower price than any other workmen in the country. It was feared that the relations of "coolies" with the contractors might abridge the personal liberty which the government wishes to guarantee to every inhabitant of the country; and that the habits of heathenism, which the immigrants have brought with them, might prove injurious to the morals of the community.



Chinese Quarter of San Francisco.

621. In the early months of 1879 a bill passed both houses of Congress setting aside part of the Burlingame treaty (§ 592), and putting a check on further immigration from China. President Hayes vetoed the bill, considering the faith of the United States pledged to the observance of the treaty until both governments agreed to change it. This was effected in September of the following year, when treaties were made between the

two governments, giving the United States the right to limit or stop the immigration of Chinese laborers. An act of Congress in 1882 forbade their coming during the next ten years.

622. Increase of Wealth and Population.—On the first day of 1879, payments in gold were resumed by the Treasury and the national banks; and thus, after eighteen years, the disturbing effects of the Civil War upon the currency were ended. The four-years' term of Mr. Hayes was chiefly remarkable as a period of peace and prosperity. Bounteous harvests supplied an enormous export of grain to European markets. Immigrants arrived at our ports in greater numbers than ever before. The census taken in 1880 showed the population of the United States to be more than fifty millions.

623. Elections.—The elections in 1880 resulted in the choice of *James A. Garfield*, of Ohio, to be the twentieth President of the United States, and of *Chester A. Arthur*, of New York, to be Vice-President. The Democratic candidate for the Presidency was Winfield S. Hancock, U. S. A.

Questions.—What was President Hayes's policy toward the South? With regard to civil officers? How were railways affected during this period? How was the "Chinese Question" dealt with? What was the state of the country?

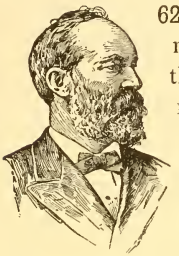
NOTE.

1. RUTHERFORD BIRCHARD HAYES was born at Delaware, Ohio, in 1822. He graduated at Kenyon College, in that State, and after taking his degree at the Harvard Law School, began to practice law at Fremont, Ohio. In 1849 he moved to Cincinnati, and soon had a flourishing practice. He was made major of the Twenty-third Ohio Volunteers in 1861, and served throughout the war. Gallant service in many of the hardest battles of the Army of the Potomac was rewarded by successive advances in rank, and at the close of the war Hayes was a brevet major-general. After the battle of Cedar Creek (§553), in which he took part, Hayes was notified of his election to Congress from the second district of Ohio. He resigned from the army in June, 1865, and the following December took his seat in Congress. He was re-elected in 1866, but resigned his seat to accept the governorship of Ohio, which he held for two successive terms. In 1875 he received an unusual honor in his native State, being elected governor for the third time. He died January 17, 1893, at Fremont, Ohio.

CHAPTER XLV.

TWENTY-FOURTH TERM, A. D. 1881–1885.

JAMES A. GARFIELD, *President.* CHESTER A. ARTHUR, *Vice-President.*



James A. Garfield.

624. The Twentieth President.—Never did an administration begin with brighter prospects than that which was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1881. The nation was at peace, and with the return of prosperity the bitterness that had sprung from civil war had passed away. President Garfield[1] represented all that is best in American life,—not only in the self-reliant virtues that had raised him from poverty to the highest position in the land, but also in the intellectual zeal and diligence that had made him one of the "most scholarly of all our statesmen," and the genial goodness and sincerity which won the confidence even of his political opponents. After four busy months, a shot from a vile assassin ended his active career, and thrilled the whole nation with grief and horror. Still there was an eighty-days' struggle for life, bravely and patiently borne; but on September 19, he died at Long Branch, in New Jersey.

July 2, 1881.

625. The Twenty-first President.—Vice-President Arthur[2] took the oath of the chief magistracy, first in the city of New York, on the night of Mr. Garfield's death, and on the 21st of September in the capitol at Washington, in the presence of the Judges of the Supreme Court. He thus became the twenty-first President of the United States.

A. D. 1881.

Chester A. Arthur

626. **Centennial at Yorktown.**—During the next month the one-hundredth anniversary of Cornwallis's surrender (§§ 303–305) drew together a large and distinguished company at Yorktown, Virginia. Descendants of the French and German officers who served under Washington in the siege in 1781, were present by the invitation of Congress, (§§ 261, 269, 302, and notes,) and the celebration lasted from the 13th to the 19th of October. The final ceremony was a salute to the British flag, which afforded a graceful and fitting close to the last memory of strife between the mother-land and her now powerful daughter.

627. The series of centennial celebrations that recalled events of the Revolution (§ 609), ended with a commemoration at Newburgh, N. Y., of the disbanding of Washington's army (§ 307); and at New York, of the evacuation of the city by the British troops November 25, 1783 (§ 308).

628. **The Red Cross Society.**—In March, 1882, the President, authorized by the Senate, put his signature to the "Convention of Geneva," an agreement made some years before by the leading nations of Europe to limit as far as possible the sufferings caused by war. It secures neutral rights to the wounded, and to all who are engaged in relieving them. The American Association of the Red Cross, formed under this convention, also aims "to organize a system of national relief" for sufferings arising from "pestilence, famine, and other calamities."

629. Various efforts were made to promote commercial intercourse with the Spanish-speaking countries to the southward. One of these was the completion, mainly by "American" capital, of the "Mexican Central Railroad," over which trains now run in five days and nights from Chicago to the city of Mexico (§ 453). The United States has a special interest in plans for connecting the Atlantic and Pacific oceans by means of ship-canals. One across the Isthmus of Panama was begun in 1881[3] by a French company.

630. A Full Treasury.—Owing to plentiful harvests and other causes, the revenues of the government for several years greatly exceeded its expenditures, and the national debt was rapidly diminished. The President's Message, December 4, 1883, represented this rapid reduction of the debt as dangerous to the money market, and proposed that the revenues be lessened.

631. Floods.—The breaking of ice-gorges, following upon a too general destruction of forests near the headwaters of many streams, caused, in the early months of 1883, and again in February, 1884, disastrous floods in the Mississippi, the Ohio, and other rivers. Cities were flooded, farm-buildings were swept away, and many thousands of people were rendered homeless.

632. Elections.—The Republicans, in convention at Chicago, June, 1884, nominated James G. Blaine; the Democrats, the following month, in the same city, chose Grover Cleveland, then governor of the State of New York. The election on the 4th of November resulted in a majority of 37 electoral votes for *Grover Cleveland* for President, and *Thomas A. Hendricks*, of Indiana, for Vice-President.

633. The New Orleans Exposition.—On December 16, 1884, an International Exposition was opened in New Orleans. Being held nearer to the tropics than any previous World's Fair (§ 469), it was designed to be especially rich in the products of countries bordering on the Gulf.

Questions.—How did Garfield's administration begin and end? Who was the twenty-first President? What was done at Yorktown? How was the Geneva Convention followed in this country? What calamities in 1883 and 1884? What was the result of the election of 1884?

NOTES.

1. JAMES ABRAM GARFIELD (1831–1881), was of New England descent, and was born in Cuyahoga County, Ohio. He was but two years old when his father died, and at the age of twelve he began to aid in supporting the family,—first as

a carpenter, then as a book-keeper, and afterwards as a boatman on the canal. But he desired a higher education, and secured it, although so poor that he was compelled to work mornings and evenings and Saturdays to pay his tuition. In 1851 he became a student of the Western Reserve Eclectic Institute, since known as Hiram College. Here he fitted for the junior year of Williams College, where he graduated with high honors in 1856. He returned to Hiram as a teacher in 1857, and became Principal. In 1859 he was elected to the State Senate, and while serving as senator at Columbus was admitted to the bar. He entered the army as colonel of an Ohio regiment in the fall of 1861. After the battle of Chickamauga, in 1863, he was made a major-general, but having been elected to the National Congress, he resigned his commission, and took his seat in that body. He was re-elected to the successive Houses until January, 1880, when he was raised to the Senate.

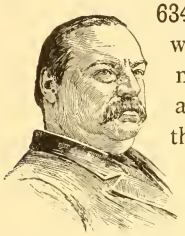
2. CHESTER ALAN ARTHUR (1830–1886), was born at Fairfield, Vermont, the son of a learned Irish clergyman. He entered Union College, Schenectady, N. Y., when only fifteen years of age, and, graduating in 1848, commenced the study of law. In 1853 he was admitted to the bar in the city of New York, and engaged in the contest against slaveholding interests which then agitated the nation. Mr. Arthur was a member of the Convention at Saratoga in 1856, which organized the Republican party, and in 1861 was called to the important post of Quartermaster-general for the State, in which office he proved his great energy and talent for organization. In 1871, he was appointed by President Grant to be Collector of the Port of New York,—one of the most lucrative offices in the gift of the government,—which he held until 1878. He died suddenly of apoplexy at his home in New York, November 18, 1886.

3. Plans for connecting the Atlantic and Pacific oceans by a canal through the narrow part of America were discussed early in the nineteenth century. In 1814 the Spanish Cortes authorized such a canal across the Isthmus of Tehuantepec, and in 1825 a company was formed in London for the purpose of making it. In 1850, a treaty between Great Britain and the United States,—the Clayton-Bulwer Treaty,—engaged that neither of the two contracting parties should obtain exclusive control over any Nicaraguan canal, nor erect fortifications to control one, nor take advantage of any intimacy or alliance with any Central American power to obtain any preference in the control over such canal which the other power did not equally possess. This provision was abrogated, however, by the treaty of 1901, which provides instead that any interoceanic ship canal built or controlled by the United States should be open to all nations on equal terms. In 1880 the United States of Colombia granted to a French company, under the presidency of Count de Lesseps, the right to make a canal across the Isthmus of Panama, and the engineers' work was begun in February, 1881. In 1889, a company chartered in the United States commenced a canal by the longer but easier route including Lake Nicaragua and the San Juan River. The passage to China and the East Indies, so diligently though vainly sought by Columbus and his followers (§§ 35, 42, 109), seems likely to be soon opened by human industry. See § 669.

CHAPTER XLVI.

TWENTY-FIFTH TERM, A. D. 1885–1889.

GROVER CLEVELAND, *President.* THOS. A. HENDRICKS, *Vice-President.*



Grover Cleveland.

634. The Twenty-second President.—*Indian affairs* were among the first to claim attention from the new administration. White settlers had been attracted to the fertile Oklahoma country in that Indian Territory which the government had guaranteed (§ 406) to the red men for their perpetual and undisturbed possession. Within ten days of his inauguration, President Cleveland[1] issued a proclamation, warning all white intruders to quit the territory, and a detachment of soldiers soon followed to see that the order was obeyed.

635. About one third part of the Indian Territory had been bought again by the United States from the four civilized "nations" of Indians, for the sole purpose of providing homes for other friendly tribes; but these lands were never open to white settlers. At the President's request, General Sheridan visited the Territory to learn the causes of disturbance. He found that cattle-owners had leased lands from the Indians, contrary to law, and that two railroad lines were claiming right of way through the Territory without the consent of the Indian legislatures. By two proclamations the President ordered all ranchmen and cattle-companies to remove their property from the Territory, and to take down all the fences which they had erected on public lands. These orders were carried into effect.

636. **Intervention in Foreign Affairs.**—Many disorders were now occurring in Central America and the Isthmus. On March 31, 1885, a body of insurgents against the Colombian government seized and burned Aspinwall, or Colon. By the President's order, 500 United States marines took possession of Panama to protect American lives and property, and secure the line of transportation across the Isthmus. As soon as order was restored, the city was given up to the Colombian authorities.

637. **Five hundred Chinese miners,** in September, 1885, were attacked by "roughs" at Rock Springs, in Wyoming Territory, and fifty were killed. The rest were driven to the hills. Anti-Chinese riots occurred also in Washington Territory and in Oregon. Troops were then ordered out, and the government declared its intention to protect all orderly Chinese.

638. **Labor Questions.**—The most important events of the time were connected with so-called "labor movements." In May, 1886, many thousands of workmen ceased labor and marched through the streets of Chicago, demanding a reduction of working hours to eight in a day. Riots followed, and the police, while trying to restore order, were attacked with dynamite bombs. Six were killed and sixty-one wounded. The survivors then fired upon the mob and dispersed it, capturing several of the leaders. Four of these were hanged eighteen months later, after full and fair trial; two were imprisoned for life, and one executed his own punishment by suicide in prison. All but one were foreigners, and all avowed themselves *Anarchists*, or foes to all government.

639. Similar disturbances took place in many parts of the country. Street-cars in New York were stopped by a "strike"; bakers and brewers were deprived of their custom because they employed workmen who were not approved by their former hands. Men employed on the Missouri Pacific Railroad stopped work and seized the company's property in Missouri and Texas. Later, still larger combinations of railway men

threatened the passage of freight between the East and the West, though it must be said that they were careful not to interrupt passenger trains. The "Knights of Labor," a powerful organization of workingmen, took an important part in the conferences between the companies and their men. Later came the American Federation of Labor, including nearly all the trades-unions, and an association of railway employés, which drew off many former "Knights," and so divided the field.

640. **Important Laws.**—The death of Vice-President Hendricks[2] in November, 1885, drew attention to the need of a law, fixing the succession to the Presidency in case of Mr. Cleveland's death. Such a law passed both Houses of Congress, and received the President's signature in January, 1886. It provides that if ever the President and Vice-President should both die or be disabled from office, the Secretary of State shall become President, and be followed, in case of his death, by the other cabinet officers in their order. Another important law gave greater security to the counting of the electoral vote for President and Vice-President. The Interstate Commerce Law, in January, 1887, provided for the regulation of railway charges.

641. **A Fisheries Commission,** appointed by the governments of Great Britain and the United States, met at Washington in November, 1887. Collisions had occurred between the fishermen of New England and Canada, in the waters surrounding the British Provinces, and vessels from Gloucester, Mass., had even been seized by Canadian officers. A treaty was agreed upon, but failed to receive the approval of the Senate.

642. **Disasters.**—Several terrific tempests passed over the West and South, wrecking many buildings and destroying lives. Charleston and Savannah were thus visited in August, 1885, and property to the amount of two millions was destroyed. Kansas City, Mo., and Xenia, O., suffered from hurricanes in May, 1886. But far more serious was the earthquake of Au-

gust, 1886, felt over a great part of the country, but spending its greatest force upon Charleston, S. C. Houses were overthrown and many human beings were buried in the ruins, while the death of unnumbered feeble and aged people was hastened by the shock. The next October a terrible gale visited Louisiana and Texas. The town of Sabine Pass was demolished; many human lives were destroyed and thousands of cattle swept away by the floods. January, 1888, was marked by a "blizzard," accompanied by arctic cold on the plains of Nebraska, Minnesota, and the Dakotas. Probably a thousand lives were lost, among them those of many children, who, with their teachers, were surprised at school and perished while trying to reach their homes. Two months later the streets of New York and the neighboring cities were blocked by an almost equally violent snow-storm which extended over all the middle Atlantic coast and far inland.

643. **Two Centennials** fell within the last two years of Mr. Cleveland's term. The first,—September 15–17, 1887,—completed a hundred years from the adoption of the Constitution of the United States. It was celebrated in Philadelphia by orations, and by processions of soldiers and workingmen through gayly decorated streets. A century of trial had proved the wisdom of those men of 1787, who labored so well to establish the new nation in principles of righteousness (§§ 314–318). The other Centennial commemorated the settlement, in 1788, of the Ohio Valley, in consequence of the organization of the Northwest Territory. It was first celebrated at Marietta (§ 325), and afterwards at Cleveland, Columbus, Cincinnati, and many other cities. A grand Exposition of the results of a century of progress was held four months at Cincinnati.

644. **The November elections, 1888**, resulted in the choice of the Republican candidates: *Benjamin Harrison*, of Indiana, became President, and *Levi P. Morton*, of New York, Vice-President, of the United States.

Questions.—How did the government intervene in Indian Territory, and why? What was done in Central America? How were Chinese treated in Wyoming? What "labor-troubles" in Chicago and elsewhere? Who would be at the head of the government upon the death of both President and Vice-President? What storms and other calamities during this term? What centennials? Who were elected in 1888?

NOTES.

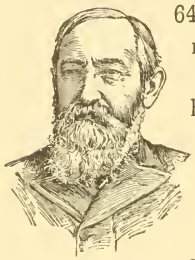
1. GROVER CLEVELAND was born at Caldwell, N. J., March 18, 1837. His father was a Presbyterian minister, and, during his son's early childhood, moved to the State of New York. Grover Cleveland studied law at Buffalo, N. Y., and at twenty-six years of age was elected Assistant District Attorney for Erie County. The manner in which he discharged his duties marked him as an able lawyer and a popular candidate for future political offices. As mayor of Buffalo he reformed many abuses. He broke up political rings, and demanded the proper use of the city funds and the proper discharge of all official duties. In this way he placed the administration of the city affairs on a sound business basis. His integrity, ability, and courage increased his popularity, and, in 1882, before his term of office as mayor had expired, he was nominated by the Democratic party for the governorship of the State of New York. He was elected by a majority of more than 190,000 votes, and he carried into his new office the same characteristics that distinguished him in the past. Cleveland's great popularity in his own State led to his nomination by the Democratic party for the Presidency in 1884. The electoral vote was very evenly balanced throughout the country, and it became apparent that the thirty-six electoral votes of New York would turn the scale. The close and exciting contest in that State was watched with intense interest by the whole nation. As President, Cleveland made a more vigorous use of his veto power than any chief magistrate before him, not even excepting Jackson. He died in 1908.

2. THOMAS ANDREWS HENDRICKS was born near Zanesville, Ohio, September 7, 1819. Soon after this time the family moved to Indiana. After graduating from college with high honors, he studied law and was admitted to the bar. But politics early claimed his attention, and in this field his progress was rapid and eventful. Mr. Hendricks was elected to a seat in the Indiana legislature when but twenty-eight years of age, and at various times filled the offices of Representative in Congress, Commissioner of the General Land Office, United States Senator, Governor of Indiana, and finally that of Vice-President of the United States. On the 25th of November, 1885, before Congress convened, Mr. Hendricks died very suddenly at his home in Indianapolis, of paralysis of the heart.

CHAPTER XLVII.

TWENTY-SIXTH TERM, A. D. 1889–1893.

BENJAMIN HARRISON,[1] *President.* LEVI P. MORTON, *Vice-President.*



Benjamin Harrison.

645. **The Twenty-third President.** — During the month following his inauguration, President Harrison announced that the lands of Oklahoma (§ 634) would be open for settlement at noon, April 22. There followed a wild rush from the north, east, and south, and never was a region so quickly filled. The towns of Guthrie and Oklahoma City sprang up in a day. The Territory was organized in May, 1890, with Guthrie as its capital.

646. **Six new States** were added to the Union within two years. Washington, Montana, and North and South Dakota were admitted in 1889, Idaho and Wyoming in 1890. In the last-named State, women vote on the same conditions as men. Idaho permits no Mormon to vote or to hold public office.

647. **Centennial at New York.** — A hundred years had now gone by since the inauguration of Washington to be the first President of the Federal Republic. Three days were devoted to a grand celebration, in the city and harbor of New York, of that great and happy event.

April 29—May 1, 1889.

648. **A New Tariff,** known from its promoter as the McKinley Bill, passed the Fifty-First Congress, and became a law October 1, 1890. It admitted foreign sugar free from duties, but increased the rates on many other articles.

An International Copyright Law was also passed after sixty years' struggle against conflicting interests, giving copyright protection to foreign authors of such nations as grant corresponding protection to American authors.

The pension-list was extended to include all men who, after honorable service in the Civil War, should become incapable of self-support, whether injured in battle or not.

649. **Serious Disturbance** arose in New Orleans from a secret society of Italians known as the *Mafia*. They defied the laws, and when their disorderly proceedings were punished by arrest, the Superintendent of Police was murdered. Twelve persons were arrested for complicity in this murder, but upon trial they were not convicted. As a result the whole community became enraged, and on March 14, 1891, the Parish Prison was broken open, and eleven Italians were summarily put to death. The grand jury called to consider the case, failed to indict any murderers. Some of the murdered men were still subjects of the King, who felt bound to protest against this case of mob law, and the Italian Minister at Washington was recalled to Italy for a time. The result to be hoped for from these strange occurrences is a stricter inquiry into the character of immigrants.

650. **Chilean Affairs.**—During a civil war in Chile, a mob of Chileans attacked some sailors who had gone ashore at Valparaiso from the United States cruiser, *Baltimore*. Two sailors were killed, and President Harrison demanded satisfaction. The new Chilean government made full apologies, and sent a large sum of money to the families of the murdered men.

651. **Ballot Reform.**—The scandal arising from the money spent in elections made all good citizens desire some plan under which it should be impossible to buy or sell votes. The system in use in Australia seemed most fair; and most of our States have now adopted laws which have the main features of the Australian scheme. Ballots are printed at the public cost, and each man is alone when he prepares his vote.

652. October, 1892, witnessed grand celebrations of the first landing of Columbus on American soil. All the great cities were filled with brilliant parades, military, naval, civic, or industrial. Many thousand school children marched in gay processions. The main building of the "White City by the Lake" in Chicago was dedicated with impressive ceremonies. Congress had already voted large sums of money for a World's Columbian Exposition, to celebrate the completion of four centuries since the great discovery (§§ 36–40).

653. The Elections of November, 1892, resulted in victory to the Democratic Party, which gained not only the Executive, but a majority in both houses of Congress. Grover Cleveland, of New York, became President, and Adlai E. Stevenson, of Illinois, Vice-President. The new People's Party, which had grown out of the Farmers' Alliance in some of the great agricultural states, elected 27 out of the 444 Presidential electors.

Questions.—How was Oklahoma settled? What four States were admitted in 1889? What two in 1890? Describe the Centennial in New York. What important measures were passed by the Fifty-first Congress? What occasioned the riots at New Orleans in the spring of 1891? To what extent did the Chilean war affect us? What changes have been made in ballot laws, and why? What were the chief events of 1892?

Points for Essays.—New York in 1789 and 1889. A story of Oklahoma. The Columbian Celebration.

NOTE.

1. BENJAMIN HARRISON, grandson of the hero of Tippecanoe and the Thames (see §§ 368, 375, 383, 433, 434), was born at North Bend, Ohio, August 20, 1833. His father, John Scott Harrison, was member of Congress. The son received a liberal education at Miami University, and studied law at Cincinnati. In 1854 he settled himself for the practice of law at Indianapolis. In 1860 he became Reporter to the State Supreme Court, but two years later he entered the army as lieutenant of volunteers. He was afterwards called to the command of the 70th Indiana Regiment, and served until the end of the war, being brevetted Brigadier-General in January, 1865. He served on the Mississippi River Commission in 1878, and in 1880 was elected to the Senate of the United States. He died in 1901.

CHAPTER XLVIII.

TWENTY-SEVENTH TERM, A. D. 1893–1897.

GROVER CLEVELAND, *President.* ADLAI E. STEVENSON, *Vice-President.*

654. **The World's Columbian Exposition** (§652) was opened at Chicago on the first of May, 1893. All the nations of the earth were represented by specimens of their arts and industries. Natives of Greenland and Dahomey, of Java and Japan, were seen, side by side with Europeans, Canadians, and citizens of every State and Territory of the American Union. The buildings near the lagoon were marvels of beauty. The latest wonders of science were shown in the buildings assigned to Electricity, Machinery, and Transportation. The most improved methods in Education, and all the arts which contribute to the health, comfort, and elevation of human life, were discussed in a series of Congresses. A chorus of more than 12,000 school-children had part in the musical concerts which were among the delights of the Fair.

655. **Fifty-Third Congress. Extra Session.**—Several causes—some of them of world-wide effect—brought about a money-crisis so severe in the summer of 1893, that the President called an extra session of Congress, to meet August 7. This Congress repealed part of a law passed in July, 1890, which required the Government to buy four and a half million ounces of silver every month. The regular session of Congress, which soon followed, passed the Wilson Tariff Bill, putting many raw materials on the free list, and lowering duties on others. During the months of uncertainty, anxiety and depression grew intense. Multitudes of banks, mills, and factories were closed; hundreds

of thousands of people were thrown out of employment. The loss to the country from suspension of business was estimated at one third of the cost of the Civil War. (See § 577.)

656. An important "Cotton States and International Exposition" was held at Atlanta, Georgia, in 1895. A Convention at Salt Lake City framed a State Constitution for Utah on a basis of equal suffrage for men and women. Congress having voted its admission into the Union, Utah became the forty-fifth State [Jan., 1896], leaving only five territories,—Oklahoma, New Mexico, Arizona, Indian Territory, and Alaska.

657. Election.—A Republican Convention met at St. Louis in June, 1896, and nominated William McKinley of Ohio to be President, and Garret A. Hobart of New Jersey to be Vice-President. The two principal features of its platform were higher "protection" and the maintenance of the existing gold standard in money. A Democratic Convention meeting at Chicago, adopted a platform favoring free coinage of silver at a ratio of sixteen ounces of silver to one of gold, and nominating Wm. J. Bryan of Nebraska and Arthur Sewall of Maine as its candidates for President and Vice-President. A Populist Convention met later at St. Louis, and ratified the nomination of Bryan. The "National Democrats," dissatisfied with the principles announced at Chicago, met later at Indianapolis and declared their adhesion to a single gold standard, and against high protective duties. Senator Palmer of Illinois was their candidate for President, and General Buckner of Kentucky for Vice-President. The campaign turned therefore upon questions of tariff and the money-standard. It resulted in the election of McKinley and Hobart.

Questions.—What was the great event of 1893? What important subjects were discussed by the Fifty-Third Congress? What industrial troubles in 1893 and 1894? What were the chief occurrences of 1895–6? Who were elected in 1896?

Hints for Essays.—A Story of Hard Times. An Interview with Columbus.

CHAPTER XLIX.

TWENTY-EIGHTH AND TWENTY-NINTH TERMS, A. D. 1897–1905.

WILLIAM MCKINLEY,[1] *President.* GARRET A. HOBART, THEODORE ROOSEVELT,[2] } *Vice-Presidents.*

658. Domestic Affairs.—Two days after his inauguration, President McKinley called an extra session of Congress to meet on March 15, 1897. A new Tariff Bill was promptly reported by Mr. Dingley of Maine, Chairman of the Ways and Means Committee of the House of Representatives. Its object was to provide a larger revenue for the government, and at the same time to give greater "protection" to the industries of the country, including farming. To this end, duties were laid on raw wool and on lumber, and those on sugar were largely increased. The bill was passed and signed by the President, July 24, 1897.

William McKinley.

Several cities and districts lying on Long and Staten islands and along the Hudson River were united under one charter with New York in 1898. New York thus became second only to Greater London among the great cities of the world, and Brooklyn, which was fourth in population of the cities of the United States, became "Brooklyn Borough" of a metropolis numbering more than three millions of people.

659. **War with Spain.**—The rich island of Cuba suffered much under the rule of Spain, and made many efforts to be free. Her last rebellion began in 1895, and though 200,000 Spanish soldiers were sent to subdue it, three years of cruel war failed to restore order. Our government warned Spain that the struggle could not go on forever. Our citizens had millions of dollars invested in Cuban plantations and in a trade that was being ruined by the devastation of the island. Moreover, we were shocked by the treatment of the *reconcentrados*, harmless country people who had been driven from their homes to starve in fever-stricken camps near the towns.

On the night of Feb. 15, 1898, our battle-ship *Maine* was blown up in Havana harbor with a loss of 260 men. After that, our President tried in vain to bring about a peaceable settlement of affairs. Congress passed a resolution, demanding the immediate withdrawal of Spanish forces, and war began April 21.

Although the independence of Cuba was the immediate object of the war, the first blow was struck on the opposite side of the globe, in the Spanish colony of the Philippines. There, in Manila Bay, May 1, Commodore Dewey's squadron completely destroyed a Spanish fleet. And there in August, the city of Manila was captured by the combined movements of Dewey's ships and a United States army which had been transported across the Pacific.

The other battles of the war were fought in the West Indies. The Spanish Admiral Cervera took refuge with his squadron in the fortified harbor of Santiago de Cuba, where he was blockaded by our ships under Rear-Admiral Sampson and Commodore Schley. To make the blockade complete, Lieut. R. P. Hobson sank the collier *Merrimac* at the narrowest point in the entrance to the harbor. This was done at night in a storm of shot and shell from the forts. Hobson and his comrades gave themselves up as prisoners of war, but they were soon exchanged. Gen. Shafter landed a force of 18,000 men, and

60
120
180
120
60
0
60
80
40
0
40
80
SIBERIA
CHINA
INDIA
ALASKA
CANADA
GREENLAND
SPITZBERGEN
NOVA ZEMBLA
ARCTIC CIRCLE
ICELAND
BRITISH ISLES
London
UNITED STATES
San Francisco
New York
Pekin
Vladivostok
JAPAN
Yokohama
Calcutta
Hong Kong
Manila
WAKE I.
GUAM
PHILIPPINE IS.
HAWAIIAN IS.
TROPIC OF CANCER
EQUATOR
TROPIC OF CAPRICORN
CUBA
WEST INDIES
PORTO RICO
Panama
Rio de Janeiro
Valparaiso
Buenos Aires
Cape Town
Melbourne
Sydney
NEW ZEALAND
60 Longitude 120 East 180 Longitude 120 West from 60 Greenwich 0 Longitude East 60

by hard fighting took and held the outer defenses of Santiago, July 1, 2. Cervera's fleet, in trying to escape from the harbor, was attacked by our fleet and all his vessels were stranded or sunk. Santiago was surrendered, July 14, together with the eastern end of Cuba and an army of 22,000 men. The island of Porto Rico was occupied by Gen. Miles with little fighting, most of its people being glad of a change of government.

660. **The Treaty of Peace.**—On August 12, preliminaries of peace were signed at Washington, and in October five American and five Spanish commissioners met at Paris to complete the work. After ten weeks' discussion, a treaty was signed, December 10, by which Spain gave up all her claims to Cuba, and ceded Porto Rico and the Philippines to the United States, receiving in turn, $20,000,000. Some of the inhabitants of the Philippines, who had previously rebelled against Spanish rule, began in February, 1899, a war against the authority of the United States.

The new Republic of Hawaii desired from its beginning to be under the protection of our flag. By a joint resolution of Congress in July, 1898, it was annexed to the United States, and in 1900 it was made a Territory.

661. **The Gold Standard.**—In March, 1900, Congress enacted a law that the United States notes or greenbacks shall be paid in gold, at the same time setting aside a large reserve of gold money to meet such payments. The notes thus redeemed are issued again. The law also provides that most of the national bonds shall be paid in gold, and makes it the duty of the Secretary of the Treasury to keep all our money equal to gold in value.

662. The government pursued its efforts to restore order and prosperity in its new possessions and dependencies. Free schools were multiplied in Cuba, Porto Rico, and the Philippines. Some American colleges offered free scholarships to young Cubans, and in July, 1900, fourteen hundred Cuban teachers arrived on government transports at Boston, to spend six weeks in the Harvard Summer School at Cambridge. They

were the guests of Harvard University, and gained many ideas of studies and methods for the benefit of their Cuban pupils. Our military government of Cuba came to an end May 20, 1902, when the Cuban republic was proclaimed.

663. Meanwhile, armed resistance continued in the Philippines. In March, 1900, the President appointed a commission of five men, headed by Judge William H. Taft, to reside in the islands, give them as soon as possible the institutions of peaceful civil life, and guide them in the direction of self-government.

664. **Disorders in China**, involving the lives and property of many Americans, made it necessary for our military and naval forces to join those of Great Britain, Germany, France, Russia, and Japan in the harbor of Taku near Pekin in May, 1900. The Boxers, a Chinese society that had engaged in killing foreigners and native Christians, were encouraged by the Empress Dowager and Prince Tuan, father of the heir-apparent, though opposed by several powerful viceroys in the south. The forts at Taku, refusing to surrender, were bombarded and taken by the European fleets. The German ambassador was murdered by a mob in a street of Pekin. Our embassy and hundreds of foreigners took refuge in the British Legation, where they were besieged eight weeks until relieved by an army of the allies which had marched from Tientsin. Our troops had their full share in the rescue of the besieged, but not in the bombardment of the forts at Taku; because our government had no war against the Chinese Empire, but desires its preservation, if rioters shall be restrained or punished, and an "open door" to the commerce of all nations be maintained.

665. **The Election** in November, 1900, resulted in a second term of office for President William McKinley, with Theodore Roosevelt of New York as Vice-President.

666. **Death of the President.**—The second inauguration of President McKinley took place March 4, 1901; but he served less than seven months of his second term. A great fair—the

Pan-American Exposition — was held at Buffalo, New York, in the summer and autumn of this year, and there President McKinley delivered an address, September 5th. The next day, while holding a public reception in one of the exposition buildings, shaking hands with all who chose to meet him, he was treacherously shot by a young anarchist. For a few days it was hoped that he would recover; but on September 14th he died from his wound. The same day Vice-President Roosevelt took the presidential oath, and became the twenty-sixth President of the United States.

667. **A Great Strike** in the anthracite coal fields in the summer and fall of 1902 was of especial importance for two reasons. It caused a shortage in the coal supply of many cities, and therefore much inconvenience and distress; and it was ended in a new way—namely, by the influence of the President. At his suggestion, the striking miners and the mine owners submitted their disputes to the arbitration of a commission appointed by him, and meanwhile work was resumed. The commission listened for weeks to the evidence and arguments presented by each side, and its decision settled the various points of dispute, some in favor of each side, in substantial justice to both.

Theodore Roosevelt.

668. A dispute over the boundary of southern Alaska was decided in 1903 by the arbitration of a tribunal appointed under the terms of a special treaty with Great Britain. The dispute turned on the meaning of a treaty between Russia (§ 591) and Great Britain, establishing the boundary. The chief point at issue was whether Alaska should have a continuous strip of mainland or whether the line should cut across certain bays and inlets so as to give Canada some seaports there. The decision was in favor of the United States.

669. **The Isthmian Canal.** The French Panama Canal Company (§ 629) failed after spending many millions of dollars. A

commission of United States engineers made a careful examination of the Panama and Nicaragua routes, and estimated the cost of constructing each canal. The owners of the unfinished Panama canal having offered to sell for $40,000,000, Congress passed an act in 1902 authorizing the President to buy and complete it; or to construct the Nicaragua canal in case good title and control of the Panama route could not be obtained. In accordance with this act a treaty was negotiated with Colombia, by which the control of a six-mile strip across the Isthmus of Panama was to be secured for $10,000,000 and an annual rental of $250,000. But the Colombian Congress rejected the treaty, and then the Colombian province of Panama seceded and declared its independence, November 3, 1903. The Panama Republic was quickly recognized by the United States and later by other nations, and a treaty was negotiated with the new government of Panama for the control of a ten-mile strip on terms similar to those of the rejected Colombian treaty.

670. **Election.** In 1904 Theodore Roosevelt was the Republican candidate for President with Charles W. Fairbanks of Indiana for Vice-President. The Democrats nominated Judge Alton B. Parker of New York on a platform which attacked the administration of Roosevelt but was silent on the money question. The issue turned chiefly on Roosevelt's record, and the Republican candidates were elected by a large majority.

Questions.—What was the purpose of the tariff bill of 1897? What is the Greater New York? Tell the story of the war with Spain. What have been its results? Describe the other events of McKinley's administration. How did it come to an end? Tell about the Isthmian Canal. Describe the other events of Roosevelt's first administration.

NOTES.

1. WILLIAM MCKINLEY (1843-1901) was born in Niles, Trumbull Co., Ohio. When he was two years old his parents removed to Poland in the Western Reserve (§§ 134, 299), that they might find good schools for their seven children. As William grew up he was a diligent student, and at 17 taught a district school in a village near Poland. The Civil War in 1861 interrupted his plans for college, and he enlisted in the 23d Ohio Regiment, under Rosecrans as Colonel

and R. B. Hayes as Major. He distinguished himself by such able service that he was urged at the end of the war to take a place in the regular army. He chose, however, the pursuits of peace and studied law with Judge Glidden of Poland, so successfully that he was Prosecuting Attorney for his county at the age of 26. In 1876 he was elected to Congress, and for fourteen years busied himself with questions relating to tariff, taxation, and industrial conditions of the country. In 1881 he became chairman of the Ways and Means Committee and later was a chief promoter of the bill which bears his name (§ 648). He was Governor of Ohio from 1891 to 1895.

2. THEODORE ROOSEVELT was born in the city of New York, October 27, 1858; graduated from Harvard College 1880; and was a member of the New York Legislature 1882–1884. He was National Civil Service Commissioner, 1889–1895, and President of the New York Police Board, 1895–1897, where he did excellent work in the enforcement of laws. He was Assistant Secretary of the Navy, 1897–1898, but resigned at the beginning of the war with Spain, to organize, with Col. (now Gen.) Leonard Wood, the first U. S. Cavalry Volunteers, commonly called "Roosevelt's Rough Riders." Of this regiment he was at first Lieutenant Colonel, but afterward for gallantry in action was promoted to be Colonel. He was Governor of New York 1898–1900. On becoming President, he made no changes in the lines of policy established by his predecessor, but his great personal energy was felt in efforts to bring about a better understanding between rival interests in the industrial concerns of the country.

CHAPTER L.

THIRTIETH TERM, A. D. 1905-1909.

THEODORE ROOSEVELT, *President.* CHARLES W. FAIRBANKS, *Vice-President.*

671. **The Peace Conference at Portsmouth,** N. H. (August, September, 1905) ended a destructive war between Russia and Japan. This conclusion was brought about by the good offices of President Roosevelt, who invited the warring Powers to send representatives to America, fully to discuss the points in dispute and agree upon a settlement that should be just to all. The invitation was accepted, and each Emperor sent two able men with power to make a treaty of peace. The meetings were held at the United States Navy Yard near Portsmouth, where for nearly a month the envoys labored to reconcile conflicting claims. At length, with the consent of both imperial governments, the treaty was signed, September 5, 1905.

672. **Acts of Congress, 1906.**—Several States had adopted laws to prevent frauds by manufacturers of foods and drugs, through adulteration, misleading labels, and the use of harmful preservatives. In 1906 Congress forbade the importation or transportation from one State to another of adulterated or misbranded foods, drugs, and liquors. It also provided for the efficient inspection of meat-packing establishments, the products of which enter into interstate or foreign commerce. Another act enlarged and extended the powers of the Interstate Commerce Commission, created in 1887, over interstate railroads, express companies, sleeping-car companies, etc.

Another act provided for the admission of a forty-sixth State. Oklahoma and Indian Territory, having accepted by a large

vote the constitution prepared by their joint convention at Guthrie, were proclaimed by the President, Nov. 16, 1907, to be admitted to the Union as the new State of Oklahoma.

673. **Money Matters** claimed the greatest share of attention during Roosevelt's second term. Danger was apprehended from the great accumulations of capital known as "trusts," and in one year, 1907, the federal Government brought 34 suits against such companies, under the Interstate Commerce Laws, for "acts in restraint of trade." Most important of all was the prosecution of the Standard Oil Company for having obtained rebates from various railroads, thus throwing unjust burdens on smaller dealers. It was found guilty, and sentenced to a penalty of $29,240,000, the heaviest fine ever imposed under American law. But the case was appealed, and a new trial resulted in acquittal.

Meanwhile, unsettled conditions culminated in a financial panic, beginning in New York in October, 1907, which threw hundreds of thousands of men out of work and caused untold suffering for many months.

674. **Victories of Science and Industry** were seen in great works like the subways of New York and the tunnels under Hudson and East Rivers, by which trains are run from New Jersey to Long Island below the surface of land and water. Wireless telegraphy, already an accomplished fact, through the labors of Marconi and others, was first established as a regular commercial service between America and Europe in October, 1907.

675. A fleet of sixteen United States battle ships and ten smaller vessels, carrying 15,000 men, left Hampton Roads, Va., Dec. 16, 1907, for a cruise around the world. After visiting ports in South America, Mexico, California, Hawaii, New Zealand and Australia, the Philippines, Japan, China, and Ceylon, they returned by way of the Red Sea and Suez Canal, completing their tour in a little more than a year.

676. **The Greatest Event** of the Roosevelt administrations, measured by the end sought and the probable results, was the meeting at Washington, in May, 1908, of the governors of nearly all the States and Territories to find means for conserving the natural wealth of the nation, especially its forests. A commission of 57 men was appointed to further the same object, and a second conference was held in November. It was then decided to hold an international conference in February, 1909, in which the governments of Canada and Mexico were invited to take part. This North American Conference, having considered the immense importance of the interests involved, advised the President to call for a World Conference looking to a general effort toward the wise guardianship of the resources provided by Nature for the food and industries of man. The Queen of the Netherlands concurring, the governments of 45 nations were in fact invited to send delegates to the Hague at some time afterward to be agreed upon. The reason was thus stated: "The peoples of to-day hold the earth in trust for the peoples to come after them." To study the conservation of our national resources, congresses have been held at Seattle, at St. Paul, and at Kansas City.

677. Having aided the Island of Cuba to become free from Spanish dominion (§659), our government continued its good offices in promoting order, peace, and health, until, in 1902, an independent republic was organized under President Palma. But the new republic was weak, and soon became the victim of revolutionary plots. Palma begged the United States to intervene again for its protection (1906), and William H. Taft, then Secretary of War, and Robert Bacon, Acting Secretary of State, were sent from Washington as commissioners to establish a Provisional Government, which was to last only "long enough to restore order, peace, and public confidence," and to hold new elections. The Cubans were governed under their own flag and

by their own laws for two and a half years, no changes being made excepting such as were needed to make the administration of government simpler and more secure. These ends having been accomplished, the American officers and soldiers were withdrawn from the island, early in 1909.

678. In the election of 1908 the Republican candidate, William H. Taft, was chosen to be President, and James S. Sherman of New York, Vice-President. The Democratic candidate for President was, for the third time, William J. Bryan.

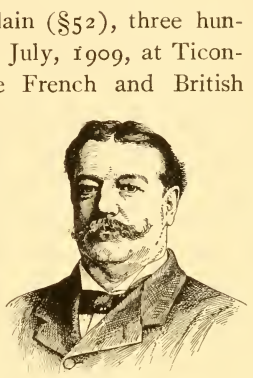
Questions.—What was done by the Conference at Portsmouth? Name several acts of Congress of 1906. What new State was admitted? Name some financial occurrences in 1907. Trace on a globe, or maps, the cruise of the battle ships in 1907-1909. What was the purpose of the Governors' Conference? What was done by the Provisional Government of Cuba (1906-1909)? Who was elected President in 1908?

CHAPTER LI.

THIRTY-FIRST TERM, A. D. 1909-1913.

WILLIAM H. TAFT,[1] *President.* JAMES S. SHERMAN, *Vice-President.*

679. The discovery of Lake Champlain (§52), three hundred years before, was commemorated in July, 1909, at Ticonderoga, N. Y., President Taft and the French and British ambassadors to our government being present. In the following September the Hudson-Fulton celebration in New York harbor was a brilliant testimonial both to Henry Hudson (§109 and Note), who discovered the great river in 1609, and to Robert Fulton (§362 and Note), whose zeal and perseverance led to its navigation by steam in 1807. Copies of Hudson's Dutch ship, the quaint little *Half Moon*, and of Fulton's first steamboat, the *Clermont*, led a gala procession, in which floated flags of nearly all civilized nations, from New York to Albany. The President's autumnal tour (Sept.-Nov. 1909) of 13,000 miles through the West and South, was attended by several remarkable incidents. He presided at the opening, September 23, of the great Gunnison Tunnel in western Colorado, one of the most wonderful works by which the United States Reclamation Service[2] is carrying the waters of the "Continental Divide" to lands hitherto uninhabitable by man. Later he was present at the Alaska-Yukon-Pacific Exposition at Seattle; and on October 16 he met President Diaz of Mexico at the frontier towns of El Paso and Juarez. Afterward he visited New Orleans.



William H. Taft.

680. **Important Laws.** After his inauguration, March 4, 1909, Mr. Taft called an extra session of Congress which met on March 15. The President's message urged a prompt revision of our duties on foreign goods, to the lowering of which his party was already pledged. The new bill was introduced into the House by Representative Payne of New York, and afterwards into the Senate by Senator Aldrich of Rhode Island; hence it was known as the Payne-Aldrich Tariff. Having passed the House and the Senate with some amendments, it was signed by the President, August 5, 1909. This Congress also proposed an amendment to the Constitution, giving Congress full power to levy an income tax. It was in 1909, also, that our War Department purchased its first aeroplane, or flying machine, for use in the Signal Corps.[3] The following year an enabling act was passed for the admission of New Mexico and Arizona, which became the forty-seventh and forty-eighth States early in 1912. In 1912 Congress proposed an amendment to the Constitution, providing for the election of senators (§317) by popular vote.

Questions.—What famous events were commemorated in 1909? What tariff law was enacted that year? What new States were admitted in 1912?

NOTES.

1. William Howard Taft was born in Cincinnati, Ohio, 1857; was graduated from Yale University, 1878, and from the Cincinnati College Law School, 1880. For the next two years he was Public Prosecutor of Hamilton County, Ohio, and later Collector of Internal Revenue. He was Judge of the Superior Court of Ohio, 1887-1890; Solicitor General of the United States 1890-1892; and Judge of the United States Circuit Court until 1900. He then became Chairman of the Board of Commissioners appointed by President McKinley to establish a civil government in the Philippines, and was himself the first American Governor of the islands. He entered President Roosevelt's Cabinet as Secretary of War, 1904, and rendered important service both in Cuba and on the Isthmus of Panama.

2. "On June 17, 1902, Congress enacted a law known as the National Reclamation Act. Briefly, this act provided that the money received from the sales of public lands in fourteen arid states and two territories should be used as a reclamation fund for the construction of the works necessary to irrigate arid lands in those states and territories. By wise provisions in the law this fund was made revolving. As soon as any work is completed the owners of land benefited must begin to return the cost thereof, payments being made in ten annual installments without interest. The money so returned can be used over and over again in the construction of other works. To eliminate speculation and to put a stop to the greedy acquisition of large areas, it was further provided that no man could own more than 160 acres under any of these works, and such owner must actually reside upon and cultivate his land. The area reclaimed will each year increase the value of farm crops by $60,000,000; it will add $232,000,000 to the taxable property of the people; it will furnish homes for 80,000 families on farms and in villages and towns. The twenty-five projects upon which the government is now engaged, when developed to their full extent, will add 3,198,000 acres to the crop-producing area of the United States."—*National Geographical Magazine, April, 1907.*

3. The Conquest of the Air has been a notable achievement of the last few years. The first "man-flight" on record was made by the Wright brothers of Dayton, Ohio, in December, 1903. Their machine was a biplane heavier than air, and managed by levers. It remained only 59 seconds in the air and moved one sixth of a mile. After this experiment, rapid progress was made in construction and control. Flights of several hundred miles have been made, and heights of more than 10,000 feet have been reached. European nations are perhaps more interested in "dirigible air-ships" of greater size than aeroplanes and raised by gases lighter than air. They are supposed to be capable of greater use in war.

CHAPTER LII.

PROGRESS OF THE REPUBLIC.

The Smithsonian Institution.

681. **Territory.**—In but little more than a hundred years the United States has grown from a string of feeble colonies on the Atlantic coast to be one of the greatest nations on earth. Reaching from ocean to ocean, it covers three and a half

millions of square miles, mainly in the zone where men are strongest and most active. The summer sun never sets upon its whole extent; for to-morrow will have dawned upon the forests of Maine before to-day has left the most western islands of Alaska. Instead of thirteen States, we have now forty-eight. The vast region west of the Mississippi, nearly unknown a hundred years ago, has been not only explored, but in great measure settled, and divided into States.

682. Population.—The first census, in 1790, numbered fewer than four millions of people: now there are about one hundred millions. And yet a large part of the country is still public land, at the disposal of Congress and the President. This includes many mountainous and desert tracts, unfit for farming; but there is still fertile land enough, untouched by the plow, to yield food for many millions of human beings. The government freely gives a homestead to any man who will live upon the land and cultivate it, or who has planted five or ten acres with trees.

683. Highways and Railroads.—A hundred years ago, roads were few and rough (§ 211); long journeys had often to be made on horseback; rivers were commonly passed by swimming, or at best by fords. Now, good roads cross the country in every direction, rivers are bridged, and even high mountain places are easily reached. In the year 1830 there were 23 miles of railroad in the United States. Now there are about 250,000 miles. The "Central and Union Pacific," which was a wonder of the world in 1869 (§ 594), is now only one of several direct lines across the continent within the limits of the United States. The journey which consumed weary months in 1849, can now be made with perfect comfort in six days and nights. Among great works that have made travel easier is the Hoosac Tunnel, nearly five miles long, through a mountain in Massachusetts. It was opened in 1873. The Brooklyn Bridge, across the western inlet to Long Island Sound, was completed

in 1883, making a new and perfect avenue between the great cities of New York and Brooklyn. For some years it was the longest suspension bridge in the world.

684. Means of Communication.—The magnetic telegraph, unknown in 1840, now uses wire enough in its public lines in the United States to extend sixty times around the globe. The lines belonging to railway and other companies, and to private persons, may double the amount. Through the telephone, spoken words are heard to a great distance by means of electrified wire. Its lines measure already more than 5,000,000 miles. A still later invention is the phonograph, which keeps the impression of spoken words, and gives them out again after any length of time—bridging centuries, perhaps, with living voices. The growth of the postal service from colonial days to ours (§ 151) is not less remarkable than these late inventions. A postal card or a newspaper can be sent from Maine to Oregon for one cent, and a letter for two cents, in scarcely more than a week.

685. By many inventions life is made easier. Work is done with less wear of human muscles, and instead of spending their whole strength in merely earning their daily bread, men are free to raise themselves, if they will, to a more intelligent and happier life. Farmers' work, in many places, is wholly different from that of colonial times. The ground is opened and "cultivated," the seed is sown or planted, and the harvests are reaped, threshed, and winnowed,—all by machinery. The great mineral wealth of the Pacific States has called for the invention of improved processes in mining. Some of the finest machinery in the world is used in our flour mills and cotton factories.

686. Manufactures.—American cotton mills and the full adoption of the Federal Constitution date from the same year. In 1789 Samuel Slater, a pupil of Arkwright (§ 348), came to this country and established the first mill for spinning cotton yarn at

Pawtucket, in Rhode Island. England did not then allow the export of machinery, nor even of plans, so that Slater had to set up his wheels and spindles chiefly from memory and with his own hands. His "Old Mill" still exists. In 1812 Francis Lowell, in like manner, partly invented and set up a power-loom at Waltham, in Massachusetts. He carried on all the processes which convert raw cotton into finished cloth in one establishment,—the first of its kind in the world. Before that time two thirds of all the cotton cloth used in America was woven in private houses. The cotton manufacture has grown from those humble beginnings until flourishing cities like Lowell and Lawrence, Fall River, Manchester, and Little Falls, have been built up by this important industry.

687. **Paper-making** has advanced equally in amount and far more in quality. If we compare the Continental paper money with the National bank-note currency of the present day, we see progress both in the manufacture of material and in the art of engraving. Millions of bales of rags are imported every year to the paper-factories of Massachusetts, and fine note-paper is sent to Europe in return. Many new materials, such as wood-fiber, straw, jute, and manilla, are used as well as rags. Great rafts of logs are constantly floated down the Connecticut and Kennebec rivers to be ground into pulp and so converted into paper.

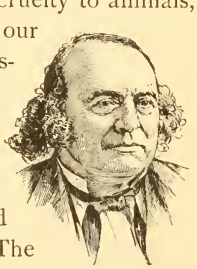
688. **The sewing-machine** is due mainly to the perseverance of an American, Elias Howe, who in 1846 received a patent for the first really successful instrument of the kind. Singer, Wilson, Grover, and many others have invented improvements; but of the millions of machines made in the United States, every one has been indebted to Howe for the essential feature of the eye near the point of the needle. Germany and Russia, as well as many other countries, use American sewing-machines.

689. The inventive genius which the subduing of a great, wild continent first called into action, has found new fields in

all parts of the world. The soil of South Africa, Australia, and Japan is turned by American plows, and their harvests are gathered by American mowers and reapers; fires in European cities are put out by American steam fire-engines; American palace-cars roll over European railways; and American steamboats ply on the Rhine, the Danube, and the Bosporus. Great London newspapers are printed on the press invented by Richard Hoe of New York.

690. Illumination.—In many things which have added to the ease and comfort of life, America only shares the general progress of the age. The streets of cities which were once made passable at night only by the glimmer of whale-oil lamps, now blaze with gas; while in many places gas is out of date, and the brightness of day is produced by electric lights.

691. Sanitary Science.—The laws of health are more studied than ever before. No large town is without its supply of water, the purest that can be obtained from rivers or lakes, or even, in some regions, from artesian wells. Americans have always been prompt in applying sanitary science to home-life, and in all sorts of efforts to lessen the suffering and danger of the weak and helpless. Among these efforts are societies for the protection of children, for the prevention of cruelty to animals, etc. We live in a more humane age than our fathers. Medical science has learned to suspend the consciousness of a patient while operations, otherwise painful, are performed; and so an amount of suffering that no one can measure has been prevented.

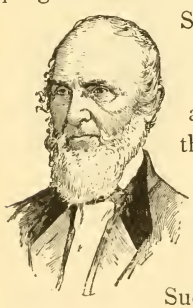


Louis Agassiz.

692. The progress of science has been aided by new or greatly improved instruments. The microscope has opened the way to discoveries in botany, physiology, and the nature of diseases. Some of the grandest telescopes in the world have been made by Alvah Clark, of Cambridge, Mass. The spectroscope has told us

what the sun and stars are made of. Photography, though scarcely forty years old, serves many useful purposes in science as well as the arts. Americans have always had their share in the advancement of science (§§ 205, 206). Count Rumford, a native of Concord, N. H., first discovered the mechanical equivalent of heat, and so led the way to the most important discoveries in physics. On the other hand, the peace and freedom to be enjoyed in this country have drawn to our shores some of the most learned and cultured men of Europe. Such were Louis Agassiz, the Swiss naturalist; Arnold Guyot; Francis Lieber of Columbia College, New York, and many others. The Federal government has made liberal grants in aid of voyages and researches in the interest of science. The Smithsonian Institution (see engraving at the head of this chapter) uses for the same ends the income derived from the bequest of James Smithson, the son of an English Duke of Northumberland. Dying at Genoa, in 1829, this gentleman—though he had never been in America—bequeathed his whole fortune to the government of the United States, to found at Washington an institution "for the increase and diffusion of knowledge among men." The Institution began its work in 1846 with a yearly income of $40,000.

693. **American literature** has shared and aided the general progress. Among essayists, Emerson, Whipple, Dana, and Stedman; among historians, Bancroft, Prescott, Irving, Kirk, Motley, and Parkman; among poets, Bryant, Longfellow, Whittier, Lowell, and Aldrich; among novelists, Cooper, Hawthorne, James, Howells, Mrs. Stowe, and Miss Woolson, are known and admired beyond the limits of their own country. Besides, we have had men of both thought and action, who have told the story of their own great deeds. Such were some of the chief officers in the Civil War, while Kane's, Hayes's, Danenhower's,



John G. Whittier.

DeLong's, and Greely's records of winters passed in the icy regions of the arctic zone, and Stanley's stories of exploration in Central Africa, are brilliant additions to the literature of voyages and travels.

694. **Education.**—The same zeal for knowledge which moved the first colonists in their poverty to establish schools for their children, has occasioned rich provision in our times for institutions of learning. Instead of the seven colleges of Revolutionary days, we now have about five hundred colleges and universities, though Harvard, Yale, and other colonial colleges have never lost their high rank, but have been enriched by new and generous endowments. Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore is distinguished by its original work in History and Political Economy. The University of Michigan at Ann Arbor takes the lead among younger institutions, not only in its number of students, but in the liberal policy which has controlled it from the beginning. Young women are admitted to all its lectures and examinations. For the higher education of women exclusively, Vassar, Wellesley, Smith, and Bryn Mawr colleges, and many others, have been established by private generosity. Cornell University, at Ithaca, N. Y., is open equally to young men and women, and so liberally endowed that its course is within reach of all. Barnard College in New York secures to young women some of the benefits arising from the rich endowment of Columbia (§ 201). Radcliffe College in Cambridge bears a similar relation to Harvard.

R. W. Emerson.

695. **Public Schools.**—There is not a State nor an organized Territory without its system of public schools. More than fifteen millions of children are named on the roll-books of these schools, and the yearly cost of their education is about three hundred millions of dollars. One eighteenth part of all the

H. W. Longfellow.

land in the newer States belongs to the school fund. In many States attendance at school is required by law; for if even parents are neglectful, the State can not afford to have ignorant voters growing up. Besides the common schools, there are high schools, academies, normal schools for the training of teachers, scientific and professional schools, and special institutions for the blind, the deaf, and the feeble-minded. A Catholic University at Washington has been endowed with eight million dollars.

696. Gifts and Bequests.—George Peabody, for many years banker in London, but a native of Massachusetts, gave for schools, colleges, libraries, and museums in the United States more than $5,250,000. More than $3,000,000 went for the support and encouragement of common schools in the Southern States, which, owing to scattered population and other causes, had not yet fully organized their plans for elementary education. Among many liberal gifts for purposes of education were the endowment of Leland Stanford Jr. University in California with over $30,000,000; of the University of Chicago by John D. Rockefeller; and many hundreds of thousands to smaller colleges. Andrew Carnegie founded Institutes bearing his name at Pittsburg and Washington with $10,000,000 each, adding, in 1907, $6,000,000 for the former, besides giving more than $40,000,000 for public library buildings and $10,000,000 as a pension fund for college professors. His benefactions for the promotion of peace and general education by 1908 exceeded $150,000,000. Industrial Institutes have been founded by A. J. Drexel of Philadelphia, Charles Pratt of Brooklyn, and Isaiah T. Williamson, while the

George Peabody.

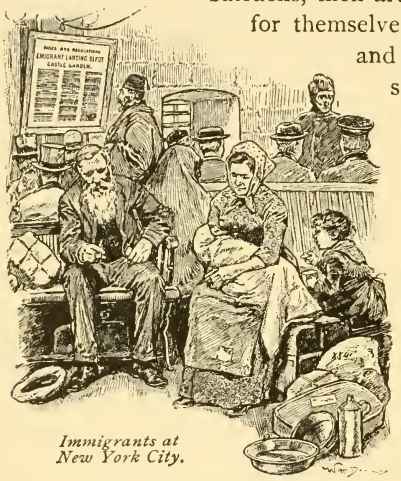
needs of depressed and unfortunate classes have been liberally remembered by J. F. Slater, D. B. Fayerweather and many others.

697. Newspapers.—The hand-presses of Franklin's time could at best print only about four hundred copies in a day, so that daily papers were practically impossible. Steam presses were introduced in 1815. Now a great daily, going to press after midnight, sends out tens of thousands of copies before daylight, and by means of railroad trains the paper reaches breakfast-tables scattered over hundreds of miles of country.

698. Our country has taken a leading part in Arctic explorations. Lieutenant Greely, U. S. A., in 1881 established a station on Lady Franklin Bay for the study of Arctic phenomena. Supply expeditions failed to reach him, and abandoning the post, as he had been ordered to do in such a case, he moved southward with his whole party of twenty-four men. Nineteen died in the retreat, and the survivors were rescued by Commander Schley, in Smith's Sound, in 1884. Lieut. R. E. Peary, U. S. N., next took up the task, after most careful study of Arctic lands and people. In his first expedition, 1891-92, he mapped the north coast of Greenland. He commanded several expeditions of the Peary Arctic Club of New York, 1898-1909. Setting out in the powerful steamer *Roosevelt*, in the summer of 1908, he wintered on the shore of the Arctic Ocean, and in the spring of 1909, aided by his men and by Eskimos, he pushed on with sledges, over the closely packed ice, and thus reached the North Pole.

699. The Weather Bureau, established in 1870 as part of the Signal Service, was transferred to the Agricultural Department in 1891. It gives notice in advance of the approach of storms, and the rise and fall of rivers, by means of the telegraphic wires connected with all parts of the United States, and with more than a dozen stations in distant parts of the globe. Lives and property have been saved by these timely warnings; and the science of meteorology, on which so many interests depend, has been greatly advanced.

700. Immigration.—Much of the improved condition of our country is due to the coming of laborers from Europe. Fortunately placed, with only two near neighbors, and those usually friendly, we have had very little to suffer from foreign wars. Instead of spending the best years of their lives in camps and barracks, men are at liberty to earn comforts for themselves and their families. This and other causes have led a stream of immigration across the Atlantic ever since the end of our war of 1812-15. Many of the new-comers were skilled mechanics, and could settle themselves well in their chosen country. Others could at least dig canals, grade railway-beds, and gain better chances for their children than they themselves had enjoyed.



Immigrants at New York City.

This book has tried to show what the American Republic has become through the acts and sufferings of men in the past. How the story shall be continued, will be largely decided by the children who are studying their history to-day.

Questions.—What change in the extent of our country in a hundred years? What, in its population? How has travel been made easier? What new means of communicating thoughts? What changes in modes of labor? How have cotton industries grown? What changes in paper-making? Where is American machinery to be found? What other signs of progress can you name? Mention some great endowments for education. What has been done in the polar regions?

QUESTIONS FOR REVIEW.—Part VI.

		Section
1.	What difference of policy between Congress and President Johnson?	586, 587
2.	What amendments were made in the Constitution of the United States?	561, 588, 595
3.	Describe the failures and final success of the transatlantic telegraph.	589, 590
4.	What States and Territories were organized between 1860 and 1870?	492, 573, 591
5.	Describe our affairs with China since 1868.	592, 620–622
6.	What important railroad was completed in 1869?	594
7.	What settlements have been made with England?	596–598
8.	What great conflagrations in 1871 and 1872?	599, 600
9.	What is said of Horace Greeley?	601
10.	Describe President Grant's policy towards, and dealings with, the Indians.	602, 603, 611
11.	What changes in money matters during his terms?	604–608
12.	How were the Centennials of the Revolution celebrated?	609, 610, 626, 627
13.	Describe the election of 1876 and its result.	612, 613
14.	Describe the policy of President Hayes.	614, 615
15.	Who were the "Grangers"?	616
16.	Describe the labor riots of 1877.	617–619
17.	Who was elected President in 1880?	623
18.	What can you say of President Garfield's life and death?	624
19.	Who succeeded Garfield, and when?	625
20.	What is the Red Cross Society, and what are its objects?	628
21.	What can you say of our relations with Mexico and Central America?	629
22.	Why did President Arthur recommend a reduction of taxes?	630
23.	What was the cause and what was the result of the floods in the Mississippi Valley?	631
24.	What distinguished the Presidential election of 1884?	632

		Section
25.	What can you say of the New Orleans Exposition?	633
26.	What distinguished the beginning of President Cleveland's term?	634–637
27.	Describe recent labor agitations.	638, 639
28.	What important laws were passed in 1885?	640
29.	What occasioned the Fisheries Convention of 1887?	641
30.	Describe other events of 1885–1888.	642–644
31.	What occurred during Harrison's term?	645–653
32.	What during Cleveland's second term?	654–657
33.	Mention the chief events of the war with Spain.	659, 660
34.	What else occurred during McKinley's presidency?	658, 661–666
35.	What were the chief events of Roosevelt's two administrations?	667–677
36.	What progress during a hundred years in extent, population, and means of intercourse?	681–684
37.	Describe the progress of manufactures.	686, 687
38.	Name some important inventions.	688, 689, 692
39.	How is life made easier?	685, 690, 691
40.	What has been done for education?	694–696
41.	What for science?	692, 698, 699
42.	Name some of the chief American authors.	693
43.	Describe the Greely expedition; the Peary expedition.	698
44.	What has occasioned immigration to America?	700

APPENDIX.

SYNOPSIS OF ADMINISTRATIONS.

1.—GEORGE WASHINGTON, 1789-1797. Public credit established by Hamilton—United States Bank and Mint at Philadelphia—Whisky riot and Indian ravages suppressed—Treaties with Great Britain, Spain, and Algiers—Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee admitted. §§ 321-339

2.—JOHN ADAMS, 1797-1801. Party strife between Federalists and Republicans—Alien and sedition laws—French republic threatens war, but Bonaparte makes peace—United States government removed to Washington City, in the district ceded by Maryland and Virginia—Coal and cotton become sources of wealth. §§ 340-348

3.—THOMAS JEFFERSON, 1801-1809. Republican plainness at the White House—Purchase of Louisiana; its northern part explored by Lewis and Clark—War with Tripoli ends in victory to the United States—Steam navigation on the Hudson—English Right of Search retaliated by the Embargo Act—Ohio admitted as a State in 1803. §§ 349-365

4.—JAMES MADISON, 1809-1817. War with Great Britain—Harrison's victory at Tippecanoe—Hull surrenders Detroit and all Michigan Territory—American victories on ocean and lakes—State of Louisiana admitted—Massacre at Raisin River—Southern Indians surprise Fort Mimms, but are subdued by Jackson—British ravage Atlantic coast, burn Washington, bombard Baltimore—Burn Oswego—American victories at Lundy's Lane and Plattsburgh—Hartford Convention opposes the war—Victory at New Orleans—Peace of Ghent—War against Barbary States puts an end to tribute—Duties imposed to protect home industries—Indiana organized as a State, Michigan and Illinois as Territories. §§ 366-399

5.—JAMES MONROE, 1817-1825. Return of prosperity—Mississippi, Illinois, Alabama, Maine, and Missouri admitted as States—"Missouri Compromise" advocated by Clay—First steamship crosses the Atlantic—Florida is ceded by Spain—Monroe Doctrine enunciated. §§ 400-408

6.—JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, 1825–1829. Completion of Erie Canal—First steam locomotives on "Delaware and Hudson Canal Railroad"—Death of John Adams and Thomas Jefferson on semi-centennial of American Independence. §§ 409-414

7.—ANDREW JACKSON, 1829–1837. Changes in offices under government—Debates on public lands—"Nullification" in South Carolina—Firmness of the President—Indian disturbances North and South—Seminole War—The President vetoes rechartering of United States Bank, and removes public funds—Era of

prosperity and wild speculations—Surplus in United States Treasury divided among the States—Jackson's Specie Circular—Arkansas and Michigan admitted. §§ 415-426

8.—MARTIN VAN BUREN, 1837–1841. Commercial failures and panic—Repudiation by two States; bankruptcy of eight—The Sub-Treasury Law—Sympathy with Canada—Rise of the Whig Party. §§ 427-433

9.—WM. HENRY HARRISON (1841) died after one month in office. § 434

10.—JOHN TYLER, 1841–1845. Refuses to recharter National Bank, and his cabinet resigns—Webster-Ashburton Treaty settles boundary of Maine and New Brunswick—Dorr's rebellion in Rhode Island—Removal of Mormons to Utah—Annexation of Texas and admission of Florida—First telegraph established. §§ 434-442

11.—JAMES KNOX POLK, 1845–1849. Northwest boundary settled by treaty with Great Britain—War with Mexico—General Taylor gains battles of Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma, Monterey, and Buena Vista—General Scott marches from the coast to the capital, which surrenders—General Kearney conquers New Mexico; General Frémont and Commodore Stockton, California—Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo transfers to United States upper California, and Nevada, Utah, Arizona, and New Mexico—Gold discovered in California—The Wilmot Proviso—States of Iowa and Wisconsin admitted. §§ 443-461

12.—ZACHARY TAYLOR, 1849–1850. California admitted to the Union by Clay's "Omnibus Bill"—Death of the President. §§ 462, 463

13.—MILLARD FILLMORE, 1850–1853. Daniel Webster Secretary of State—Death of Calhoun, Clay, and Webster—Fugitive Slave Law opposed by Personal Liberty laws in several States. §§ 464-467

14.—FRANKLIN PIERCE, 1853–1857. World's Fair in New York—Perry's expedition to Japan—Gadsden purchase secures southern Arizona—Explorations for Pacific Railroad—"Ostend Manifesto" by three American Ministers, looking to the acquisition of Cuba—Organization of Kansas and Nebraska—Border warfare—Rise of Republican and American, or "Know-Nothing," parties. §§ 468-476

15.—JAMES BUCHANAN, 1857–1861. Minnesota and Oregon admitted—John Brown's invasion of Virginia—Division of Democratic party—Election of Abraham Lincoln—Ordinances of secession in South Carolina, Georgia, and the Gulf States—Jefferson Davis elected President of the Confederacy—Forts and arsenals seized by Southern forces. §§ 477-485

16.—ABRAHAM LINCOLN, 1861–1865. Bombardment and fall of Fort Sumter—Eleven States in secession—Separation of West Virginia—Union defeat at Bull Run—McClellan commander-in-chief—Blockade of southern Atlantic coast—"Trent Affair" set right by U. S. government—Recapture of Hatteras Inlet, Port Royal Entrance, and Tybee Is. §§ 486-501

1862.—Forts Henry and Donelson taken by Grant—Battle of Shiloh—Capture of Island No. 10, Memphis, and Fort Pillow—Federal victory at Pea Ridge—Bragg's campaign in Kentucky—Confederate defeats at Iuka, Corinth, and Murfreesborough—Capture of New Orleans by Farragut and Butler—*Merrimac* and

Monitor in Hampton Roads—McClellan's march to Richmond—Second defeat at Bull Run—Invasion of Maryland—Battle of Antietam—Union defeat at Fredericksburg. §§ 502-528

1863.—Emancipation of all slaves in seceded States—Enlistment of 50,000 negroes in Federal armies and navies—Union defeat at Chancellorsville; death of "Stonewall" Jackson—Riots in New York—Invasion of Pennsylvania—Confederate defeat at Gettysburg—Surrender of Vicksburg and Port Hudson ends the war on the Mississippi—Morgan's raid in Indiana and Ohio—Campaign of Chattanooga ends in Union victories at Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge. §§ 529-546

1864.—Grant, as Lieutenant-general, at head of United States armies—Battles of the "Wilderness" costly and indecisive—Battle of Cedar Creek saved by "Sheridan's Ride"—Sieges of Richmond and Petersburg begun—Sherman defeats Hood, burns Atlanta, marches through Georgia to the sea; captures Savannah—Re-election of President Lincoln. §§ 547-561

1865.—Burning of Columbia and part of Charleston—Sherman's march through the Carolinas.—Abandonment and burning of Richmond—Surrender of Lee's and Johnston's armies—Murder of President Lincoln—Nevada admitted, and Territories organized. §§ 562-573

17.—ANDREW JOHNSON, 1865-1869. "Reconstruction Policy" of the President differs from that of Congress; he is impeached, but acquitted—Fourteenth Amendment to the Constitution secures the civil rights of freedmen—Most of the southern States repeal their ordinances of secession, and are re-admitted into the Union—Submarine telegraph successfully established between Ireland and America, 1866—Purchase of Alaska—Burlingame embassy from China makes a treaty of friendship. §§ 586-592

18.—ULYSSES S. GRANT, 1869-1877. Pacific Railroad completed—Texas, last of the seceded States, resumes her place in Congress—Treaty of Washington provides for settlement of all differences between England and the United States—Alabama claims fixed by International Board at Geneva, are paid by Great Britain—Fires in Chicago, the northwestern forests, and in Boston—Grant's Indian Policy—Murder of General Canby by the Modocs—Commercial panic and distress—Ring robberies in great cities—Congress passes a Specie Resumption Act—Colorado becomes a State—Centennial Exposition at Philadelphia—War with the Sioux—Massacre of General Custer and his army—Joint High Commission from Senate, House of Representatives, and the Supreme Court decide the results of the Presidential election of 1876. §§ 593-613

19.—RUTHERFORD B. HAYES, 1877-1881. Pledges of Peace and civil service reform—Railway riots suppressed—Chinese question in California—Bill to set aside the Burlingame Treaty passed by Congress but vetoed by the President; Chinese immigration stopped in 1882—Resumption of gold payments January, 1879. §§ 614-623

20.—JAMES ABRAM GARFIELD, 1881. Inaugurated March 4, 1881; died September 19 of the same year. § 624

21.—CHESTER ALAN ARTHUR, 1881-1885. Celebration at Yorktown and other "Centennials"—A full treasury—Floods. §§ 625-633

22.—GROVER CLEVELAND, 1885-1889. Indian Territory cleared of white intruders—American interests protected in Colombia—Riots in Chicago—Seven Anarchists condemned—Laws providing against vacancy in the Presidency, for counting electoral votes, for regulation of Interstate Commerce—Tempests and earthquakes—Centennial of Constitution and of settlement of Ohio Valley. §§ 634-644

23.—BENJAMIN HARRISON, 1889-1893. Settlement of Oklahoma—Admission of Washington, Montana, North and South Dakota, Idaho, and Wyoming—Centennial of Washington's inauguration—Fifty-First Congress enacts McKinley Tariff, Service Pension, and International Copyright Laws—The New Orleans Massacre—Ballot Reform—Four hundredth anniversary of the landing of Columbus—Return of Democrats to power. §§ 645-653

24.—GROVER CLEVELAND, 1893-1897. World's Columbian Exposition—Purchase of silver stopped—Wilson Tariff—Admission of Utah. §§ 656-657

25.—WILLIAM MCKINLEY, 1897-1901. Dingley Tariff—War with Spain—Battles of Manila Bay and Santiago—Spain abandons Cuba and cedes Porto Rico and the Philippines to the United States—Annexation of Hawaii—War in Philippines—Formal establishment of gold standard—Disorders in China—McKinley died September 14, 1901. §§ 658-666

26.—THEODORE ROOSEVELT, 1901-1909. Anthracite Coal Strike—Alaska Boundary settled—Isthmian Canal Act and Treaties—Portsmouth Conference—Pure Food and Interstate Commerce Acts—Admission of Oklahoma—Standard Oil case—Panic of 1907—Cruise of the Battleship fleet—Conference of Governors—Election of Taft. §§ 667-677

TRANSFERS OF TERRITORY

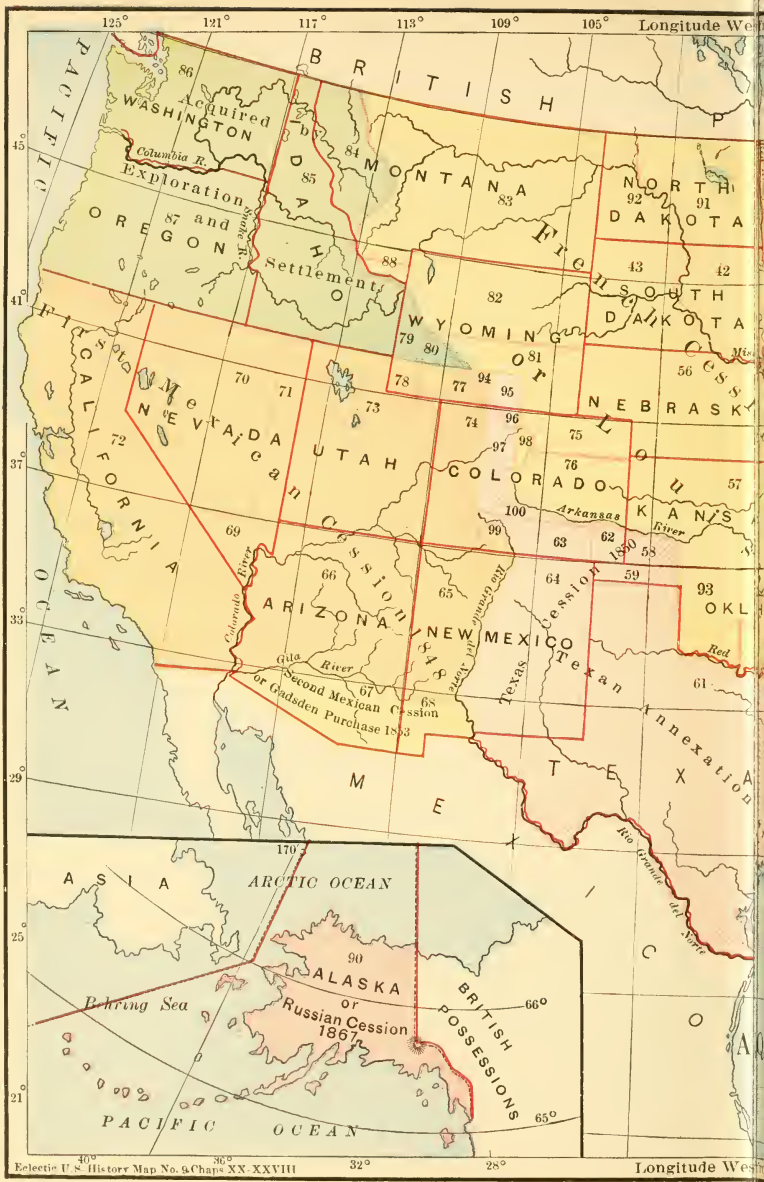
IN

THE UNITED STATES.

(*Numerals Refer to Map No. 9.*)

---

1 and 2.—Part of original State of Massachusetts erected into State of Maine, 1820.
3.—Part of public land of the United States.
4.—One of original thirteen States.
5.—Formed into State of Vermont in 1791 out of the State of New York.
6.—One of original thirteen States; included 1 and 2, and extended west to the Mississippi River.
7.—One of original thirteen States.
8.—One of original thirteen States; originally extended west to the Mississippi River.
9.—One of original thirteen States; originally including 5; a claim of Massachusetts to portion of territory of southern New York was settled in 1786 by a convention at Hartford.
10.—One of original thirteen States.
11.—One of original thirteen States; in 1792, 89 added.
12.—One of original thirteen States.
13.—One of original thirteen States; originally embraced 13 and 14.
14.—Ceded to the United States for a capital city by Maryland in 1790.
15.—Ceded to the United States for a capital city by Virginia in 1790; retroceded to Virginia by United States in 1846.
16.—One of original thirteen States; originally embraced 15, 16, 17, 18, 54, and 55.
17.—Formed into State of West Virginia out of Virginia in 1863.
18.—Formed into State of Kentucky, 1792, out of Virginia.
19.—One of original thirteen States; originally embraced 19 and 20.
20.—Ceded to United States by North Carolina in 1790, and with 23, 24, and 28 erected into the Territory south of the Ohio River; admitted as State, 1796.
21.—One of original thirteen States; originally comprised 21, 23, 24, and 28.
22.—One of original thirteen States; originally comprised 22, 25, 26, 27, and 29.
23.—Ceded by South Carolina to United States in 1787; in 1790 transferred to Territory south of Ohio River (23, 24, 28, and 20); in 1802 ceded to Georgia.
24.—Ceded by South Carolina to United States in 1787; in 1790 transferred to Territory south of Ohio River; in 1804 to Mississippi Territory; in 1817 to Alabama Territory, and in 1819 to State of Alabama.
25.—Ceded by Georgia to United States, 1802; transferred to Mississippi Territory, 1804; to Alabama Territory, 1817; and to State of Alabama, 1819.
26.—Erected, with 27, into Mississippi Territory, 1798, subject to Georgia's claims, which were ceded to the United States, 1802; to Alabama Territory 1817; to State of Alabama, 1819.
27.—Same as 26 until 1817, when erected into State of Mississippi.
28.—Ceded to United States by South Carolina, 1787; joined to Territory south of Ohio River, 1790; transferred to Mississippi Territory, 1804; and to State of Mississippi, 1817.



Eclectic U. S. History Map No. 5 Chaps XX-XXVIII

MAP No 9.

UISITION AND DISTRIBUTION OF TERRITORY.

By Russell Hinman, C.E.

29.—Ceded to United States by Georgia, 1802; transferred to Mississippi Territory, 1804; and to State of Mississippi, 1817.

30.—Ceded to United States by France, 1803; transferred to Mississippi Territory, 1812; and to State of Mississippi, 1817.

31.—Ceded to United States by France, 1803; transferred to Mississippi Territory, 1812; to Alabama Territory, 1817; State of Alabama, 1819.

32.—Ceded to United States by Spain, 1819; erected into Florida Territory, 1822; into State of Florida, 1845.

33.—Ceded to United States by France, 1803; transferred to State of Louisiana, 1812.

34.—Ceded to United States by France, 1803; erected into Territory of Orleans, 1804; admitted as State of Louisiana, 1812.

35.*—Ceded to United States by France, 1803; included in district Louisiana in 1804; in Territory Louisiana, 1805; in Territory Missouri, 1812; erected into Arkansas Territory, 1819; admitted as State of Arkansas, 1836.

36.—Admitted as State of Missouri, 1821.

37.—Added to State of Missouri, 1836.

38.—Annexed to Territory of Michigan, 1834; to Territory Wisconsin, 1836; to Territory Iowa, 1838; admitted as part of State of Iowa, 1846.

39.—Same as above to and including admission to Territory Iowa; transferred to State of Iowa, 1846.

40.—Same as 39; transferred from State to Territory Iowa, 1846; to Territory Minnesota, 1849; to State Minnesota, 1858.

41.—Annexed to Territory Michigan, 1834; Territory Wisconsin, 1836; Territory Iowa, 1838; Territory Minnesota, 1849; State Minnesota, 1858.

42.—As above, to and including Territory Minnesota, 1849; included in Territory Dakota, 1861; to State South Dakota, 1889.

43.—Transferred from Territory Missouri to Territory Nebraska, 1854; to Territory Dakota, 1861; to State South Dakota, 1889.

44.—Ceded by Great Britain, 1783; included in Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; to Territory Indiana, 1800; to Territory Illinois, 1809; to Territory Michigan, 1818; to Territory Wisconsin, 1836; to Territory Minnesota, 1849; to State Minnesota, 1858.

45.—As above, to and including Territory Wisconsin, 1836; admitted as State Wisconsin, 1848.

46.—As 44, to and including Territory Michigan, 1818; to State Michigan, 1837.

47.—Ceded by Great Britain, 1783; Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; Territory Indiana, 1800; Territory Michigan, 1818; Territory Wisconsin, 1836; State Wisconsin, 1848.

48.—Ceded by Great Britain, 1783; transferred to Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; Territory Indiana, 1800; Territory Michigan, 1818; State Michigan, 1837.

49.—Ceded by Great Britain, 1783; transferred to Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; Territory Indiana, 1800; Territory Michigan, 1805; State Michigan, 1837.

50.—Ceded by Great Britain; transferred to Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; Territory Indiana, 1802; Territory Michigan, 1805; State Michigan, 1837.

51.—Ceded by Great Britain, 1783; transferred to Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; to Territory Michigan, 1805; to State Ohio, 1836.

52.—Ceded by Great Britain, 1783; transferred to Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; Territory Indiana, 1800; Territory Michigan, 1805; to State Indiana, 1816.

53.—North of 41st parallel ceded by Great Britain, 1783; south of same by Virginia, 1784; Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; admitted as State Ohio, 1803.

54.—North of 41st parallel ceded by Great Britain, 1783; south of same by Virginia, 1784; Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; Territory Indiana, 1800; State Indiana, 1816.

55.—North of 41st parallel ceded by Great Britain, 1783; south of same by Virginia, 1784; Territory northwest Ohio River, 1787; Territory Indiana, 1800; Territory Illinois, 1809; State Illinois, 1818.

56.—Territory Nebraska, 1854; State Nebraska, 1867.

57.—Territory Kansas, 1854; State Kansas, 1861.

58.—Ceded by Texas, 1850; transferred to Territory Kansas, 1854; State Kansas, 1861.

59.—Ceded by Texas, 1850; first organized with Oklahoma Territory, 1890; State Oklahoma, 1907.

60.—Ceded by France, 1803; declared "Indian country," 1834; State Oklahoma, 1907.

---

*All of the French cession west of the Mississippi River (except 34) was ceded to the United States as the "Province of Louisiana" in 1803; erected into district of Louisiana, 1804; into Territory of Louisiana, 1805; into Territory of Missouri, 1812. The subsequent descriptions of territory within the French cession will be carried on from this point,—and a repetition of these changes common to all, avoided.

61.—The independent republic of Texas, admitted as State of Texas, 1845.
62.—Ceded by Texas, 1850; transferred to Territory Kansas, 1854; Territory Colorado, 1861; State Colorado, 1876.
63.—Ceded by Texas, 1850; transferred to Territory New Mexico, 1850; Territory Colorado, 1861; State Colorado, 1876.
64.—Ceded by Texas, 1850; transferred to Territory New Mexico, 1850; State New Mexico, 1912.
65.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; transferred to Territory New Mexico, 1850; State New Mexico, 1912.
66.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; transferred to Territory New Mexico, 1850; Territory Arizona, 1863; State Arizona, 1912.
67.—Ceded by Mexico, 1853; transferred to Territory New Mexico, 1854; Territory Arizona, 1863; State Arizona, 1912.
68.—Ceded by Mexico, 1853; transferred to Territory New Mexico, 1854; State New Mexico, 1912.
69.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; transferred to Territory New Mexico, 1850; to Territory Arizona, 1863; to State Nevada, 1866.
70.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; transferred to Territory Utah, 1850; Territory Nevada, 1861; erected into State Nevada, 1864.
71.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; transferred to Territory Utah, 1850; State Nevada, 1866.
72.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; admitted as State of California, 1850.
73.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; Territory Utah, 1850; admitted as State, 1896.
74.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; Territory Utah, 1850; Territory Colorado, 1861; State Colorado, 1876.
75.—Ceded by France, 1803; Territory Missouri to Territory Nebraska, 1854; Territory Colorado, 1861; State Colorado, 1876.
76.—Ceded by France, 1803; Territory Missouri to Territory Kansas, 1854; to Territory Colorado, 1861; to State Colorado, 1876.
77.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; to Territory of Utah, 1850; Territory Nebraska, 1861; Territory Idaho, 1863; Ter. Dakota, 1864; Ter. Wyoming, 1868; State Wyoming, 1890.
78.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; Territory Utah, 1850; Ter. Wyoming, 1868; State, 1890.
79.—(The claim of the United States to 79, 80, 84, 85, 86, and 87 is based upon first discovery of Columbia River in 1792; first exploration, by Lewis and Clark, in 1805; first settlement at Astoria, in 1811. Claims allowed by Spain in treaty of 1819, and by Great Britain in treaty of 1846) to Territory Oregon, 1848; Ter. Washington, 1853; Ter. Idaho, 1863; Ter. Wyoming, 1868; State Wyoming, 1890.
80.—See 79; to Territory Oregon, 1848; Ter. Washington, 1853; Ter. Nebraska, 1861; Ter. Idaho, 1863; Ter. Dakota, 1864; Ter. Wyoming, 1868; State Wyoming, 1890.
81.—Ceded by France in 1803; transferred to Territory Nebraska, 1854; Territory Idaho, 1863; Territory Dakota, 1864; Territory Wyoming, 1868; State Wyoming, 1890.
82.—Ceded by France, 1803; transferred to Ter. Nebraska, 1854; Ter. Dakota, 1861; Ter. Idaho, 1863; Ter. Dakota, 1864; Ter. Wyoming, 1868; State Wyoming, 1890.
83.—Ceded by France, 1803; transferred to Territory Nebraska, 1854; Territory Dakota, 1861; Territory Idaho, 1863; Territory Montana, 1864; State Montana, 1889.
84.—See 79; to Territory Oregon, 1848; Territory Washington, 1853; Territory Idaho, 1863; Territory Montana, 1864; State Montana, 1889.
85.—See 79; to Territory Oregon, 1848; Territory Washington, 1853; Territory Idaho, 1863; State Idaho, 1890.
86.—See 79; to Territory Oregon, 1848; Territory Washington, 1853; State Washington, 1889.
87.—See 79; to Territory Oregon, 1848; State Oregon, 1859.
88.—Ceded by France, 1803; transferred to Territory Nebraska, 1854; Territory Dakota, 1861; Territory Idaho, 1863; Territory Dakota, 1864; Territory Montana, 1873; State Montana, 1889.
89.—Ceded by State of New York, 1781, and Massachusetts, 1785, to United States; transferred to Pennsylvania, 1792.
90.—Ceded by Russia, 1867; Territory of Alaska in 1884.
91.—As 42 to 1889 when it was transferred to State North Dakota.
92.—As 43 to 1889 when it was transferred to State North Dakota.
93.—Ceded by France, 1803; declared "Indian country," 1834; Territory Oklahoma, 1890; State Oklahoma, 1907.
94.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; to Territory Nebraska, etc., as 81.
95.—Ceded by Texas, 1850; to Territory Nebraska, etc., as 81.
96.—Ceded by Texas, 1850; to Territory Nebraska, etc., as 75.
97.—Ceded by Texas, 1850; to Territory Utah, etc., as 74.
98.—Ceded by France, 1803; to Territory Utah, etc., as 74.
99.—Ceded by Mexico, 1848; to Territory New Mexico, etc., as 63.
100.—Ceded by Texas, 1850; to Territory Kansas, etc., as 76.

THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE

IN CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

THE UNANIMOUS DECLARATION OF THE THIRTEEN UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident: that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain unalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed. That, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or to abolish it, and to institute new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate, that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present King of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in

direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operations till his assent should be obtained; and when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the depository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasion from without and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose obstructing the laws for naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migrations hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislatures.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us:

For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States:

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world:

For imposing taxes on us without our consent:

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury:

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offenses:

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, es-

tablishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies:

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments:

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burnt our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy, scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms: our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war; in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in General Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, *Free* and *Independent States;* that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as *Free* and *Independent States*, they have full power

to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and to do all other acts and things which *Independent States* may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of DIVINE PROVIDENCE, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.—Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.—Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

RHODE ISLAND, ETC.—Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery.

CONNECTICUT.—Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

NEW YORK.—William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris.

NEW JERSEY.—Richard Stockton, John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA.—Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin, John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross.

DELAWARE.—Cæsar Rodney, George Read, Thomas M'Kean.

MARYLAND.—Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone, Charles Carroll of Carrollton.

VIRGINIA.—George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

NORTH CAROLINA.—William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA.—Edward Rutledge, Thomas Heyward, Jr., Thomas Lynch, Jr., Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA.—Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton.

CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

WE, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I. SECTION 1.—1. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION 2.—1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States; and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

2. No person shall be a Representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of Representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one Representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

5. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers, and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION 3.—1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two Senators from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each Senator shall have one vote.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the Senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the Executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

3. No person shall be a Senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be President of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit, under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION 4.—1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for Senators and Representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing Senators.

2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION 5.—1. Each House shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members in such manner and under such penalties as each House may provide.

2. Each House may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

3. Each House shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either House, on any question, shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

4. Neither House, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two Houses shall be sitting.

SECTION 6.—1. The Senators and Representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the Treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective Houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either House, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2. No Senator or Representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either House during his continuance in office.

SECTION 7.—1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it with his objections to that House in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two thirds of that House shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other House, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that House, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both Houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each House respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States, and before the same shall take effect shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be re-passed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION 8.—The Congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and

provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

7. To establish post-offices and post-roads;

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

13. To provide and maintain a navy;

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions;

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings; and,

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION 9.—1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or

duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

2. The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

3. No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION 10.—1. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws: and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

ARTICLE II. SECTION 1.—1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of Electors equal to the whole number of Senators and Representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no Senator or Representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an Elector.

Clause 3 has been superseded by the 12th Article of Amendments.

4. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the Electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person, except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

6. In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President; and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed or a President shall be elected.

7. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

8. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION 2.—1. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the Senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint Embassadors, other public Ministers and Consuls, Judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, in the Courts of law, or in the heads of Departments.

3. The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECTION 3.—He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both Houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such

time as he shall think proper; he shall receive Embassadors and other public Ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECTION 4.—The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

ARTICLE III. SECTION 1.—The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior Courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The Judges, both of the Supreme and inferior Courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECTION 2.—1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases in law and equity arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting Embassadors, other public Ministers, and Consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States; between a State and citizens of another State; between citizens of different States; between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States; and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting Embassadors, other public Ministers, and Consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION 3.—1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

2. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

ARTICLE IV. SECTION 1.—Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION 2.—1. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

2. A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who

shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

3. No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION 3.—1. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States or of any particular State.

SECTION 4.—The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and, on application of the legislature, or of the Executive (when the legislature can not be convened) against domestic violence.

ARTICLE V.—The Congress, whenever two thirds of both Houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose Amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing Amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress: provided, that no Amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

ARTICLE VI.—1. All debts contracted and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution as under the Confederation.

2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

3. The Senators and Representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

ARTICLE VII.—The ratification of the Conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

ARTICLE I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

ARTICLE IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

ARTICLE V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ARTICLE VI.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

ARTICLE VII.—In suits at common law where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any Court of the United States, than according to the rules of the common law.

ARTICLE VIII.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

ARTICLE IX.—The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

ARTICLE X.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

ARTICLE XI.—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII.—The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President, and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the President of the Senate. The President of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted; the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three, on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of Electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of Senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.—1. Neither Slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

ARTICLE XIV.—1. All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which

shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of Electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, Representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

3. No person shall be a Senator or Representative in Congress, or Elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath, as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two thirds of each House, remove such disability.

4. The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

5. The Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

ARTICLE XV.—1. The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

QUESTIONS ON THE CONSTITUTION.

1. By whose authority was the Constitution established?

2. What six distinct purposes are declared in the "enacting clause" with which it opens?

3. What *imperfect union* had already existed? §§ 298–300.

4. How long had the United States existed as a nation when the Constitution was adopted?

ARTICLE I.—5. To whom is the law-making power intrusted? Section 1.

6. Of what two bodies does Congress consist?

7. By whom and how often is a Representative chosen? Section 2.

8. Of what age and nationality must he be? Section 2, Clause 2.

9. Can an inhabitant of Maine be elected to represent a district in Nevada?

10. What number of persons were entitled to a Representative when the Constitution was adopted? Section 2, Clause 3.

11. What number constitutes a Congressional District now? *Answer:* **211,877.**

12. What is the whole number of United States Senators? Section 3.

13. How long does a Senator serve?

14. What are his qualifications as to age and citizenship? Section 3, Clause 3.

15. Who presides in the Senate? Section 3, Clause 4.

16. In what case does the Vice-President vote?

17. How would his place in the Senate be filled in case of his death, absence, or promotion to the Presidency? Section 3, Clause 5.

18. How many Vice-Presidents have succeeded to the highest office?

19. What judicial powers are vested in the Senate? Section 3, Clause 6.

20. What punishment can be inflicted in cases of impeachment? Section 3, Clause 7.

21. How often, and on what day, does Congress assemble? Section 4, Clause 2.

22. Who decides upon the qualifications of members? Section 5, Clause 1.

23. What are the privileges of members of Congress? Section 6, Clause 1.

24. Can they hold any office under the government? Section 6, Clause 2.

25. What House originates bills for raising the public revenues? Section 7, Clause 1.

26. What part has the President in making laws? Section 7, Clause 2.

27. In what two cases can a law become effective without the President's signature? Section 7, Clause 2.

28. Recite the powers and duties of Congress as enumerated in the eighteen clauses of Section 8.

29. In what cases only can a writ of *habeas corpus* be refused to an arrested person? Section 9, Clause 2.

30. What is a writ of *habeas corpus?* See Andrews's *Manual of the Constitution*, page 153.

31. Can a law authorize the punishment of an offense that was committed before the law was made? Section 9, Clause 3.

32. Can Congress favor one State more than another in imposing taxes and duties? Section 9, Clause 5.

33. Can a citizen of the United States accept gifts, offices, or titles from a foreign government? Section 9, Clause 7.

34. What restrictions are laid on the actions of the several States? Section 10.

ARTICLE II.—35. What is required of a candidate for the Presidency as to age, citizenship, and residence? Section 1, Clause 5.

36. What powers are exercised by the President alone? Section 2, Clauses 1 and 3.

37. What, in concurrence with the Senate? Section 2, Clause 2.

38. What additional duties are demanded of him? Section 3.

39. How and for what reasons can a President be removed? Section 4.

ARTICLE III.—40. How long do Judges of the Supreme Court hold their office? Section 1.

41. What cases are judged by the Supreme Court? Section 2.

42. What is the difference between original and appellate jurisdiction? See Andrews's *Manual of the Constitution*, page 212.

43. In what court must a robber of the mails be tried?

44. What is meant by "trial by jury"? Section 2, Clause 3. See Andrews's *Manual of the Constitution*, page 218.

45. What constitutes treason against the United States? Section 3, Clause 1.

46. Can the children of a traitor be made to suffer in person or property for their father's crime? Section 3, Clause 2.

ARTICLE IV.—47. What duties do the several States owe to each other? Sections 1 and 2.

48. By what authority and under what conditions can new States be admitted? Section 3.

49. What claim can any State make on the general government? Section 4.

ARTICLE V.—50. How can amendments be made in the Constitution?

ARTICLE VI.—51. What constitutes the supreme law of the land? Section 2.

AMENDMENTS.

52. What was the general purpose of the ten Amendments proposed by the first Congress and accepted by the States? Articles I.–X.

53. Can any one be legally called in question for religious belief or practice in the United States? Article I.

54. What are the rights of the accused under Articles V. to VIII.?

55. How was the mode of electing executive officers settled in 1803 and 1804? Article XII.

56. Under what description were slaves alluded to in the original Constitution? Article I., Section 2, Clause 3; and Section 9, Clause 1.

57. What was the Thirteenth Amendment, ratified in December, 1865?

58. How are "citizens" defined in the Fourteenth Amendment? Section 1.

59. How is the number of Representatives made dependent on the free exercise of the right to vote? Article XIV., Section 2.

60. What class of persons was excluded from civil office by Amendment XIV., Section 3?

INDEX.

Numbers refer to Sections unless otherwise stated; N refers to accompanying Notes.

A Pronouncing Vocabulary will be found on page xliii.

A

Abercrombie, defeated, 190, 191.
Abraham, Plains of, 193, N.
Acadia, settled, 88, N.; ceded to France, 134; captured, 174; French expelled, 186.
Adams, John, Vice-Pres., 319; leading Federalist, 333; Pres., 340, N; death of, 413.
Adams, John Quincy, Pres., 409, N.; character of, 410; in Congress, 414.
Adams, Mrs. John, 347. N.
Adelphi Academy, 696.
Admiralty, Courts of, 153.
Agassiz, Louis, 692.
Alabama, settled by French, 165; admitted, 402; secedes, 481.
Alabama Claims, settled, 597.
Alaska, 591, 668.
Albany, founded, 111; named, 120; convention at, 183.
Albemarle, settlements, 136, 137; attacked by the Tuscaroras, 177.
Algerine Pirates, 329, 335, 359, N., 397.
Alien Law, 342.
Allen, Ethan, 237, N.
Almanac, Poor Richard's, 204.
Amendments, the 13th, 561, N.; the 14th, 588; 15th becomes law, 595.
America, discovered by Northmen, 6; by Columbus, 36, 37, 40; by English, 41; by Portuguese, 42; partition of, 54.
American, debts in Eng. after Rev., 330, 331; flag first raised, N. 1, p. 167; first saluted, 301; Party, 476; Philosophical Society founded, 206; "System," the, 398.
Amerigo Vespucci, 40, N.
Anderson, Major, seizes Fort Sumter, 482; compelled to evacuate, 489; honors to, 570, N.
André, Major, 293–295, N.
Andros, royal governor, 143, N., 144.
Anne, Queen, 153, N.
Antietam, battle of, 526.
Appalachee Bay, disc., 45; settlements conquered by English, 176.
Appalachian Mountain System, 12.
Arizona, settled, 53; ceded to U. S., 457; territory increased, 465; organized, 573.
Arkansas, settled by French, 167; admitted, 426; secedes, 490.
Arkwright, invents "spinning-jenny," 348, 686.
Arlington, Lord, 72.
Army of the Potomac in 1862, 528; condition January, 1863, 532.
Arnold, Benedict, at Ticonderoga, 237, N.; at Quebec, 246, N.; sent to aid Schuyler, 263; promoted, 266, N.; treason of, 292–295.
Arthur, Chester A., Vice-Pres., 623; President, 625, N.; signs "Convention of Geneva," 628; message on public debt, 630.
Aspinwall, William, 98.
Astoria, founded, 443.
Astor, John Jacob, 443, N.
Atlanta, Ga., destruction of, 557, 558.
Atlantic Cable, laid, 589, 590.
Australian ballot system, 651.
Azores, discovered, 34.

B

Bacon's Rebellion, 73, 74.
Balboa, Nuñez de, 43.
Baltimore, U. S. cruiser, 650.
Baltimore, bombarded, 386; Democratic convention at, 479; attack on Union troops in, 491.
Baltimore, the first lord, 75, 76; the second lord, 76.
Bank of the U. S., established, 323; renewal of charter vetoed, 421; rechartered and fails, 429.
Banks, Gen., at Port Hudson, 539.
Barbary States prey on American commerce, 329, 335, 359, 397.
Barnard College, 694.
Bartram, John, 206.
Baton Rouge, captured, 515.
Baum, defeated by Stark, 264.
Beauregard, Gen., at Bull Run, 493; at Shiloh, 506; at Corinth, 508.
Bell, John, 479.
Bemus's Heights, battle of, 265, N.
Bennington, battle of, 264, N.

Berkeley, Gov., 72-74, N.
Berkeley, Lord John, receives grant of half of New Jersey, 121; sells to Quakers, 123.
Biloxi, Miss., settled, 165, N.
Black Hawk War, 418.
Bladensburg, battle of, N. 1, p. 236.
Blaine, James G., 632.
Blennerhasset, Harman, 361, N.
Block, Adrian, explorations in Long Island Sound, 110.
Blockade, the, 496-498.
Board of Trade, appointed, 150; reject colonial union, 183.
Bon Homme Richard, N. 4, p. 175.
Boone, Daniel, 243.
Bordentown, N. J., abandoned by British, 259.
Boston, founded, capital of Massachusetts Bay colony, 91, N.; under Andros, 143; massacre, 222; port closed, 228; besieged by Americans, 233; evacuated by British, 248; the great fire in, 600.
Boundary bet. Eng. and Spanish poss. altered, 176; of U. S. by treaty of Versailles, 309; bet. U. S. and Spanish poss. fixed, 334; bet. Maine and New Brunswick disputed, 431; present N. E. boundary of U. S. fixed, 436; bet. Oregon and British America fixed, 444; bet. U. S. and Mexico disputed, 445; bet. Wash. Ter. and British Col. settled, 598.
Braddock's defeat, 185.
Bradford, Gov., 85, 200.
Bradstreet, Col., captures Fort Frontenac, 192.
Bragg, Gen. Braxton, invades Ky., 509-511, N.; at Perryville, 512; at Murfreesborough, 513; at Chickamauga and Chattanooga, 543; at Lookout Mountain, 545, 546.
Brandywine, battle of, 263.
Brant, defeated, 276; relative of Johnsons, N. 8, p. 168.
Brazil discovered, 42.
Breckenridge, John C., nominated for Presidency, 479.
Breed's Hill fortified, 238.
Brock, Gen., receives Hull's surrender, 370; killed, 371.
Brook, Lord, 94.
Brown, Gen., at Lundy's Lane, 388.
Brown, John, invades Va., 478.
Brown University founded, 201.
Buchanan, James, Pres., 476; tries to conciliate parties, 477, N.
Buell, Gen., at Shiloh, 507; pursues Bragg, 510; superseded by Rosecrans, 513.
Buena Vista, battle of, 449.
Bull Run, first battle of, 493-495; second battle of, 524.
Bunker Hill, order for fortifying, 238; battle of, 239, 240; monument erected, 405.
Burgesses, council of, 68; set apart lands for college, 201; appoint fast owing to Boston Port Bill, and favor united resistance, 229.
Burgoyne, Gen., arrives at Boston, 238, N.; plan of for 1777, 262; fights two battles of Saratoga and surrenders, 265, 266, N.
Burke, Edmund, 271.
Burlingame, Anson, embassador from China, 592; bill to set aside treaty of, 621.
Burlington, Iowa, founded, 461.
Burlington, N. J., settled by Quakers, 123; abandoned by British, 259.
Burnside, Gen., succeeds McClellan, 526; at Knoxville, 547.
Burr, Aaron, Vice-Pres., 349, N.; kills Hamilton, 360; tried for treason, 361.
Butler, Gen. B. F., takes possession of New Orleans, 514, 515; confiscates negroes, 529; receives negro regiments in army, 531; on the James, 552; attacks Ft. Fisher, 559.

C

Cabot, John, 41; Sebastian, 41.
Cabral, 42.
Calhoun, John C., Vice-Pres., 409, N.; proposed Pres. of a Southern Confederacy, 417; on annexation of Texas, 441; death of, 465.
California, settled, 53; independent of Mexico, 456; ceded to U. S., 457; slavery question, 462; admitted, 463.
Calvert, George, 75; Cecil, 76; Gov. Leonard, 77.
Calverts, the, 78.
Cambridge, seat of Harvard, 92.
Camden, N. J., settled by Dutch, 113.
Camden, S. C., battle of, 288.
Cameron, Richard, N. 4, p. 87.
Canada, French in, 52; conquest by Americans planned, 174; ceded to Great Brit., 194; urged to join colonies in seeking redress, 218, 231; line of com. with seized, 237; invasion by colonies, 245-247; invasion in 1812, 371, 383; rebels, 431; fishery troubles with, 641.
Canal, Panama ship, 629, N.
Canary Islands discovered, 34.
Canby, Gen., killed by Modocs, 603.
Canonchet, 108.
Canonicus, threatens war, 85; sells land to Roger Williams, 97.
Cape Breton Island, captured, 192.
Cape Fear River settlement, 137.
Carillon, Fort, 190.
Carleton, Sir Guy, 247, 306.
Carolinas, granted, 135; endeavor to suppress slave trade, 153; surrendered to the crown, 155; cede western lands to U. S., 299; secede, 481, 490.

Caroline, Fort, 48, 49; vessel, 431.
Carson City, 573.
Carteret, Sir George, receives half of New Jersey, 121.
Carthagena, S. A., captured by English colonists, 179.
Cartier, Jacques, 47.
Carver, John, 83, 84.
Cedar Creek, battle of, 553.
Cedar Mountain, battle of, 524.
Centennial, exposition, 609; at Yorktown, 626; series of, 627; at Phila., 643; in Ohio, 643; at N. Y., 647.
Cerro Gordo, battle of, 451.
Champlain, Lake, explored, 52.
Champlain, Samuel de, 52, N.
Chancellorsville, battle of, 532.
Chantilly, battle of, 524.
Chapultepec, fortress captured, 453.
Charles I., cedes Maryland, 75; opposes Puritans, 130; beheaded, 131.
Charles II., destroys Virginian freedom, 72; grant to Penn, 124; gives away half N. Amer., 133, N.; cedes Acadia and Nova Scotia, 134; gives land and charter to Conn., 134; grant to Duke of York, 134; grants the Carolinas, 135.
Charleston, S. C., settled, 138; attempted capt. by French, 176; besieged by British, 249, N.; capt. by Brit., 285; evacuated by Brit., 307; Democratic convention at, 479; besieged, 560; abandoned and burned, 562, N.; after Civil War, 570, N.
Charlestown, Mass., founded, 91; burned by British, 240.
Charter Oak, 144, N.
Chase, Salmon P., 577, 587, N.
Chatham, Earl of, see Pitt, William.
Chattanooga, vicinity described, 541, 542; siege of, 543.
Cherokees, sell lands in Ky., 243; moved west of Miss. River, 406; civilization of, 407.
Cherry Valley, N. Y., massacre, 275.
Chicago fire, 599.
Chicagou (Chicago), fort estab., 170.
Chickamauga River, battle of, 543.
Chickasaw Landing, captured, 538.
Chihuahua, captured, 454.
Chilean affairs, 650.
China, sends embassy to U. S., 592.
Chinese, immigration into the U. S., 592, 620, 621.
Chippewa, battle of, 387.
Chopart, angers the Natchez, 168.
Christiana, founded, 115.
Churubusco, battle of, 452.
Cincinnati, founded, 365; threatened capture, 510, 540.
Cincinnati, Society of the, N. 5, p. 185.
Civil Rights Bill, passed, 586.
Civil Service reform, 615.
Claims against England, 596, 597.
Clark, Col., N. W. of Ohio River, 277; captures British posts, 278.
Clark, William, 357, N.
Clarke, John, 98.
Clay, Henry, advocates "Mo.Comp." 402, N.; Sec. of State, 409; introduces comp. on tariff, 417; candidate for Pres., 441; int. "Omnibus Bill," 463; death of, 465.
Clayborne's rebellion, 76, 77.
Clayton-Bulwer treaty, N. 3, p. 372.
Clermont, the, 362.
Cleveland, G., Pres., 632, 634, N., 653.
Clinton, Gen., arrives at Boston, 238, N.; besieges Charleston, S. C., 249; plan for 1777, 262; succeeds Howe, 272; captures Charleston, 285; treats for surrender of West Point, 293; tries to buy Princeton mutineers, 297; superseded by Carleton, 306.
Clinton, George, Vice-Pres., 361, N.; re-elected, 366.
Cockburn, Admiral, 386, N.
Coddington, William, 98.
Colfax, Schuyler, Vice-Pres., 593.
Coligny, 48.
Colonial habits, 209–211.
Colonies organize themselves into sovereign states, 251.
Colorado, admitted, 608.
Colorado River, explored, 46.
Columbia College, founded, 201.
Columbia Riv. exp., 357; nam'd, 443, N.
Columbia, S. C., captured, 562.
Columbian Celebration, 652, 654.
Columbus, Christopher, 35–40, N.; Diego, 43.
Commerce of colonies, 169, 213; restrictions on, 133, 152, 224.
Communism in America, 31, 619.
Compromise, Missouri, 402; on the tariff, 417; of 1850, 463.
Concord, Mass., stores destroyed, 233.
Confederate States of America, organized, 483; recognized by Eng., France, and Spain, 500; resources exhausted, 558; forces remaining April, 1865, 563; restoration to the Union, 595.
Confederation, articles of closer, adopted by the U. S., 298; character of, 300, 310.
Conflicting English grants, 88, 134.
Congress, of northern colonies, 174; first Continental, 230, 231; second Continental, 234, 235.
Connecticut, colony formed, 101; becomes one of "The United Colonies of New England," 102; receives land and new charter from Charles II., 134; included in grant to Duke of York, 134; under Andros, 144; cedes Northwest Territory, 298.
Connecticut River, settlements, 93; banks ravaged by British, 284.
Conspiracy of Pontiac, 195.
Constitution of the U. S., proposed, 317; opinions of, 318; adoption by States, 319; Centennial celebration of, 643; text of, Appendix, p. xii.
Continental army, described, 241.

Contreras, battle of, 452.
Convention, at Albany, 183; the Constituent, 313-316; of Geneva, 628.
Conway Cabal, 268, N.
Copyright Law, International, 648.
Cordilleras, the, 13.
Corinth, battle of, 512.
Cornbury, Lord, 214.
Cornell University, 694.
Cornplanter, 276, N.
Cornwallis, Lord, lays waste New Jersey, 258, N.; pursues Wash., 260; chases Greene and Morgan, 290; at Guilford Court-House, 291; intrenches himself at Yorktown, 302; surrenders, 304.
Coronado, 46.
Cortereal, 42.
Cotton, growing of introduced, 348; manufacture of 686.
Cotton, Rev. John, 199.
Courts of Admiralty, estab., 153.
Covenanters, in N. J., 142, N.
Cowpens, battle of the, 289.
Creeks, defeated, 384; moved west, 406; civilization of, 408.
Croghan, Major, 376.
Cromwell, Oliver, 132, N.
Crown Point, fort estab., 170; surprised by Seth Warner, 237.
Crystal Palace, in New York, 468.
Cuba, colonized, 43; attempt to obtain, 472, N; war, 659, 660.
Culpepper, Lord, 72, 74.
Cumberland and Merrimac, 516, N.
Custer, Gen., death of, 611.
Cutler, Manasseh, Ohio pioneer, 325, N.; Jarvis, at Marietta, N. 3, p. 205.

D

Dade, Major, massacred, 420.
Dahlgren, Admiral, besieges Charleston, 560.
Dakota, organized as Territory, 573; as two States, N. and S. Dakota, 646.
Dakotas, in Minnesota, 20.
Davis, discovers strait, 5.
Davis, Jefferson, Pres. of Southern Confederacy, 483, N.; calls for volunteers, 491; authorizes privateers, 498; abandons Richmond, 565; prisoner, 568.
Dearborn, Ft., capt. by Indians, 370.
Dearborn, Gen., 374.
De Ayllon, 44.
Decatur, Stephen, burns the Philadelphia, 359; subdues Barbary States, 397, N.
Declaration of Independence, 250, N., 251; text of, Appendix, p. x.
Declaration of Rights, 221.
De Espejo, 53, N.
De Gourgues, 51.
De Kalb, Baron, 288.
Delaware, becomes a separate colony, 127; refuses to secede, 490.
Delaware, Lord, 64.
Delawares, the, 187.
Democratic Party, founded by Jefferson, 333, 350; principles of, 350; in power forty years, 432; favor annexation Texas, 440; divided, 479; elect Cleveland, 632.
Department of the Interior, established, 464.
De Soto, Hernando, 45.
D'Estaing, Count, arrives with fleet, 273; attempts capture of Savannah, 285.
Detroit, fort estab., 170; saved from Indians, 195; surrendered, 370.
Dewey, 659.
Dieskau, Baron, defeated, 186.
Dinwiddie, Gov., sends Washington to Fort Le Bœuf, 181; appoints Washington to command a military district, N. 5, p. 194.
Dom Pedro II., visits U. S., 610.
Donelson, Ft., captured, 503, 504.
Doniphan, Col., captures Chihuahua, 454.
Dorchester, founded, 91.
Dorchester Heights, fortified, 248.
Dorr's Rebellion, 437, N.
Douglas, Stephen A., introduces Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 473, N.
Drake, Sir Francis, 55, N.
Drummond, Gen., at Ft. Erie, 389.
Drummond, Wm., first governor of North Carolina, 137.
Dubuque, founded, 461.
Duke of Newcastle, 214.
Du Quesne, Ft., built, 181; seized by French, 182; Braddock's attempt at recapture, 185; taken by Washington and name changed, 192.
Dutch, explorations in America, 109, N.; settlements in America, character of, 112; title to lands in America disputed by Eng., 113; conquer New Sweden, 118; discontent in settlements, 119; seized by Eng., 120; recaptured by Dutch, 122; ceded to Eng., 122.
Dutch East India Company, commission Hudson, 109, N.
Dutch West India Comp. formed, 111, N.; make settlements in America, 112, 113.

E

Early, Gen., in Shenandoah Valley, 553.
Education in colonies, 71, 91, 92, 201; in United States, 694-696.
Edward, Ft., built by Eng., 186; abandoned by Americans, 264.
Edwards, Jonathan, 202; grandfather of Aaron Burr, N. 2, p. 218.
Electoral College, 340, N.
Eliot, John, 105; translates Bible, 106; intercedes for Indians, 107.

Elizabeth, Queen, 56, N.
Embargo Act, the, 364.
Endicott, John, 89.
England, sends explorers to Amer., 41, 55–59; first settlement by, 61; religious differences in, 79; conflicting grants of, 88, 134; gains New Netherlands, 120, 122; civil war in, 130–132; revolution in, 145; acquires Canada, 194; holds American posts after Rev., 326, 330, 331; claims right of search, 363, 367; resents "Trent Affair," 499; infringes neutrality, 500; suffers by the blockade, 584; difficulties with, settled, 596–598.
English Revolution, 145; settles important principle, 149.
Eric the Red, 6.
Ericsson, Capt. John, invents the Monitor, 518, N.
Erie Canal opened, 411.
Erie, Ft., captured by Americans, 387; besieged by British, 389.
Everett, Edward, nominated for Vice-Pres., 479, N.
Ewell, Gen., burns Richmond, 566.
Exposition, the Centennial, 609; the New Orleans, 633; at Cincinnati, 643.

F

Fair Oaks, battle of, 523.
Faneuil Hall, 227, N.
Farmers' Alliance, the, 653.
Farragut, Admiral, captures New Orleans, Baton Rouge, Natchez, 514, 515; in Mobile Bay, 560.
Fayerweather, D. B., 696.
Federalist, the, N. 1, p. 204; N. 1, p. 227.
Federalist Party, founded, 333; defeated, 349; resist War of 1812, 390, 392; favor protection, 398; merged into Whig Party, 432.
Fenwick, John, 123.
Field, Cyrus W., and the Atlantic Cable, 589, N., 590.
Fifty-first Congress, 648.
Fifty-third Congress, 655.
Filibusters, 472, N.
Fillmore, Millard, Pres., 464, N.; candidate for Pres., 476.
Finisterre, Cape, limit of colonial trade, 133.
First American cargo to Eng., 213.
First American journal, 154.
First book written in America, 197.
First college in United States, 92.
First Continental Congress, 230. 231.
First cotton-mill in U. S., 348, 686.
First election under Constitu., 319.
First English settlement, 61.
First law-making body in America elected by the people, 68.
First printing-press in U. S., 92, N.
First settlement in U. S., 50.
First steamboats in America, 362.
First steamer across Atlantic, 403.
First steam locomotive in U. S., 412.
First telegraph in U. S., 442.
First vessel on the Great Lakes, 163.
First written constitution framed in America, 101.
Fisher, Ft., capt. by U. S. forces, 559.
Fisheries, on Newfoundland banks discov., 47; carried on by Eng., 56, 59; troubles about settled, 598; renewed, 641.
Five Forks, battle of, N. 1, p. 333; 564.
Floods, 631.
Florida, discov., 43; ceded to Eng., 194; to the U. S. by Spain, 403; admitted, 441; secedes, 481; eastern ports seized by U. S., 528.
Floyd, Gen. J. B., in W. Va., 492.
Foote, Commodore, 503, N.
Foreign aid to America, 261, 269, N.; 270, 273, 302, N.
Forts of the French, 165, 170, 181, 182.
"**Fountain** of Youth," 39, 43.
France, difficulties with, 343–345, 425.
Franciscan Fathers in America, 160.
Franklin, Benj., proposes Union, 183; biography of, 203–205, N.; sent as commissioner to Paris, 270; at Constitutional Convention, 314, 315.
Frederic the Great, 269, N.
Fredericksburg, battle of, 527.
Free Soil Party, organized, 460.
Free trade, advocated, 398.
Freedmen's Bureau, estab., 586.
Freeman's Farm, battle of, N. 3, p. 167.
Frémont, John C., in California, 455, 456; candidate for Pres., 476, N.; attempts to liberate slaves, 529.
French and Indian War, 172, 184–195.
French, discov. and settlements, 47–52; colonists in S. C., 139; explorations in Miss. Val., 160–163; on the Gulf, 164, 165; war with the Natchez, 168; settlement at New Orleans, 167, 169; forts, 170; in Maine, 178; expelled from Acadia, 186; Revolution, effect in America, 328, 329.
Friends, persecution of, 104, N.; purchase N. J., 123; settle Penn. and Del., 124–127; liberated from prisons, 128; records concerning, 207.
Frobisher, 55, N.
Frontenac, Ft. estab., 170; captured by Bradstreet, 192.
Fugitive Slave Law, 466.
Fulton, Robert, 362, N.
Fur traders, 160, 162, 163, 443, N.

G

Gadsden Purchase, 470.
Gage, Gen., sends expedition to Concord and Lexington, 232; besieged in Boston, 233, N.; superseded by Howe, 240.

Gallatin, Albert, Sec. of Treasury, 352, N.; pronounces Hamilton's records clear, 353.
Garfield, James A., Pres., 623; character and death of, 624, N.
Garnett, Gen., in W. Va., 492.
Gaspée, burned, 225, 226.
Gates, Gen. Horatio, takes command in the North, 265, N.; plots against Washington, 268, N; defeated at Camden and succeeded by Greene, 288.
Geary, John W., 475.
Genet, Edmond Charles, 332.
Geneva, Board of Arbitration, 597, N.; convention of, 628.
George, Lake, scene of Abercrombie's defeat, 190, 191.
George III., 219; petitioned by colonists, 231; employs Hessians and Indians, 244; statue of pulled down, 251; adjourns Parliament and offers pardon to colonies, 271.
Georgia, bestowed on Oglethorpe, 155; character of settlers, 156; slavery introduced, 157; war with Spain, 158, 179; sends relief to Boston, 228; becomes royal province, 280; cedes western lands to U.S., 299; secedes, 481; manufactures of, 557.
Germantown, 126, 263.
Gettysburg, battle of, 534, 535.
Ghent, Treaty of, 393.
Gila River, explored, 46.
Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 56.
Gillmore, Gen., at Charleston, 560.
Gladstone, Wm. E., 318.
Gold, discovered, 458.
Gookin, Daniel, 107.
Gorges, Sir Ferdinando, 87.
Gorges, William, 88.
Gosnold, explorations of, 59, N.; carries the first cargo from America to England, 213.
Grand Model of government for the Carolinas, 135, 136.
Grangers, the, 616.
Grant, Ulysses S., captures Ft. Donelson, 503, 504; commands dept. of W. Tenn., 505; at Shiloh, 506, 507; at Iuka and Corinth, 512; supplies cut off, 528; commander of three western departments, 543; at Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge, 545, 546; lieutenant-general, 549; at battles of Wilderness, 550; Spottsylvania, 551; besieges Richmond and Petersburg, 554; captures Richmond, 564–566; receives Lee's surrender, 567; Pres., 593, N.; re-elected, 601; Indian policy of, 602; at Centennial Exposition, 610.
Grasse, Count de, 302, N.
Gray, Capt. Robert, 433, N.
Great Britain, *see* England.
Great Eastern, lays second Atlantic Cable, 590.
Great Ireland, 8.
Great Lakes, described, 18; route of fur traders, 162; first vessel on, 163; boundary of U. S., 309.
Greeley, Horace, 601, N.
Greely, Lieut., 698.
Green Mountain Boys capt. Ticonderoga and Crown Point, 237, NOTES.
Greene, Gen. Nathaniel, succeeds Gates, 288, N.; pursued by Cornwallis, 290; at Guilford Court-House and Eutaw Springs, 291.
Greenland, 6.
Guadalupe Hidalgo, treaty of, 457.
Gustavus Adolphus, king, plans settlements in America, 114.
Guthrie, Oklahoma, 645.

H

Habits of colonial times, 209–211.
Haines's Bluff, captured, 538.
Hale, Capt. Nathan, hung as spy, 255.
Hamilton, Alexander, at the Const. Conv., 315; on the Const., 319; Sec. of the Treasury, 321–323, N., 353; leading Federalist, 333; killed by Burr, 360.
Hamilton, Gov., offers reward for scalps, 277; captured, 278.
Hamlin, Hannibal, Vice-Pres., 479.
Hampton, Gen., commands on Lake Champlain, 374.
Hampton, Gov. Wade, on National troops in the South, 614.
Hancock, Gen. Winfield S., 623.
Hardee, Gen., 562.
Harper's Ferry, arsenal seized by Brown, 478; burned, 490; seized by Jackson, 525.
Harrison, Gen. W. H., wins battle of Tippecanoe, 368; commands in the West, 374–376; wins battle of the Thames, 383; Pres., 433; death of, 434, N.
Harrison, Benj., Pres., 644–647, N.
Hartford, founded, 93; unites with Windsor and Wethersfield to found Connecticut, 101; Dutch settlers, 113; Fed'list. Conv. held, 392.
Harvard College, founded, 92, 154; celebrates accession of George III., 219.
Hawaiian Islands, 660.
Hayes, Rutherford B., election of, 613, 614; withdraws troops from Southern States, 614, N.; pledged to Civil Service reform, 615; vetoes bill against Burlingame Treaty, 621.
Hayne, Robert, 416, N.
Hazen, Gen., 513.
Hendricks, Thos. A., 632, 640, N.
Henry, Fort, captured, 503.
Henry, Patrick, introduces Declaration of rights, 221; at the first Continental Congress, 230, N.; objects to "We, the people," 319, N.

Henry, Prince the Nav., N. 1, p. 39.
Henry VII., of England, 41.
Hessians, employed by George III., 244; locate in America, 266.
Historians of colonial times, 199, 200.
Hoe, Richard, invents a printing press, 689.
Holland, plants colonies in Amer., 109-113, NOTES; surrenders them to Eng., 120, 122; sympathizes with Americans in Rev., 301.
Holly Springs, seized by Van Dorn, 528.
Hood, Gen., supersedes Johnston and defeated by Sherman, 556; destroys Atlanta, 557; defeated by Schofield and Thomas, 558.
Hooker, Gen. Joseph, commands Army of the Potomac, 532, N.; succeeded by Meade, 534; at Lookout Mountain, 544, 545.
Hooker, Rev. Thomas, 93, N., 199.
Horse-shoe Bend, battle of, 384.
House of Burgesses, Va., *see* Burgesses, council of.
Houston, Gen. Sam., N. 6, p. 263.
Howe, Elias, Jr., invents sewing-machine, 688.
Howe, Lord George Augustus, at Ticonderoga, 191, N.
Howe, Admiral Richard, arrives at New York, 252, N.; at Newport, R. I., 273.
Howe, Gen. Wm., at Boston, 238; supersedes Gage, 240; evacuates Boston, 248; encamps at Staten Island, 252; takes possession of New York, 255; plan of for 1777, 262; enters Philadelphia, 263; offers bribes to American soldiers, 267; resigns his command, 272.
Hudson, Henry, 109, N.
Hudson Bay territory, transferred to English, 194.
Hudson River, exp., 109; named, 110; banks ravaged by British, 284.
Huguenots in South Carolina, 139.
Hull, Capt. Isaac, captures the Guerrière, 372.
Hull, Gen. Wm., invades Canada, 369; surrenders, 370.
Hutchinson, Mrs. Anne, 98.

I

Iberville, Lemoine d', 165, N.
Iceland, 6.
Idaho, Territory formed, 444; organized, 573; admitted, 646.
Illinois, first settled, 161, 163, N.; county of, organized, 278; organized as separate Territory, 399; admitted, 402.
Immigration, 400, 422, 699.
Impressment of seamen by England, 330, 331, 367, 368.
Independence, first steps toward, 215-231; Declaration of, 250, N., 251; text of, Appendix, p. viii.
Indian Territory, formed, 406; and Oklahoma, 634, 635, 645, 672.
Indiana, settled, 170; becomes Virginian ter., 278; admitted, 399, N.
Indians, first location of, 20; river tribes, 21; village Indians, 23; tribal divisions, 23; the Iroquois, 26; clans and sachems, 27, 28; religion, 29; customs, 30, 31; appearance and character, 32; how named, 38; enslaved, 39, 44, 100, 168; attack Virginians, 69; attack New Englanders, 99, 107; converted, 53, 106, 178; attack Dutch, 116; form a treaty with Penn, 125; attack French, 168; Schenectady, 173; Albemarle and Pamlico settlements, 177; Ohio settlers, 187, 326; massacre at Ft. Wm. Henry, 188; Pontiac's conspiracy, 195; employed by British, 244; ravage Mohawk Valley, 264; massacre at Wyoming, 274; at Cherry Valley, 275; treaties of 1784-90, 311, 312; Jefferson's policy toward, 354; at Tippecanoe, 368; at Fort Dearborn, 370; in the War of 1812, 375, 376, 383; attack Ft. Mimms, 384; removed west of Mississippi, 406; troubles in Illinois and Wisconsin, 418; in Florida, 419, 420; employed in Civil War, 508; Grant's policy toward, 602; outbreak in Or., 603; in Dakota, Montana, and Wyoming, 611.
Interior basin of Cordilleras, 15.
Interstate Commerce, 640, 672.
Inventions, cotton-gin, spinning-jenny, steam-engine, 348; telegraph, 442; sewing-machine, 688. agricultural implements, etc., 689.
Iowa, admitted, 461.
Iron-clad Oath, the, 588.
Iroquois, *see* Six Nations.
Isabella, Queen, 35, 38.
Island No. 10, surrendered, 507.
Italian troubles in New Orleans, 649.
Iuka, battle of, 512.

J

Jackson, Andrew, defeats Creeks, 384; wins battle of New Orleans, 394, 395; governor of Florida, 403; Pres., 414; rotation in office, 415, N.
Jackson, "Stonewall," at Bull Run, 493; in the Shenandoah Valley, 522; seizes Harper's Ferry, 525; at Chancellorsville, 532, N.
James I., charters London and Plymouth Companies, 60; makes Virginia a royal province, 70; religious intolerance of, 79; conflicting grants of, 88.

James II., becomes king and liberates Quakers, 128; sells "Monmouth's Rebels" to Virginia, 141; persecutes the Covenanters, 142; appoints Andros governor and takes away colonial charters, 143, 144; deposed, 144, 145.
James River, named, 62; shores ravaged by British, 284; in Civil War, 523.
Jamestown, settled, 62; attacked by Indians, 69.
Japan, treaty with, 469.
Jasper, Sergeant, at the battle of Ft Moultrie, N. 7, p. 149; killed at Savannah, 285.
Jay, John, American commissioner at Versailles, N. 3, pp. 193, 194; on the Constitution, 319, N.; Chief-justice of the United States, 321; makes treaty with England, 331.
Jefferson, Ft., built, 279.
Jefferson, Thomas, writes Declaration of Independence, 250; Sec. of State, 321; leading Democrat, 333; Vice-Pres., 340; Pres., 349–352, N.; has Hamilton's records examined, 353; greatest event in his term, 355; re-elected Pres., 361; opinion on Embargo Act, 364; makes proposition to restrict slavery, 402; death of, 413.
Jesuit Fathers in America, 53, 160, N.
Johnson, Andrew, Vice-Pres., 561; Pres., 572; differences with Congress, 586, N.; impeachment of, 587.
Johnson family in N. Y., 275, N.
Johnson, Richard M., Vice-Pres., 426.
Johnson, Gen. William, builds Ft. Wm. Henry, 186; receives estate on Mohawk, 275.
Johnston, Gen. A. S., in Civil War, 502, N., 506.
Johnston, Gen. J. E., commander-in-chief of Confederacy, 522; at Fair Oaks, 523; chief command in Georgia, 550; opposes Sherman, 555, N.; superseded by Hood, 556; re-instated and defeated at Averysboro and Bentonville, N. C., 563; surrenders to Sherman, 567, N.
Joint High Commission, on Eng. and Am. claims, 596; on Pres. election, 613.
Jones, John Paul, 283, N.

K

Kansas, difficulties in, 474, 475; admitted, 482.
Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 473.
Karlsefne, Thorfinn, 9.
Kaskaskia, Ills., founded, 161.
Kearny, Gen., in Mex. War, 447, 454.
Kent, Isle of, 76.
Kenton, Kentucky pioneer, 243.
Kentucky, settled, 243; admitted, 335; refuses to secede, 490; urged to join Confederacy, 510, 511.
Key, Francis S., 386.
Kidd, Captain, 213, N.
Kieft, gov. of New Netherlands, 116.
King George's War, 172, 179, 180.
King Philip's War, 107, 108, N.
King William's War, 172–174.
King's College, founded, 201.
King's Mountain, battle of, 288, N.
Kittanning, destroyed, 187.
Know-Nothing party, 476, N.
Knox, Henry, takes possession of New York, 308, N.; Sec. of War, 321.
Knoxville, battle of, 547.
Kosciusko, in America, 261, N.

L

Labor strikes of 1877, 617–619, 654.
Labrador, discovered, 41.
La Fayette, comes to Amer., 261, N.; at André's court-martial, 295; in French Rev., 328; revisits Amer., 405.
Lake Champlain, explored, 52.
La Salle's explorations, 163, N., 164; basis of French claims, 181.
Laudonnière, 49.
Law, John, originates "Mississippi Scheme," 166; settles Ark., 167.
Lawrence, James, 377, N.; captures the *Peacock*, 378; killed, 378.
Lawrence, Kansas, burned, 475.
League formed in New England, 102.
Lecompton, Convention at, 474.
Lee, Arthur, Comm. to Paris, 270, N.
Lee, Charles, at Charleston, 249, N.; taken prisoner and exchanged, 257; at Monmouth, 272.
Lee, Ft., captured, 256.
Lee, Henry, captures Jersey City, 282, N.; commands against "Whisky Rebellion," 327.
Lee, Richard Henry, offers resolution of independence, 250, N.
Lee, Robert E., defeated in W. Va., 492; invades Maryland, 509, 525; commander-in-chief, 523, N.; at second Bull Run and Chantilly, 524; South Mountain, 525; Antietam, 526; Gettysburg, 534, 535; the Wilderness, 550; Spottsylvania, 551; force remaining Apr., '65, 563; captures Ft. Steadman, 564; abandons Richmond, 565; surrenders, 567.
Leif, in New England, 7.
Leisler, death of, 148.
Lenni Lenape, make treaty with Penn, 125.
Leopard and Chesapeake, 363.
Lewis and Clark's Expedition, 357, N.
Lexington, battle of, 232, 233, N.
Liberty Bell, 250, N.
Lieber, Dr. Francis, 692.
Lightning-rod, invented by Franklin, 205.

Lincoln, Abraham, Pres., 480; policy of, 486, 487, N.; calls for volunteers, 491; refuses at first to molest slavery, 529; issues emancipation proclamation, 530, 531; re-elected, 561; second inaugural address, 569; death of, 570, 571.
Lincoln, Gen., sent to aid Schuyler, 263; commands in South, 281, N.; attempts capture of Savannah, 285; surrenders Charleston, 285; receives Cornwallis's sword, 304.
Literary progress in the colonies, 154, 196-208; in U. S., 693, 694.
Livingston, Robert R., administers oath of office to Washington, 320, N.; aids Fulton, 320, N., 362; U. S. agent in purchasing Louisiana, 355, 356.
Livingston, William, at Constitutional Convention, 315.
Locke, John, draws model of government for Carolinas, 135, N.
London Company, chartered, 60; laws of, 66; dissolved, 70.
Long Island, battle of, 253.
Long Island Sound, settlements, 94.
Long Parliament, 131.
Longstreet, Gen. James, at Knoxville, 547, N.
Lookout Mountain, battle of, 545.
Louis XIV., attempts to settle Louisiana, 164, N.
Louis XV., attempts to found an empire in America, 166, N.
Louisburg, capt. by Eng. colonists, 180; by colonists and regulars, 192.
Louisiana, named, 163; founder of, 165, N.; ceded to Spain, 194; ceded to France and purchased by U. S., 355, 356; partly organized, 358; State admitted, 383; secedes, 481.
Lowell, Francis, inventor, 686.
Lundy's Lane, battle of, 388.
Lynn, founded, 91.

M

McClellan, Gen. Geo. B., in W. Va., 492; commander-in-chief, 495, N.; at Williamsburg, 521; Fair Oaks, 523; South Mountain, 525; Antietam, 526; relieved, 526.
McDonough, Commodore, at Plattsburgh, 391, N.
McDowell, Gen., at Bull Run, 493; checked by Jackson, 522.
McHenry, Ft., bombarded, 386.
McKinley, William, 648, 656, 666.
Macomb, Gen., at Plattsb'gh, 391, N.
Madeiras, discovered, 34.
Madison, James, at Const. Conv., 315; on Const., 319; leading Democrat, 333; Sec. of State, 352; Pres., 366, N.
Magellan, 42, N.
Mail service, extended, 151; organized, 205; present state, 684.
Maine, coast explored, 59; colonized, 88, 178; eastern part surrendered to Great Britain, 194; admitted, 402.
Manhattan Island, settled, 111.
Manufactures, colonial, 212; of U. S., 348, 685-687.
Marietta, founded, 325, N.
Marion, Gen., harasses the British, 286, N.; as a host, 287.
Marquette, 161, N.
Maryland, colony formed, 75; royal province, 78; agrees to Union, 299; cedes land for a national capital, 323; ravaged by British, 385, 386; refuses to secede, 490; invaded by Lee, 509, 525; by Early, 553.
Mason, John, grant to, 87.
Mason and Slidell difficulty, 499, 500.
Massachusetts Bay Colony, coast explored, 59; extended, 86, 87, 145; royal charter, 90; laws of, 91; towns of, 91; religious intolerance in, 95, 96, 104; new laws adopted, 101; one of "United Colonies of New England," 102; State cedes N. W. Territory to U. S., 298, 299.
Massacre by Indians at Fort Wm. Henry, 188; at Wyoming, 274; at Cherry Valley, N. Y., 275; at Fort Mimms, 384; Wahoo Swamp, 420.
Massasoit, treaty with, 84.
Matamoras, captured, 446.
Mather, Cotton, 199.
Mather, Increase, 199.
Maximilian, in Mexico, 585.
Mayflower, the, 82.
Meade, Gen., at Gettysburg, 534, N.
Mecklenburg Resolutions, 242.
Meigs, Ft., besieged, 376.
Memphis, ft. established, 170; captured by U. S., 508.
Menendez, Pedro, 50.
Mercantile system adopted, 152.
Meridian Raid, the, 548.
Merrimac and Monitor, 516-519, N.
Mexico, city of, captured, 453.
Mexico, expedition against, 179; recognized by U. S., 404; wages war with U. S., 446-457; Maximilian in, 585; Cent. R. R. of, 629.
Michigan, settled, 161; organized as Territory, 399; admitted, 426; forest fires in, 599; University of, 694.
Miller, Col. James, 388, N.
Mimms, Ft., massacre of, 384.
Ministers of early New Eng., 199.
Mint, established, 323.
Minute-men, organized, 231, N.
Mission Indians, 53.
Missionary Ridge, battle of, 546.
Mississippi, settled by French, 165; admitted, 402; secedes, 481.
Mississippi River, disc. by De Soto, 45; by Marquette, 161; navigation secured to Americans, 334; strug-

gle for possession of, 502–515; navigation of, opened, 539; floods, 631.
Mississippi Scheme, 166, 167.
Mississippi Valley, described, 17; explored by French, 160–163.
Missouri, admitted, 402; refuses to secede, 490; field of Civil War, 492.
Missouri Compromise, 402; disregarded, 463, 473.
Mitchell, Col., at Oswego, 387.
Mobile, Alabama, settled, 165.
Mohawk Valley, ravaged, 264.
Monmouth's rebels, in Virginia, 141.
Monroe Doctrine, the, 404.
Monroe, Fortress, held by Union forces, 485; head-quarters Army of Potomac, 520; prison of Jefferson Davis, 568.
Monroe, James, leading Democrat, 333; agent of U. S. in purchasing Louisiana, 356; Pres., 400, N.; re-elected, 404.
Montana, organized Territory, 573; admitted as State, 646.
Montcalm, captures Ft. Oswego, 187; destroys Ft. William Henry, 188; defeats Abercrombie, 191; killed at Quebec, 193, N.
Monterey, captured, 448.
Montezumas, 453, N.
Montgomery, Ala., Confederate Convention at, 483.
Montgomery, Gen., captures Montreal, 246, N.; killed at Quebec, 247.
Montreal, founded, 170; conquest by American colonists planned, 174; captured by English, 194; by Montgomery, 246; abandoned, 247.
Moore, Gov., attacks Spanish settlements, 176.
Morgan, Gen. Daniel, aids Schuyler, 263; wins battle of the Cowpens, 289, N.; pursued by Cornwallis, 290.
Morgan, Gen. John H., 509, N.; 540.
Mormons, 438, 439, N.
Morris, Com., 359.
Morris, Lieut., N. 1, p. 315.
Morris, Robt., at Const. Conv., 315, N.
Morristown, winter at, 284.
Morton, Levi P., Vice-President of United States, 644.
Moultrie, Col. William, defends Charleston, 249, N.; recaptures Port Royal, S. C., 281.
Moultrie, Ft., named, 249, N.; evacuated by Anderson, 482.
Mound-Builders, 2–5.
Murfreesborough, battle of, 513.
Mutiny during Revolution, 297.

N

Napoleon Bonaparte, friendly to U. S., 345; orders mourning for Washington, 346; prophecy concerning U. S., 356.
Napoleon III., designs on Mexico, 585.
Narragansett Indians, threaten war, 85; receive Roger Williams, 97; refuse to make war, 99, 100.
Narvaez, 45.
Natchez, Miss., settled, 165, 168; captured by Union forces, 515.
Natchez Indians, exterminated, 168.
National Bank Bill, vetoed, 421, 435.
National debt, 577, 630.
Naval battles: the Bon Homme Richard and Serapis, 283; bet. Eng. and French at Yorktown, 302; Guerrière and Constitution, 372; Wasp and Frolic, 373; Hornet and Peacock, 378; Chesapeake and Shannon, 378; Argus and Pelican, 379; Essex and British ships, 379; of Lake Erie, 380–382; Alabama and Kearsarge, 498; on the Mississippi, 508; Monitor and Merrimac, 516–519; in Mobile Bay, 560.
Navigation Acts, 133, 152.
Navy of U. S. in the Rev., 283, N.; in the Civil War, 496, 514, 515, 519, 560.
Nebraska, admitted, 591.
Necessity, Ft., built, 182.
Negroes, introduced in America as slaves, 67, 140; confiscated by Butler, 529; take part in the Civil War, 531; civil rights established, 586.
Nevada, ceded to U. S., 458; becomes a State, 573.
New Amsterdam, founded, 111; seized by Eng. and name changed to New York, 120; recaptured by Dutch, 122; ceded to England, 122.
New Brunswick, 194.
Newburgh, N. Y., cent'nial. at, 627.
Newcastle, Duke of, 214.
New England, visited by Gosnold and Smith, NOTES 5, 6, p. 46; colonized, 83–98; United Colonies of, 102; distrusts Parliament, 131; respect for ministers, 199; habits of living, 210; suffers in War of 1812, 387; opposes the war, 390, 392.
Newfoundland, disc., 7, 41; transferred to England, 194.
New France, named, 47; father of, 52.
New Hampshire, settled, 87; part of Massachusetts, 145; claims Vermont, N. 1, p. 147.
New Haven, founded, 94, N.; laws of, 94; one of "United Colonies of New Eng.," 102; site of Yale College, 201.
New Jersey, 121; purchased by Quakers, 123; receives the Covenanters, 142.
New Mexico, settled, 53, N.; ceded to U. S., 457.
New Netherlands, named, 110; character of inhabitants, 112; discontent in, 119; seized by Eng., 120; recaptured, 122; ceded to Eng., 122.
New Orleans, founded, 167; growth of, 169; American depot, 334; battle

of, 394, 395; captured by Union forces, 514, 515; exposition, 633; college, 696; massacre, 649.
Newport, Christopher, 61.
Newport, harbor disc., 47; settlement founded, 98; attack upon, 273.
Newspapers, colonial, 154, N. 1, p. 125.
New Sweden, founded, 115; conquered by the Dutch, 118.
New York, harbor entered, 47, 109; city named, 120; captured by Dutch, 122; ceded to Eng., 122; colony loses its charter, 143; claims Vermont, N. 1, p. 147; city seized by Brit., 255; State cedes N. W. Ter., 299; city evacuated by Brit., 308; Washington inaugurated as Pres., 320; riots in, 533; centennials at, 627, 647.
Niagara, Fort estab., 170; English attempt to capture, 186.
Nicolls, Richard, gov. of N. Y., 122.
Norfolk, navy-yard seized by Confederates, 490; surrendered to U. S., 519.
Norridgewock, settlement of, 178.
North Carolina, settled, 137; discontent in, 223; State cedes western lands to U. S., 299; coasts ravaged by British, 385; secedes, 490.
Northern Pacific R. R., begun, 605.
Northmen, in Iceland and Greenland, 6; in New England, 7.
Northwest passage attempted, 42; 55, N., 109, N.
Northwest Territory, *see* Territory, etc.
Nova Scotia, 88; ceded to Temple, 134; to Great Britain by France, 194; *see* Acadia.

O

Officials, English, in colonies, 214.
Oglethorpe, receives Georgia, 155, N.; lays out Savannah, 156; forbids slavery and rum, 157; besieges St. Augustine and repels Spanish invasion, 158, 179; returns to Eng., 159.
Ohio Company, 325, N.
Ohio River, disc., N. 3, p. 103; floods in, 631.
Ohio, settled, 325, N.; admitted, 365.
Ohio University, established, 324.
Ohio Valley, possession disputed, 181; Indian troubles in, 187; centennial of settlement, 643.
Oklahoma, 634, 645, 672.
Omnibus Bill, 463, 466.
Orange, Ft., changed to Albany, 120.
Ordinance of 1787 passed, 324; infringed, 477.
Oregon, explored, 357, N.; settled and northern boundary fixed, 443, 444; territory formed and State admitted, 444.
Orleans, Territory of, organized, 358; included in Louisiana, 383.
Osceola, 419, 420.
Ostend Manifesto, 472.
Oswego, Ft., capt. by Montcalm, 187; town capt. by British, 387.
Oxenstiern, sends emigrants to America, 114.

P

Pacific coast, explored, 55.
Pacific Ocean, discovered, 42, 43.
Pacific Railroad, explorations for, 471; completed, 594.
Pakenham, Gen., 394, 395.
Palo Alto, battle of, 446.
Pamlico Sound, settlers attacked, 177.
Pamphlets, colonial, 208.
Panama, ship-canal of, 629, N.; 669.
Panic, of Van Buren's term, 427–429; of 1873, 605; of 1893, 655; of 1907, 673.
Paper-making, 687.
Paper money, issued during Rev., 296; in Civil War, 511, 577, 579; effects of latter, 604, 605.
Paris, treaty of, 194.
Parliament, oppresses the colonies, 149, 153.
Patrons of Husbandry, 616.
Peabody, Geo., endowments by, 696.
Pea Ridge, battle of, 508.
Peary, R. E., 698.
Pemberton, Gen., at Vicksburg, 538.
Penn, Wm., helps purchase New Jersey, 123, N.; obtains grant of Pennsylvania, 124; buys land from Swedes and founds Philadelphia, 125; makes treaty with Indians, 125; grants liberal constitution, 126; receives Delaware, 127; releases Quaker prisoners, 128; ingratitude toward, 129; plan of union, 151.
Pennsylvania, granted to Penn, 124; just laws of, 126; includes Delaware, 127; recharters bank of U. S., 429; invaded by Lee, 534; by Early, 553.
Pension-list, extension of, 648.
People's Party, 653, 656.
Pequod War, 99, 100.
Perry, Capt. O. H., 380–382, N.
Perry, Com. M. C., in Japan, 469.
Perryville, battle of, 512.
Personal Liberty Laws, 467.
Petersburg, Va., besieged, 554.
Petition sent to George III., 231.
Philadelphia, Swedish settlements near, 115; founded, 125; first and second Continental Congresses meet, 230, 234; capt. by Howe, 263; evacuated by Brit., 272; Constitutional Conv. meet, 314; site of Bank of U. S., national mint, and national capital, 323; of Centennial Exposition, 609.
Philadelphia, the ship, burned, 359.

Philippines, 659, 660, 664.
Pickens, Ft., 485.
Pickens, Gen., 286.
Picture-writing, 30.
Pierce, Franklin, Pres., 467; biography of, 473, N.
Pilgrims, selected to found colony, 81; sail from England, 81, 82, N.; found Plymouth, 83, N.; hardships of, 84–86; religious tolerance, 95.
Pillow, Ft., abandoned, 508.
Pillow, Gen., at Contreras and Churubusco, 452.
Pirates, in colonial times, 213; of Barbary States, 329, 335, 359, 397.
Pitt, Wm., premier of Eng., 189; selects Wolfe to attack Quebec, 193, N.; biography, 219, N.; takes part of colonists, 229, 236.
Pittsburgh, site of fort, 181; named, 192; riot in, 621.
Plains of Abraham, 193, N., 246.
Plattsburgh, battle of, 391.
Plots, against Washington, 265, N., 268, N.; to make him king, 310.
Plymouth Colony founded, 83; part of Mass., 86, 145; becomes one of "United Col. of New England," 102.
Plymouth Company, 60.
Pocahontas, 69, N.
Point Comfort, named, 62.
Polar explorations, 698.
Polk, James K., Pres., 441, 443, N.
Ponce de Leon, 43.
Pontiac, conspiracy of, 195.
Pope, Gen., at Cedar Mountain, second Bull Run, and Chantilly, 524.
Population of U. S. in 1900, 682.
Porter, Capt. David, com. Essex, 379.
Porter, Com. D. D., assists at Ft. Fisher, 559, N.
Port Hudson, held by Confederates, 528; surren. to Union forces, 539.
Port Royal, Nova Scotia, twice captured by Massachusetts volunteers and named Annapolis, 174.
Port Royal, S. C., named, 48; captured by Brit. and recaptured, 281; fort captured by U. S., 501, N.
Portsmouth, N. H., 87, 671.
Potomac, British on the, 284.
Powhatan, 69.
Pratt, Charles, 696.
Praying Indians, 106; persecuted by whites, 107.
Preble, Com. Edw., in Tripoli, 359, N.
Prescott, Col., at Bunker Hill, 238.
Prescott, Gen. (British), 257.
Price, Gen., in Missouri, 508.
Prince Edward Island, capt., 192.
Princeton, battle of, 260, N.
Princeton College, founded, 201.
Pring, Captain, 59.
Printing-press, 92, N., 689, 697.
Printz, gov. of New Sweden, 115.
Privateers, in the Rev., 283, N. 1, p. 193; in the War of 1812, 373; of the Confederate States, 498.
Proctor, Gen., brutality to prisoners, 375; defeated at fts. Meigs and Stephenson, 376; at battle of the Thames, 383.
Providence, founded, 97, N.
Public education in N. W. Ter., 324.
Public improvements, disputes on, 411; during Jackson's term 423.
Public schools in the U. S., 695.
Pueblo, captured, 451.
Pueblos, 23, 46, N.
Pulaski, aids America, 261, N.; killed at Savannah, 285.
Pulaski, Ft., 528.
Puritans, origin of, 79, 80, N.; in Holland, 80, 81; sail for America, 81; their patent invalid, 82; found New Haven, 94; obtain control in England, 130; *see* Pilgrims.
Putnam, Israel, 233, N.

Q

Quaker guns, 520, N.
Quakers, *see* Friends.
Quebec, settled, 52; conquest of planned, 174; capt. by Wolfe, 193, N.; French attempt recapture, 194; besieged by Montgomery, 246, 247.
Queen Anne's War, 172, 175–177.

R

Railroads, 412; Pacific R. R. explorations, 471; growth of, 683.
Railway riots, 617–619.
Râle, Father, 178.
Raleigh, N. C., captured, 563.
Raleigh, Sir Walter, 56, N., 59.
Rall, Colonel, 259.
Randolph, Edmund, Attorney-general, 321, N.
Reconstruction of the Southern States, 586, 588, 595.
Red Cross Society, 628.
Red Jacket, 276, N.
Reed, Thomas B., 651.
Regulators, in North Carolina, 223.
Reign of Terror, effect in Amer., 329.
Religion of Indians, 29.
Religious differences in Eng., 79.
Religious intolerance in Massachusetts, 95–98, 104.
Republican, or Dem., party, 233.
Republican party, 476, NOTES, 632.
Resaca de la Palma, battle of, 446.
Resolutions, the Mecklenburg, 242.
Restrictions on colonial industry, 133, 152, 224, 244.
Resumption of specie, 608, 623.
Revenue Laws, evaded in R. I., 225.
Revere, Paul, N. 6, p. 137.
Revolution, French, effect in America, 328, 379.

Revolution in England, 145; settles principles of government, 149.
Rhode Island, settled, 97, N., 98; charter of, 103; charter lost, 144; smuggling in, 225; sends no delegates to Constituent Convention, 314; rebellion in, 437, N.
Rhode Island, island of, purchased, 98.
Riall, Gen., defeated at Chippewa, 387; capt. at Lundy's Lane, 388.
Ribault, 48.
Richmond, Ky., battle of, 510.
Richmond, Va., settled, 71; capital of the Southern Confederacy, 493; threatened by Union troops, 520, 521; relieved, 522, 523; Grant's advance on begun, 550; outer defenses captured, 552; besieged by Grant and cut off from South, 554; captured by Grant, 565, 566; burned, 566.
Riedesel, Hessian general, 266.
Right of search, claimed, 363, 367, 368; abandoned, 396, 436.
Ring robberies, 607.
Rio Grande, explored, 53; claimed by Texas as boundary, 445.
Riots, in New York, 533; railway, 617.
Roads, in colonial times, 211.
Roanoke Island, first settlement, 57; second settlement, 58; recovered by Union forces, 528.
Robertson, James, pioneer, N. 2, p. 136.
Rochambeau, Count de, 302.
Rolfe, John, 69.
Roosevelt, Theodore, 665-676, N.
Rosecrans, Gen., at Murfreesborough, 513; at Chickamauga River, 543; relieved of command, 543.
Ross, Gen., burns Washington, 385, N.; attacks Baltimore, 386.
Rotation in office introduced, 415.
Roxbury, founded, 91.
Royal officials in the colonies, 214.
Russian America purchased, 591.

S

Sachems, 28.
Sacs and Foxes, moved west, 418.
St. Augustine, founded, 50; besieged by Oglethorpe, 158, 179.
St. Clair, Gen. Arthur, governor of N. W. Territory, 325, N., 326.
St. Ignace, Mich., established, 161.
St. John's, Canada, captured by Montgomery, 246; abandoned, 247.
St. John's River, settlement, 49.
St. Leger, Col., N. 1, p. 167.
St. Mary, Mich., established, 161.
Salem, Colony, founded, 89, 90, N.; city, offers wharves to Boston, 228.
Salem witchcraft, 146, N., 147.
Salt Lake City, founded, 439.
Samoset, 84.
San Antonio, captured, 452.
San Francisco, becomes city, 459.
San Jacinto, battle of, 440, N.
San Salvador, discovered, 37.
Sandys, Geo., translates Ovid, 198.
Sanitary Commissions during Civil War, 582, 583.
Santa Anna, Gen., in Mexican War, 449–453, N.
Santa Fé, founded, 53; captured by U. S. forces, 454.
Saratoga, first battle of, 265, N.; second battle of, 266, N.; effect of victories, 270.
Savannah, founded, 156; capt. by British, 280; attempt at recapture, 285; evacuated by British, 307; occupied by Sherman, 559.
Say, Lord, establishes settlement in America, 94.
Saybrook, Conn., founded, 94; college at, 201.
Schenectady, attacked by Ind., 173.
Schley, Commander, 698, 659.
Schofield, Gen., pursues Hood, 558.
Schuyler, Gen., 263, N. 2, p. 167.
Science, in colonies, 206; in U. S., 691, 692.
Scott, Winfield, prisoner by British, 371, N.; at Lundy's Lane, 388; in South Carolina 417; in Seminole War, 420; on Canadian frontier, 431; in Mexican War, 447, N., 450–453; retires from active service, 495.
Secession, right claimed, 416; of the South, 481, 490.
Second Continental Congress, 234, 235; abolishes "colonial system," 250; commissions La Fayette, 261, N.; removes to Lancaster, 263; refuses to receive British envoys, 271; returns thanks, 305; passes "Ordinance of 1787," 324.
Sedition Law, 342.
Semi-centennial, celebrated, 413.
Seminole War, 419, 420.
Semmes, Raphael, 498, N.
Separatists, 80, 81.
Serapis, captured by Jones, 283.
Seven Cities of Cibola, 46, N.
Sewall, Justice, 147.
Seward, Wm. H., on duration of Civil War, 488, N.; attack on, 570.
Sewing-machine, invented, 688.
Shaftesbury, Lord, 135.
Sharpsburg, battle at, 526.
Shenandoah Valley, operations in, 522, 532, N., 552, 553.
Sheridan, Gen. Philip, at Murfreesborough, 513; at Missionary Ridge, 546; raid in Virginia, 552, N.; defeats Early, 553; at Five Forks, 564; pursues Lee, 567; in Ind. Ter., 635.
Sherman, Gen. W. T., at Shiloh, 506; at Chattanooga, 544–546; relieves Burnside, 547; conducts Meridian raid, 548; chief command in West, 549; advances into Georgia, 555; de-

feats Hood, 556; compels destruction of Atlanta, 557; march to the sea, 585, N.; captures Savannah, 559; Columbia, S. C., 562; defeats Johnston at Averysboro and Bentonville, 563; captures Raleigh, N. C., 563; receives Johnston's surrender, 567, N.; retires, N. 3, p. 334.
Shields, Gen., in Mexican War, 453.
Shiloh, battle of, 506, 507.
Sigel, Gen., 552.
Sioux War, 611.
Sitka, described, 591.
Six nations, 26, N.; receive the Tuscaroras, 177; allies of British, 275; overpowered by Americans, 276; treaty with U. S., 311.
Sixth Mass. reg't. in Baltimore, 491.
Slater, John F., 696.
Slater, Samuel, 348, 686.
Slavery, introduced, 67; in Carolina, 140; trade increased, 153, N; importation stopped in Virginia, 251; prohibited in Northwest Ter., 324, 402; subject reviewed, 401; lines drawn by Missouri Comp., 402; Gt. Britain and U. S. unite to suppress trade, 436; compromise of 1850, 463; fugitive slave law, 466; personal liberty laws, 467; unmolested during first of Civil War, 529; Emancipation Proclamation, 530, 531.
Sloughter, Gov., authorizes Leisler's death, 148.
Smith College, 694.
Smith, John, unjustly imprisoned, 61, N.; leader at Jamestown, 63; returns to Eng., 64; writes first book in America, 197; sends map and Report to London Comp., 197.
Smith, Joseph, founds Mormon sect, 438, N.; killed, 439.
Smith, Kirby, at Bull Run, 494; invades Kentucky, 510, 511.
Smithson, James, founds Smithsonian Institution, 692.
Snorri, 9.
Sons of Liberty, organized, 230.
South American states, recognized by U. S., 404.
South Carolina, visited by De Ayllon, 41; settled and abandoned, 48; permanently settled, 138; character of people, 139; slavery introduced, 140; sends relief to Boston, 228; cedes western lands to U. S., 299; coasts rav. by Brit., 385; threatens secession, 417; secedes, 481.
Southern Confederacy, planned, 417; formed, 483; *see* Confederate States.
Southwest passage, discov., 42, N.
Spain, explorers of, 34, 43–46; settlements of, 50, 53, N.; at war with Eng., 158, 179; cedes Florida and receives Louisiana, 194; opposes colonists in the Rev., 300; makes treaty with U. S., 334; cedes Louisiana to France, 355; cedes Florida to U.S., 403; loses American possessions, 404; war with U. S., 659, 660.
Specie Circular, Jackson's, 424.
Specie Resumption, act passed, 608; effected, 623.
Speculations in Jackson's time, 422.
Spinning-jenny invented, 348.
Spottsylvania Court-House, 551.
Springfield, Mass., founded, 93.
Stamp Act, 220; repealed, 222.
Stanton, Edwin M., 587, N.
Stanwix, Ft., treaty at, 311.
Star of the West, fired upon, 482.
Star Spangled Banner, written, 386.
Stark, Gen., at Bennington, 264.
Starving Time, the, 64.
State Rights, argued, N. 2, p. 247; 416.
Steadman, Ft., capt. by Lee, 564.
Steam navigation, introduced, 362, N.
Steam-engine, invented, 348.
Stephens, Alex. H., 483, N.
Stephenson, Ft., attacked, 376.
Steuben, Baron, enters the American service, 269, N.; at André's court-martial, 295.
Stevenson, Adlai E., 653.
Stillwater, battle of, 265, N.
Stirling, Major-general, 253.
Stockton, Com., in Mex. War, 456.
Stony Point, recapture of, 282, N.
Stuyvesant, Peter, appointed gov., 116, N.; makes treaties with English and Indians, 117; conquers New Sweden, 118; oppresses Dutch col., 119; surrenders New Amsterdam to English, 120.
Submarine Telegraph between Europe and America, 589, 590.
Sub-treasury Law, 430.
Sullivan, Gen. John, 253, N.
Sumter, Ft., occupied by Anderson, 482, 485; surren. to Confed., 489; stars and stripes raised over, 570, N.
Sumter, Gen., 286.
Swedes, in America, 114; buy lands from Indians, 115; overpowered by the Dutch, 118.

T

Taft, William H., 663, 677-680, N.
Tampa Bay, discovered, 45.
Tariff, imposed, 398; discussions on, 416; changed, 417, 648, 655, 658.
Taxing colonies, 216, 217, 220, 222, 227.
Taylor, Richard, N. 1, p. 276.
Taylor, Zachary, in Seminole War, 420; in the Mexican War, 445–449; Pres., 462, N.; death of, 464.
Tea, taxed, 227; sent home by New York and by Philadelphia, 227; thrown into Boston Harbor, 227.
Tecumseh, his forces defeated at Tippecanoe, 368, N.; protects prisoners, 375; attacks forts Meigs and Stephenson, 376; killed, 383.
Telegraph, introduced, 442; growth of, 684.

Telephone, introduced, 684.
Tennessee, settled, 170, 223, N.; admitted, 335; secedes, 490.
Tennessee, the Confederate ram, in Mobile Bay, 560.
Tenney, Matthew, N. 1, p. 315.
Tenure of Office Law, passed, 586; infringed, 587.
Territory Northwest of Ohio River ceded to U. S., 298, 299; organized, 324; States formed from, 325, N.
Territory of Louisiana, purchased, 355, 356; divided, 358.
Territory of Orleans, organized, 358; included in Louisiana, 383.
Texas, attempted settlement by French, 164, N. 3, p. 103; independent, 440, N.; admitted, 441; secedes, 481; last of seceded States to resume seat in Congress, 595.
Thames, battle of the, 383.
Thanksgiving day appointed, 570.
Thomas, Gen. Geo. H., saves battle of Chickamauga, 544, N.; at Lookout Mountain, 545, 546; destroys Hood's army, 558.
Thompson, Gen., killed, 420.
Thorfinn, Karlsefne, 9.
Ticonderoga, Ft., attacked by Abercrombie, 190, 191; surprised by Ethan Allen, 237; surrendered to Burgoyne, 264.
Tilden, Samuel J., 613.
Tinicum Island, 115.
Tippecanoe, battle of, 368.
Tobacco culture introduced, 65.
Topeka, Kansas, convention at, 474.
Tories, defined, 248, N.; in Mohawk Valley, 264; plunder South, 306.
Trade, Board of, 150.
Treaty, of Utrecht, 153, N.; of Paris, 194; of Versailles, 307; at Fontainebleau, 308; its terms, 309; Jay's, 331; with Spain, 334; with Algiers, 335, 359; of Ghent, 393; with Spain, 403; Webster and Ashburton, 436; with Great Britain, 443; of Guadalupe Hidalgo, 457; with Japan, 470; with China, 592.
"**Trent** Affair," 499, 500.
Trenton, battle of, 259.
Tripoli, declares war on U. S., 359; attacks American commerce, 397.
True Relation of Virginia, first book written in America, 197.
Tryon, gov. of North Carolina, 223.
Tulane, Paul, 696.
Twiggs, Gen., in Mexico, 452.
Tybee Island, captured, 501.
Tyler, John, V-P., 433; Pres., 434, N.

U

Union of colonies planned, 151, 183.
Union of States, movement toward, 313; effected, 319.
United Colonies of New Eng., 102.
United States of America, first named, 250; recogn'd as a nation by France, 270; weak government of, 296; articles of closer confederation signed, 298; condition after Rev., 309, 310; movements toward Union, 313; assumes war debts of the States, 322; capital of, 323; foreign opinions of, 377, 422; unprepared for Civil War, 484; condition at end of 1861, 501; condition in 1880, 624; progress of, 681–700.
University of Michigan, 694.
University of Pennsylvania, 201.
Utah, organized as a Territory, 439; ceded to U. S., 457; admitted as a State, 657.
Utrecht, treaty of, 153, N., 175.

V

Valley Forge, 267, 268; N. 1, p. 193.
Van Buren, Martin, Pres., 426, 433; biography, 427, N.
Van Dorn, Gen., at Pea Ridge, 508; captures Holly Springs, 528.
Van Rensselaer, in Canada, 371.
Vasquez de Ayllon, 44.
Vassar College, 694.
Vera Cruz, captured, 450.
Vermont, possession disputed, N. 1, p. 147; admitted, 335.
Verrazzano, 47.
Versailles, treaty of, 307, 309.
Vespucci, Amerigo, 40, N.
Vicksburg, held by Confederates, 528; siege and surrender of, 536–538.
Vincennes, fort established, 170.
Virginia, named, 57; first settled, 61, 62; condition in 1625, 71; ceded to Culpepper and Arlington, 72; receives "Monmouth's rebels," 141; attempts to repress slave trade, 153; stops importation of slaves, 251; most powerful colony in 1776, 277; publicly thanks Col. Clark and organizes "County of Illinois," 278; cedes N. W. Ter. to U. S., 298; calls convention of States, 313; cedes land for national capital, 323; secedes, 490; field of Civil War in East, 492.
Volunteers called for Civil War, 491.

W

Wahoo Swamp massacre, 420.
War, between French and Spanish in America, 49–51; bet. Algonquins and Iroquois, 26, 52; Indian, in Va., 69; Bacon's Rebellion, 73, 74; Clayborne's Rebellion, 76, 77; Pequod, 99, 100; King Philip's, 107, 108, N.; Indian, in New Netherlands, 116; Dutch and Swedes, 118; Dutch and Eng., 120, 122; Civil, in Eng., 131, 132;

Monmouth's Rebellion, 141; bet. Eng. and Spain, 158, 179; French and Natchez, 168; King William's, 171–174; Queen Anne's, 172, 175–177; French and Eng. in Maine, 178; King George's, 179, 180; French and Indian, 181–194; Revolution, 215–308; with Tripoli, 359; bet. France and Eng., 363; of 1812, 368–396; Creek Indians, 384; with Barbary States, 397; Seminole, 419, 420; with Mexico, 446–457; Civil, 489–567; results of, 574–585; with the Modocs, 603; with the Sioux, 611.
Ward, Gen., at Boston, 238.
Warner, Seth, capt. Crown Point, 237, N.; at Bennington, 264.
Warren, Samuel, spreads alarm of Brit. expedition to Lex., N. 6, p. 137.
Washington, city of, site selected, 323; seat of gov., 347; burned by Brit., 385, N.; head-quarters of secession, 484; threatened by Confederates, 524, 525, 553; seat of Smithsonian Institution, 692.
Washington, Fort, captured, 256.
Washington, Geo., sent to Fort Le Bœuf, 181; at Ft. Necessity, 182; aid to Braddock, 185; captures Ft. Du Quesne, 192; commander-in-chief, 235; at Boston, 241; compels Brit. to evacuate Boston, 248; at New York, 248; Long Is., 253, 254; White Plains, 255; Trenton, 259; made dictator, 260; at Princeton, 260; Brandywine and Germantown, 263; Valley Forge, 267, 268, N.; Monmouth, 272; Morristown, 284; reprimands Arnold, 293; at Yorktown, 302–304; disbands army, 307; farewell to comrades, 308, N.; proposed as king, 310; pres. of Constitutional Conv., 315; elec. Pres., 319; biog'phy, 319, N.; inaugurated, 320; cabinet of, 321; selects site of capital, 323; threatened with impeachment, 331, N.; opposes war against England, 332; leader of Federalists, 333; declines third term, 336; result of administration, 336–339; plea for union, 337; life as Pres., 338; death, 346.
Washington, William A., 289, N.
Washington-Lee Univ., N. 4, p. 316.
Washington Territory, formed, 441; admitted as State, 646.
Watertown, founded, 91.
Watt, James, inv. steam engine, 348.
"Way to Wealth," by Franklin, 204.
Wayne, Gen. Anthony, recaptures Stony Point, 282, N.; defeats savages in Ohio, 326.
Weather Department, 699.
Webster, Daniel, on "Liberty and Union," 416, N.; effects treaty with Eng., 435; on "Omnibus Bill," 463; Sec. of State, 464; death of, 465.
Webster and Ashburton treaty, 436.
Weldon Railroad, seized, 554.
Wellesley College, 694.
Wesley, John and Charles, 157, N.
West India Company, the Dutch, formed, 111; make settlements in America, 112, 113.
West Indies, visited by Columbus, 38, 40; Eng. exp. against, 179.
West Virginia, separate State, 492.
Western Reserve, 134, 299.
Wethersfield, Conn., founded, 93; unites with Windsor and Hartford, 101; college at, 201.
Weymouth, 59.
Whig party, established, 432; oppose annexation of Texas, 440.
Whisky Rebellion, 327.
White Plains, battle of, 255.
Whitefield, visits America, 157, N.
White-man's land, 8.
Whitney, Eli, inv. cotton-gin, 348.
Wilderness, battles of, 550.
Wilkes, Capt., 499, 500.
Wilkinson, Gen. James, defeats Burr's plans, N. 9, p. 220.
Willamette Valley, settled, 444.
William and Mary grant new charter to New Eng. colonies, 145, N.; recognized as rulers by col., 148.
William and Mary College, 154, 201.
William Henry, Fort, built, 186; demolished, 188.
Williams, Roger, history of, 97, N.; pacifies Narragansetts, 99; obtains charter for Rhode Island, 103.
Williamsburg, Va., founded, 71; site of college, 201; battle of, 521.
Wilmington, N. C., captured, 559.
Wilmot, David, "Proviso" of, 460, N.
Windsor, Conn., founded, 93; joins Hartford and Wethersfield, 101.
Winnebagoes, moved west, 418.
Winthrop, John, gov. of Massachusetts Bay, 90; journal of, 200.
Winthrop, John, Jr., establishes Saybrook, 94, 200.
Wisconsin, in "Territory of Ill.," 399; admitted, 461; fires in, 599.
Witchcraft, in Pennsylvania, 126; in Massachusetts, 146, N., 147.
Wolfe, Gen., at Quebec, 193, N.
Woolman, John, 207.
World's Fair, 652, 654.
Worth, Gen., at San Antonio, 452.
Wyoming, Pa., massacre at, 274.
Wyoming, Territory, 591; State, 646.

Y

Yale College, 154, 201, 694.
Yale, Elihu, 201.
York, Duke of, as king, 128, 143.
Yorktown, besieged by Wash., 302–304; abandoned by Confed. 520; centennial at, 626.
Young, Brigham, 439, N.
Yukon River, described, 591.

PRONOUNCING VOCABULARY.

KEY TO VOWELS.—ā, ē, ī, ō, ū, *long;* ă, ĕ, ĭ, ŏ, ŭ, ў, *short;* a̤, e̤, i̤, o̤, *obscure;* fär, låst, fa̤ll, whạt; thēre, vei̤l, tĕrm; fȯr, fo͝od, fo͝ot; fûrl, rṳde; è *nearly as* e *in* met, *but more prolonged;* e͡e, *as* i *before* r *in* spirit; ü, *French* u, *combining sounds of* oo *and* ē.

CONSONANTS.—ç *as* s; ġ *as* j; g̃ *as in* g̃et; n̲ *as in* li̲nger, li̲nk; ñ *combines sounds of* n and y; th *as in* thine.

SMALL CAPITALS.—D, *as* th *in* this; G *and* K *as German* ch; H, *similar to the preceding, but more resembling a strongly aspirated* h; N, *nasal, resembling* ng *in* long; R, *strongly trilled* r; U, *represents the French* eu, *nearly like* u *in* fur.

ABERCROMBIE, ăb′e̤r-krŭm-bĭ.
AGASSIZ, ăg′a̤-see *or* ă′g̃ă′se′.
ALGIERS, al-ġērz′.
AMERIGE, ä-mer′i̤-g̃e̤.
ANDRÉ, ăn′drā.
ANTIETAM, an-tē′tạm.
AUGSBURG, owGs′bo͝oRG.
AZORES, a̤-zōrz′.
BALBOA, VASCO NUÑEZ, DE, väs′ko noon′yĕth dā bäl-bō′ä.
BARBADOES, bar-bā′do̤z.
BATON ROUGE, bă-tŏn′ ro͞ozh.
BEAUREGARD, bō′rẹh-gard′.
BIENVILLE, bēăN′vēl′.
BILOXI, be-loks′ĭ.
BOLEYN, bo͝o′lin.
BON HOMME RICHARD, bō nŏm re′shär′.
BORGNE, born.
BOULOGNE, boo-lōn′.
BOWDOIN, bo′dẹn.
BRETON, brit′t′n.
BROUAGE, broo′äzh′.
BUENA VISTA, bwā′nä vĭs′tä.
BURGOYNE, bûr-g̃oin′.
BURLINGAME, bûr′lin-g̃ām.
CABOT, kăb′o̤t.
CABRAL, kä-bräl′.
CANONCHET, ka̤-nŏn′shet.
CANONICUS, ka̤-nŏn′ĭ-kus.
CARIBBEAN, kăr′ib-be′an.
CARILLON, kä′rēl′yōN′.
CARTERET, kär′te̤r-et.
CARTHAGENA, kar′tạ-je′nạ.
CARTIER, JACQUES, zhäk kaR′-tyā′.
CASTILE, kas-teel′.
CAYUGA, kā-yoo′g̃a.
CERRO GORDO, sĕR′Ro goR′do.
CHAMPLAIN, shăm-plān′.
CHANTILLY, shän-til′lee.
CHAPULTEPEC, chä-pool-tā-pek′.
CHATHAM, chăt′ạm.
CHIHUAHUA, che-wä′wä.
CHOPART, sho′păR′.
CHURUBUSCO, choo-roo-boos′ko.
CIBOLA, se′bo-la.
CINCINNATI, (the city) sin-sin-nah′tĭ.
COCKBURN, ko′burn.
COLIGNY, GASPARD DE, g̃äs′pär dẹh ko-leen′ye.
COLUMBIA REDIVIVA, ko-lŭm′-bĭ-ä rĕ-dī-vī′vä.
CONANT, ko′nant.
CONTRERAS, kon-trā′ras.
CORDILLERAS, kor-dil′e̤r-a̤s.
CORONADO, ko-ro-nä′DO.
CORTEREAL, koR-tā-rā-äl′.
CORTEZ, kôr′te̤z.
CRÈVECŒUR, krāv′kuR′.
DAHLGREN, dăl′g̃rĕn.

DARIEN, dä-re-ĕn′.
DE AYLLON, VASQUEZ, väs′kĕth dā īl-yōn′.
DE ESPEJO, ANTONIO, än-tō′ne-o dā es-pā′ho.
DE GOURGUES, DOMINIQUE do′-me′nēk′ dẹh gōoRg′.
DE MONTS, dẹh mōN′.
DE SOTO, HERNANDO, ĕR-nän′-do dā so′to.
D'ESTAING, dĕs′tăN′.
DIAZ, dee′äth.
DIEGO, de-ā′go.
DIESKAU, dees′kow.
DUBUQUE, du-bōōk′.
DULUTH, du-lōōth′.
DU QUESNE, dü kān′.
EDINBURGH, ed′in-bur-ruh.
EFFINGHAM, ef′fing-hạm.
ERIC, ĕr′ik.
ERICSSON, ĕr′ik-sọn.
ESQUIMAUX, ĕs′kĭ-mōz.
ESTREMADURA, es-trā-mä-DOO′rä.
FANEUIL, făn′el or fūn′ẹl.
FINISTERRE, fin-is-têr′.
FONTAINEBLEAU, fŏN′tăn′blō′.
FREDERIKA, fred-er-īk′ạ.
FROBISHER, frŏb′ish-ẹr.
FRONTENAC, fron′te-nak.
GALLATIN, găl′ạ-tĭn.
GASPÉE, găs′pā′.
GENET, zhẹh-nā′.
GENOA, ǧen′o-ạ.
GERRY, ǧĕr′ĭ.
GHENT, ǧent.
GILA, he′lä.
GORGES, gôr′jĕz.
GRAND PRÉ, ǧrŏN prā′.
GRASSE, DE, dẹh ǧräs′.
GUADALUPE HIDALGO, ǧwä-dä-loo′pā he-däl′ǧo.
GUATEMALA, ǧaw′te-mä′lạ.
GUERNSEY, ǧèrn′ze.
GUERRIÈRE, ǧăR′rē′ār′.
HAVERHILL, hā′vẹr-il.
HAYTI, hā′tĭ.
HINGHAM, hinǧ′ạm.
HISPANIOLA, his-pan-ĭ-o′lạ.
HOUSATONIC, hoo′sạ-tŏn′ik.
HOUSTON, hū′stọn.
HUGUENOTS, hū′ǧe-nots.
IBERVILLE, LEMOINE D', lẹh-mwän′ de′-bĕR′veel′.
IROQUOIS, ĭr-o-kwoy′.
JOLIET, LOUIS, loo′e′ zho′le-ā′.
JUMEL, zhü′mẹl′.
KARLSEFNE, THORFINN, tōr′fin kärl′sef-nẹ.
KEARNY, kạr′nĭ.
KEARSARGE, kēr′sarǧ.
KIEFT, kēft.
KIRCHHEIM, keeRK′hīm.
KITTANNING, kit-tăn′ning.
KOSCIUSKO, kos-sĭ-us′ko.
KUNERSDORF, koo′nẹrs-doRf′.
LA FAYETTE, DE, dẹh lä′fā′yĕt′
LANCASHIRE, lank′ạ-shịr.
LA SALLE, lä′säl′.
LAUDONNIÈRE, lōdŏ′ne-êR′.
LEIF, lif.
LEISLER, līs′lẹr.
LENNI LENAPE, len′ni len′ape.
LINNÆUS, lin-nee′ŭs.
LOUIS LE GRAND, loo′e′lẹh ǧrŏN.
LOYOLA, IGNATIUS, DE, īǧ-nā′-shĭ-us dā loi-ō′lạ or lo-yo′lä.
MACIEJOWICE, mäts-yā-o-veet′sā.
MACOMB, mạ-koom′.
MAGNUSSON, FINN, fĭn mäǧ′-nōōs′on.
MARQUETTE, maR′kĕt′.
MASSASOIT, mas′sạs-so-it.
MATHER, măth′ẹr.
MAUREPAS, mōR′pä′.
MAXIMILIAN, maks-ĭ-mĭl′yạn.
MEIGS, mĕgz.
MENENDEZ, PEDRO, pee′dro or pā′dro mā-nĕn′deth.
MINNITAREES, min′nị-tă′rez.
MINUIT, min′u-it.
MONTCALM DE SAINT-VERAN, LOUIS JOSEPH DE, loo′e′ zho′-zef′ dẹh mōN′kälm′ dẹh săN′-vā′rŏN′.
MONTEREY, mon-tā-rā′.
MONTEZUMAS, mŏn′tẹ-zū′mạz.
MOULTRIE, moo′trĭ.
MUSCOVY, mus′kọ-vy.

NARVAEZ, naR-vä′ĕth.
NAUMKEAG, nŏwm-ke-ăg′.
NUECES, nwā′sĕs.
OGLETHORPE, ō′g̈l-thorp.
OJEDA, ALONZO DE, a-lōn′tho dā o-hā′dä.
ONONDAGA, on′un-daw′ga.
ORISKANY, o-rĭs′ka-ny.
OSAWATOMIE, os′a-wat′o-me.
OVID, ŏv′ĭd.
OXENSTIERN, ŏks′ẹn-steern′.
PALO ALTO, pä′lo ăl′to.
PALOS, pä′lōçe.
PARIA, pä′re-ä.
PASCUA FLORIDA, păs′cu-ä flō′rĭ-dä.
PASHA, pa-shạ′ *or* pä′shå.
PAVIA, pä-vee′ä.
PHILIPPINE, fĭl′ip-pĭn.
PHŒNICIAN, fe-nĭsh′an.
PIZARRO, pe-zăr′o *or* pe-thăr′o.
PONCE DE LEON, pōn′thā dā lā-ōn′.
POWHATAN, pow-hăt-ăn′.
PRAGUE, prāg.
PRESQUE ISLE, presk eel.′
PUEBLO, pwĕb′lo.
PULASKI, pū-lăs′kee.
QUINNIPIAC, quin′ni-pi-ak′.
RAPHOE, rạfō′.
RALE, rahl.
RESACA DE LA PALMA, rā-sä′kä dā lä päl′mä.
RIBAULT, re′bō′.
RIEDESEL, ree′dẹh-zẹl.
RIO CHACO, ree′o chä′ko.
RIO GRANDE, rī′o grănd.
ROCHAMBEAU, DE, dẹh ro′-shŏn′bō′.
ROCHEFOUCAULD, rosh′foo′kō′.
ROSECRANS, rō′ze-krănss.
ROUEN, roo′ẹn *or* rwŏn.
SACO, saw′ko.
ST. AUGUSTINE, sẹnt aw′gus-teen′.
ST. CROIX, sẹnt kroi.′
ST. IGNACE, săNt een′yäss′.
SAN FELIPE, sän fä-lee′pā.
SAN JOAQUIN, sän ho-ä-keen′.
SAN JUAN DE ULLOA, sän ju′ạn *or* sän hwän dā-oo-lo′ä.
SAN MIGUEL, sän me-g̈ĕl′.
SANTA ANNA, ANTONIO LOPEZ DE, än-tō′ne-o lō′pĕth dā sän′tä än′nä.
SANTA FÉ, sän′tä fā.
SEWALL, sū′ạl.
SHOSHONES, sho-shō′nēz.
SIERRA LEONE, se-eR′rä lā-o′nā.
SIERRA NEVADA, se-eR′rä nā-vä′dä.
SIGEL, see′g̈ẹl.
SIOUX, soo *or* se-oo′.
SLOUGHTER, slō′tẹr.
STEUBEN, stū′bẹn *or* stoi′bẹn.
STRACHEY, strä′ke.
THORWALDSEN, tor′wawld-sẹn *or* toR′väl-zẹn.
TICONDEROGA, tī-kon′dẹr-o′ga.
VACA, CABEZA DE, kä-bā′thä dā vä′kä.
VAN RENSSELAER, văn ren′sẹl-ẹr.
VERA CRUZ, vā′rä kroos.
VERRAZZANO, vĕr-ä-zä′no.
VERSAILLES, vẹr-sälz′.
VESPUCCI, AMERIGO, ä-mā-ree′-go vĕs-poot′chee.
VINLAND, vĭn′land.
WAHOO, wah-hoo′.
WHITEFIELD, hwĭt′feeld.
WYOMING, wy-o′ming.
YEARDLEY, yeerd′lĭ.
ZUÑI, zoon′yee.

JUL 19 1915

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS
0 010 546 424 1